

THÁI HOÀNG NGUYÊN - ĐỖ VĂN THẢO

**BÀI TẬP NGỮ PHÁP
TIẾNG ANH NÂNG CAO
(TRUNG HỌC PHỔ THÔNG)**

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN GIÁO DỤC

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Cuốn sách này được biên soạn nhằm giúp các em học sinh THPT vươn lên học khá, giỏi môn tiếng Anh và chuẩn bị tốt hơn cho kì thi tốt nghiệp THPT và tuyển sinh vào các trường đại học và cao đẳng môn tiếng Anh.

Cuốn sách được sắp xếp theo 19 chủ điểm ngữ pháp. Mở đầu mỗi phần, chúng tôi giới thiệu tóm tắt các kiến thức ngữ pháp cơ bản cần nắm vững trước khi các em chuyển sang phần bài tập áp dụng. 362 bài tập với nhiều dạng khác nhau giúp học sinh dễ dàng ôn tập những kiến thức ngữ pháp tiếng Anh cơ bản và nâng cao trong chương trình của trường THPT. Ngoại trừ phần Phrasal Verbs (*Cụm động từ*), trước mỗi bài tập đều có các mẫu tự A, B, C... tương ứng với phần trình bày kiến thức ngữ pháp nhằm giúp các em dễ dàng tìm kiếm các đầu mục liên quan phục vụ tốt hơn cho việc làm bài tập.

Phần đáp án gợi ý giúp học sinh tham khảo và tự đánh giá khả năng của mình. Các em nên xem phần kiến thức ngữ pháp liên quan trước khi làm bài tập. Các em có thể thực hành bất cứ chủ điểm ngữ pháp nào mà mình quan tâm chứ không cần phải làm các bài tập từ đầu đến cuối. Trong một số trường hợp cụ thể, vẫn còn có những phương án trả lời khác có thể chấp nhận. Chúng tôi mong các em sẽ tìm được các lời giải hay và thú vị hơn.

Với cuốn sách này, hi vọng các em học sinh sẽ cảm thấy hứng thú hơn trong học tập và tự tin hơn với kiến thức tiếng Anh của mình, đồng thời đáp ứng tốt hơn những yêu cầu của các bài kiểm tra tại trường, kì thi tốt nghiệp THPT và tuyển sinh vào các trường đại học và cao đẳng môn tiếng Anh.

Trong quá trình biên soạn chắc chắn vẫn còn một số thiếu sót, chúng tôi rất mong nhận được những ý kiến đóng góp xây dựng của các thầy, cô giáo và các em học sinh.

Đà Nẵng, ngày 01 tháng 12 năm 2002

Thái Hoàng Nguyên Đỗ Văn Thảo

1. ARTICLES

TÓM TẮT

A. QUY TẮC CHUNG

1. *A/An* đi với một danh từ số ít và nghề nghiệp của một người.

There is *a book* on the table. (*a* dùng trước danh từ bắt đầu với phụ âm)

My father is *an engineer*. (*an* dùng trước danh từ bắt đầu với nguyên âm)

2. *A/An* cũng được dùng với danh từ số ít với ý chung và chưa xác định.

A baby deer can stand as soon as it is born.

We should give *a child* a lot of encouragement.

They live in *a small house*.

I have got *an idea*.

3. *The* đi với danh từ số ít, số nhiều, và danh từ không đếm được đã xác định.

I've seen *the results* of *the exam*. (*the* dùng trước danh từ số nhiều và số ít)

I'll pay for *the food*. (*the* dùng trước danh từ không đếm được)

Tigers are dangerous animals.

There's *a town* in Italy. It stands near *a volcano*. In 79 AD *the volcano* erupted and it destroyed *the town* and killed nearly all *the people* who lived there.

Lưu ý câu thứ tư:

- a) There's *a town* in Italy. It stands near *a volcano*.

(Danh từ *town* (thành phố) và *volcano* (núi lửa) được nói đến lần đầu trong câu chuyện, chưa rõ là thành phố và ngọn núi lửa nào.)

- b) In 79 AD *the volcano* erupted and it destroyed *the town* and killed nearly all *the people* who lived there.

(Danh từ *volcano* và *town* đã được xác định. Đó là ngọn núi lửa và thành phố đã được nói đến trong những câu đầu tiên. Danh từ *people* (người dân) cũng đã được xác định. Đây là những người dân trong thành phố.)

Lưu ý:

- a) Mạo từ thường dùng trước các danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ: *a book*, *an umbrella*, *the house*, *the last few days*, *a very nice girl*, *a really good book*, *the only true friend*.

b) Tuy nhiên, một số từ sau đây có thể dùng trước mạo từ trong cụm danh từ: all, both, rather, quite, exactly, just, such, what, much: *all the time, both the blue books, rather a good plan, quite a nice shirt, exactly the wrong key, just the right answer, such a cold day, what a pity, much the same.*

c) A dùng trước âm [ju:] và từ one: *a uniform, a university, a useful book, a European, a one-way street, a one-eyed man, a one-sided argument.*

d) An dùng trước nguyên âm u, e, o, a, i và h câm: *an umbrella, an ear, an orange, an apple, an ink-pot, an hour, an honest man, an heir.*

e) Một số danh từ có thể vừa là danh từ không đếm được và đếm được. Vì vậy, việc sử dụng mạo từ trước những từ này sẽ thay đổi tùy theo nghĩa của chúng.

paper: giấy (danh từ không đếm được. Không dùng a-paper)

paper: tờ báo (danh từ đếm được. Có thể dùng a paper)

coffee: cà phê (danh từ không đếm được. Không dùng a-coffee)

coffee: li cà phê (danh từ đếm được. Có thể dùng a coffee)

B. NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP DÙNG THE:

1. Trước các danh từ đã được xác định.

He's studying *the life of William Shakespeare.*

The cars in the garage belong to the man who lives next door.

2. Trước các từ sau: sun, moon, earth, sky, past, future, atmosphere, public, country, world, ground, environment, same, last, next, very, only, previous, following, sea, seaside, mountain.

The earth goes round the sun.

The sun rises in the east.

They were born on the same day.

What are your plans for the future?

I haven't been to Nha Trang for the last three years.

My brother and I are going to the country for a few days.

I love the mountain, but I hate the seaside.

3. Trong cấu trúc so sánh để nói đến hai thay đổi xảy ra đồng thời.

The older we get, the happier we are.

The more you work, the less you learn.

4. Trong cấu trúc của tính từ so sánh nhất.

He is the fastest runner in the race.

Pele is the most famous football player in the world.

5. Trước một số danh từ đếm được số ít chỉ thành tựu khoa học và kỹ thuật.

His grandmother hates the telephone.

Galileo claimed that he had invented the telescope.

Tuy nhiên, không dùng the trong cụm từ: watch television, on television.

I often watch television in the evening.

There's a good film on television tonight.

6. Trước các từ radio, cinema, theatre và một số danh từ chỉ nhạc cụ.

I usually listen to the radio in the morning.

My father prefers the theatre to the cinema.

I'd like to learn the guitar.

Mr Brown plays the trumpet every night.

7. Trước quốc tịch để chỉ người dân của nước đó: the Spanish, the Irish, the Dutch, the Chinese, the Vietnamese, the Swiss.

The Vietnamese are very hard-working.

The French are famous for their food.

Why do the English drive on the left side of the road?

8. Trước tên một số nước, tên biển, đại dương, sông, rừng núi, kênh đào, sa mạc, tàu thủy, các phương tiện, khách sạn, rạp chiếu phim, rạp hát và danh từ riêng số nhiều chỉ những người trong gia đình: the United States, the Netherlands, the Philippines, the Red Sea, the Pacific Ocean, the Nile, the Alps, the Suez Canal, the Sahara, the Titanic, the Queen Mary, the East, the Grand Hotel, the Odeon, the Playhouse, the Browns.

9. Trước một số tính từ để tạo thành danh từ tập hợp chỉ một nhóm người: the blind (những người mù), the deaf (những người điếc), the sick (những người ốm đau), the poor (những người nghèo), the rich (những người giàu), the old (những người già), the dead (những người chết), the unemployed (những người thất nghiệp), the handicapped (những người khuyết tật), the mentally ill (những người tâm thần), the elderly (những người già), the injured (những người bị thương), the homeless (những người không nhà), the disabled (những người bị tật nguyền).

The rich should pay more taxes to help the poor.

The homeless need more help from the government.

The handicapped and the disabled should be helped to overcome obstacles in life.

C. NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP KHÔNG DÙNG THE:

1. Trước các danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được với nghĩa chung.
Carrots are my favourite vegetable.
She loves music, poetry and art.
2. Trước last và next với nghĩa vừa qua, sắp đến.
When did you go to bed last night?
She is going to London next week.
3. Trước hai danh từ man và woman với nghĩa con người nói chung.
God created man and woman for each other.
Why does man seem to have more diseases than animals?
4. Trong các cụm từ chỉ thời gian sau đây: all day, all night, all week, all summer, all winter, all year.
I've been waiting for you all day.
My brother was restless all night.
5. Trước một số chức vụ.
Elizabeth II, Queen of England, is opening a new hospital tomorrow.
All the members elected Mr White chairman.
Tom was made captain of the team.
He was appointed chief clerk in 2001.
Bill Clinton was elected President of the USA for the second time.
6. Trước các danh từ trò chơi và môn thể thao: chess, (table) tennis, badminton, rugby, football.
Daisy always plays badminton in the morning.
High school boys like playing football.
7. Trước danh từ trong một số cụm từ có giới từ: to/at/from school/ work/ college/ university, in/to class, to/in/into/from church/ town, to/in/into/out of prison/ hospital/ bed, at/from home, at sea, in bed, for breakfast, at lunch, to dinner, at night, by car/ bus/ ship/ train/ plane/ boat/ tube, on foot.
8. Trước các lục địa, quốc gia, thành phố, đường phố và các địa danh của thành phố: Asia, Africa, Brazil, Great Britain, Manchester, Manila, High Street, Wall Street, Cambridge/Oxford University, Hanoi Polytechnic, Westminster Abbey, Salisbury Cathedral, London Airport, New York Police Station.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

1. (A) Điền A hoặc AN hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. sand | 2. problem | 3. book |
| 4. advice | 5. wool | 6. idea |
| 7. furniture | 8. information | 9. news |
| 10. trouble | 11. remark | 12. hatred |
| 13. job | 14. water | 15. trip |
| 16. dog | 17. music | 18. anger |
| 19. shopping | 20. umbrella | |

2. (A, B) Điền A hoặc THE hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

1. There's fly in my lemonade.
2. Tom is good student.
3. Close door, please.
4. Can you show me way to station?
5. When did you go to bed last night?
6. Will you come to the club next Saturday?
7. Jack likes sitting in sun.
8. We'll take next bus.
9. The biggest problem at the moment is pollution; it is destroying our world.
10. only thing I don't like about this town is pollution.

3. (A, B) Điền A hoặc THE hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

1. Please turn off lights when you leave room.
2. Please close door.
3. (At the dinner table) Would you pass me bottle, please?
(In an off-licence) Would you pass me bottle, please?
4. (At a shop) Have you got hair dryer?
(At home) Have you got hair dryer?
5. Did you like these films, then?
Most of them, but I didn't like violent films.
6. Let's watch 'Kill the Kid' on TV tonight.
No, I don't like violent films.
7. I like peace and quiet.
8. I like peace and quiet here.
9. Look at sharks.
10. sharks are fish, but whales aren't.

4. (A, B) Điền A hoặc THE vào ô trống.

One day (1) young prince arrived at the castle of King Ottar and fell in love with the king's youngest daughter, who was very beautiful. "You can only marry my daughter," said (2) king, "if you can recognize her, and you must marry the woman you choose." "That's easy," said (3) prince, and King Ottar put all his daughters behind (4) wall that had (5) space at (6) bottom, so (7) prince could only see seven pairs of feet, and the feet all looked (8) same. Suddenly, one of (9) feet moved and so (10) prince said "That's (11) woman I loved."

Unfortunately, it was not; it was King Ottar's eldest daughter who was not at all beautiful, but (12) prince had to marry her. In fact, she was extremely intelligent and had a good sense of humour, so that very soon (13) prince did fall in love with her and they lived happily ever after.

5. (C) Chọn hình thức thích hợp của danh từ trong ngoặc.

1. (A language/Language) is unique to humans.
2. We are looking for people with (an experience/experience).
3. To press clothes you need (an iron/iron).
4. (A play/Play) is more natural for children than adults.
5. He kept his money in (a tin/tin) under the bed.
6. She has been looking for (a work/work) for ages.
7. (A charity/Charity) begins at home.
8. In her youth she was (a beauty/beauty).
9. You should study (a law/law) at university.
10. Everybody called for him to make (a speech/speech).

6. (A) Trả lời những câu hỏi dưới đây.

A: I bought a pencil and a book. What did I read?

B: The book.

1. I bought a pen and a comb. What did I write with?
2. John bought a pen and an orange. What did he eat?
3. Tom bought a newspaper and a watch. What did he read?

Tiếp tục bài tập. Hãy đặt câu hỏi và trả lời.

4. John / a knife / a book. What / cut / orange / with?
5. Mrs Allen / a chair / a key. What / sit / on?
6. David / chair / car. What / drive?
7. Bob / pen / spoon. What / eat ice-cream with?
8. Paul / shirt / cassette. What / wear?
9. George / toothbrush / some milk. What / drink?

7. (A) Dựa vào câu dưới đây, dùng những từ gợi ý để thay thế. Lưu ý thay đổi cách dùng mạo từ.

John is studying music.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. music of Mozart | John is studying the music of Mozart. |
| 2. philosophy | John is studying philosophy. |
| 3. philosophy of Aristotle | 4. history |
| 5. history of Vietnam | 6. music |
| 7. music of Mexico | 8. algebra |
| 9. art | 10. art of the Netherlands |
| 11. architecture | 12. architecture of Greece |

8. (B, C) Điền THE hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

Alan Broome is a world-famous actor. Fifty years ago he was an unhappy child. He didn't do well at (1) school, and he never went to (2) university. His greatest pleasure was to go to (3) cinema. His family lived in an unattractive town. Their home was next to (4) railway station.

Alan's father was a sailor, and he spent months at (5) sea. He was seldom at (6) home. When he was, he didn't do much. Sometimes he used to spend all day in (7) bed. His wife had to get up at 5 o'clock to go to (8) work. Mr Bloome lost his job in (9) navy and then went to (10) prison for stealing.

9. (A, B) Điền A, AN hoặc THE vào ô trống.

(1) man walked into (2) bank in America and handed (3) note to one of the cashiers, (4) young woman. (5) woman read (6) note, which told her to give (7) man some money. Afraid that he might have (8) gun, she followed (9) instruction. (10) man then walked out of (11) building, leaving (12) note behind. However, it was not (13) successful crime.

(14) man had no time to spend (15) money because he was arrested (16) same day. He had made (17) stupid mistake. He had written (18) note on (19) back of (20) envelope. On (21) other side of (22) envelope were (23) man's name and address. This information was quite enough for (24) police to get him.

10. (A, B, C) Điền A hoặc THE hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

Once a famous boxer went to (1) restaurant to have (2) dinner. He took off his coat at (3) door, but he was afraid that somebody would take it. So he took out (4) piece of paper and wrote on it: "This coat

belongs to Tom Brown, (5) most famous boxer in (6) world; he will come back in (7) few minutes." He fastened (8) paper to (9) coat and went into (10) restaurant to have his dinner.

When he returned, however, his coat was not there, but he found another piece of paper which said: "Your coat has been taken by Rick Strong, (11) fastest runner in (12) world, who will never come back at all."

11. (A, B, C) Điền A, THE hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

As (1) writer, I seem to spend (2) most of (3) time working in my office and at (4) home, sitting alone in front of (5) computer. In fact, (6) only people I see regularly are (7) members of my family when they get home from (8) work or (9) school. Otherwise, I don't have much contact with (10) people, and I'm sorry that I haven't kept in (11) touch with (12) friends I made at (13) college. I often get (14) letters and (15) phone calls from (16) people at (17) publisher's, though, I try to get out of (18) house at least once (19) day.

From (20) time to time I give (21) lectures or teach (22) courses at (23) conferences in (24) North America or abroad. But if I ever run out of (25) ideas or I start suffering from (26) loneliness, I'll give up (27) writing (28) books. Then maybe I'll start (29) new career where I work with lots of (30) people and I can have (31) conversation whenever I feel like (32) one!

2. SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

TÓM TẮT

A. QUY TẮC CHUNG

Động từ trong tiếng Anh hợp số với chủ ngữ. Nếu chủ ngữ ở hình thức số nhiều, động từ ở số nhiều. Nếu chủ ngữ ở số ít, động từ ở số ít. Phần lớn động từ ở thì hiện tại đơn đều được thêm -s phía sau khi đi với chủ ngữ là ngôi thứ ba số ít. Danh từ không đếm được, danh động từ, và mệnh đề làm chủ ngữ đều là các chủ ngữ số ít.

Tea is made from a kind of plant. (Chủ ngữ Tea là danh từ không đếm được.)

Many people learn English today. (Chủ ngữ People là danh từ số nhiều.)

Mary drinks four glasses of water every day. (Mary: ngôi thứ ba số ít.)

Swimming is very useful to our health. (Swimming: danh động từ.)

What you've told me is interesting. (What you've told me: mệnh đề.)

Lưu ý:

a) Nếu một danh từ theo sau bởi along with, as well as hoặc accompanied by, động từ được chia với danh từ đi trước.

Mr Brown, along with his children, is coming to the party tonight.

Her parents, as well as her brother, are coming to the party tonight.

b) Nếu một cụm danh từ được kết hợp bởi hai danh từ, động từ chia với danh từ đứng trước.

The picture of the soldiers brings back many memories.

The effects of smoking are extremely harmful.

c) Các môn học, môn thể thao và bệnh tật tận cùng bằng -s, động từ chia ở số ít.

Physics is my favourite subject.

Measles is an infectious disease.

d) A number of + danh từ số nhiều, động từ chia ở số nhiều, the number of + danh từ số nhiều, động từ chia ở số ít.

A large number of people have come to the meeting.

The number of students attending universities is increasing.

e) More than one + danh từ số ít, động từ chia ở số ít.

More than one person has known the news.

More than one proposal was brought in at the meeting.

B. NEITHER, EITHER, BOTH (OF)

1. **Neither** được dùng trước một danh từ số ít với nghĩa "không phải cái này (người này) cũng không phải cái kia (người kia)". Do vậy động từ đi sau danh từ này ở hình thức số ít.

Can you come on Monday or Tuesday?

I'm afraid *neither day* is possible.

[Cả thứ hai và thứ ba đều không được]

2. Sau **neither of** + noun/pronoun, dùng động từ ở hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều.

Neither of my sisters is/are married.

Neither of the oranges is/are ripe.

Neither of them can understand the question.

3. Hình thức của động từ được chia theo danh từ sau **nor** hoặc **or** trong cấu trúc *neither ... nor...* hoặc *either ... or ...*

Neither Tom nor Mary was at home.

Either you or your friends are right.

4. **Both (of)** có nghĩa là cả hai. Vì vậy **Both (of)** đi với danh từ số nhiều.

Both (of) my grandparents are very old.

Both (of) her younger brothers are teachers.

5. **Either** được dùng trước danh từ số ít với nghĩa là "cái này (người này) hoặc cái kia (người kia)".

Come on Tuesday or Thursday. *Either day is OK.*

6. Động từ đi với **either of** thường ở số ít.

Either of the children is quite capable of looking after the baby.

Either of the books I bought yesterday is interesting.

C. NONE OF, NOT ONE OF, EVERY, EACH

1. Khi dùng **None of** với danh từ hoặc đại từ số nhiều, động từ theo sau có thể ở số ít hoặc số nhiều.

None of my friends lives/live near me.

None of my friends is/are interested.

2. Sau **Not one of** + danh từ ở số nhiều, nhưng động từ ở số ít.

Not one of my books is new.

Not one of his friends is American.

3. **Every/each** thường đi với danh từ số ít.

Every room is being used.

Each student has an English book.

4. **Everyone, everybody, everything, everywhere, someone, somebody, something, somewhere, no-one, nobody, nothing, nowhere, anyone, anybody, anything, anywhere** được dùng với động từ ở số ít.

Everybody has gone home.

Everything is all right now.

Someone is knocking at the door.

Nowhere I have known is better than this place.

D. DANH TỪ TẬP HỢP, CỤM TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG

1. Việc sử dụng động từ ở số ít hoặc số nhiều đôi khi tùy thuộc vào ý người nói muốn nhấn mạnh đến một tổng thể hay các bộ phận cấu thành của tổng thể đó.

The flock of sheep is eating the turnips. [Người nói nhấn mạnh cả đàn cừu.]

\$100 is enough, isn't it? (Một số tiền \$100)

A hundred dollars have been put in your account. (Một trăm đô la)

The team are full of enthusiasm. (Tất cả cầu thủ trong đội)

The team is at the bottom of the third division. (Đội bóng)

2. Tuy nhiên, thông thường các cụm từ chỉ một số tiền, một khoảng thời gian, một quãng đường, động từ được dùng ở số ít.

A thousand dollars is a large sum of money.

Twenty years is a long period of time.

Fifty miles is not a short distance.

3. Các danh từ sau đây có thể dùng động từ ở số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy theo ý của người nói: family, government, club, class, committee, school, union, choir, orchestra, staff, firm, jury.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

12. (A) Chọn hình thức đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- Most of the people here (*know/known*) each other.
- Some of my friends (*lives/live*) abroad.
- All of us (*think/thinks*) he is wrong.
- Some people (*has/have*) difficulty with the lecture, but most (*understand / understands*).
- Children (*like/likes*) ice-cream.
- Marie (*have/has*) a red car.
- The children (*has/have*) been playing in the snow.
- Mr and Mrs Brown (*were/was*) reading their mail.
- Fax machines (*transmit/transmits*) written messages.
- Experience (*develop/develops*) talent.
- A sonnet (*consists/consist*) of fourteen lines.
- Agatha Christie, the famous British author, (*write/writes*) detective stories.
- Having time to paint often (*means/mean*) having a good time.
- Trusting people (*requires/require*) faith.
- That he has angered the boss (*please/pleases*) the workers.

13. (B, C) Dùng hình thức đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- I don't think either of them (*be*) at home.
- Both (of) these oranges (*be*) bad.
- My parents both (*work*) in education.
- Both of the children (*have*) gone to bed.
- None of us (*speak*) French.
- None of my brothers (*remember*) my birthday.
- Every one of the children (*be*) crying.
- None of this cheese (*be*) good.
- Not one of my shirts (*be*) clean.
- Everything I like (*be*) not available in the shops.
- I find that everywhere (*be*) booked up.

14. (D) Dùng hình thức đúng ở thì hiện tại của động từ TO BE.

- Cheese an excellent source of calcium.
- 500 km not far, in Australia.
- New Zealand cheeses the best.
- Only 2 km between Perth and South Perth.
- Commercial television improved.
- Two hours *n't* enough to finish this.

7. Colour TVs better than black and white.

8. Two hours more than enough.

15. (A) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

The Clayton Clothing Company is going to build a new factory in Milchester. (1) (*This/These*) news (2) (*was/were*) announced by company chairman Mr David Clayton yesterday. Mr Clayton spent the morning in Milchester before returning to the Clayton headquarters at Granby.

The Clayton company (3) (*has/have*) been in existence for 130 years and (4) (*is/are*) famous for its "Polymode" goods. The slogans "You're never alone with a pair of Polymode trousers" and "Polymode jeans are the ones for you" are well known. The company's profit last year of 2 million pounds (5) (*was/were*) the highest in the clothing business.

Mr Clayton will not say how many new jobs there will be, but my information (6) (*is/are*) that there will be about 500. The news (7) (*is/are*) very welcome because work (8) (*is/are*) hard to find at the moment, and 2,000 unemployed people (9) (*is/are*) a high figure for a small town.

16. (A) Dùng hình thức đúng ở thì hiện tại của động từ trong ngoặc.

The terrorist (1) (*phone*) the police station. He (2) (*leave*) a message about a bomb in the *Black Swan Hotel* bar. The police (3) (*close*) the streets as soon as they can. They warn the public to stay away. Unfortunately, not all the public (4) (*obey*) them. Some people (5) (*disregard*) the police warning. They stubbornly (6) (*stay*) in the hotel. Others who (7) (*be*) more sensible (8) (*leave*) the hotel but only (9) (*go*) to the end of the street. They (10) (*watch*) the activities from a safe distance. They (11) (*hear*) the explosion, which (12) (*destroy*) the front entry of the hotel. Pieces of glass (13) (*fly*) through the air. People living two blocks away (14) (*see*) a cloud of black smoke above the building. The ambulance sirens (15) (*sound*) above the noise. They (16) (*take*) the injured to hospital.

17. (D) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

A hungry pack of wolves (1) (*has/have*) come in from the forest. (2) (*They/It*) chased a flock of sheep which (3) (*was/were*) grazing near the bee hives. Panicking, the sheep knocked over one of the hives and an angry swarm of bees (4) (*was/were*) released. (5) (*They/It*) chased the sheep, and the wolves, who all lost their sense of direction and raced into the town centre.

A class of pupils who (6) (*was/were*) crossing the road scattered. The teaching staff accompanying the students (7) (*was/were*) also dispersed. A platoon of soldiers (8) (*was/were*) summoned to rid the town of sheep and wolves. (9)

(They/It) hid behind a stand of timber which (10) (grow/grows) near the town and (11) (they/it) captured many of the wolves, (12) (They/It) put them in cages and took them to the woods.

18. (A, B, D) Chọn dạng động từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. John, along with twenty friends, (is/are) planning a party.
2. The quality of these recordings (is/are) not very good.
3. If the duties of these officers (isn't/aren't) reduced, there will not be enough time to finish the project.
4. Advertisements on television (is/are) becoming more competitive than ever before.
5. The television news (is/are) at ten o'clock.
6. Darts (is/are) often played in pubs.
7. Physics (seems/seem) to interest Janet.
8. Neither Bill nor Mary (is/are) going to the play tonight.
9. Anything (is/are) better than going to another movie tonight.
10. A number of reporters (was/were) at the conference yesterday.
11. Everybody who (has/have) a fever must go home immediately.
12. Each student (has/have) answered the first three questions.
13. Every policeman (is/are) given special training for the job.
14. None of the officers here (is/are) allowed to have guns.
15. One of our jobs (is/are) to help prevent crime.
16. Either John or his wife (make/makes) breakfast each morning.
17. The number of students who have withdrawn from class this quarter (is/are) appalling.

3. DETERMINERS

TÓM TẮT

A. ALL, MOST, SOME, HALF, NO, NONE

1. All (tất cả) most (hầu hết) some (một số) và no (không có) dùng trước một danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều.

All plants need water.

Most people agree with my attitude.

You've got some interesting jazz records.

We have got no Thursdays free this term.

2. All, most, some và no cũng được dùng trước một danh từ không đếm được.

My brother likes all music.

Most meat is expensive.

Would you like some more beer?

Sorry - there's no time to talk now.

3. All, most, some và half (một nửa) dùng trước giới từ of + the, these, those hoặc một tính từ sở hữu (my, her, our...) với danh từ số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được mang ý nghĩa xác định, cụ thể.

All of my friends at school like English.

Most of the food at this restaurant is very delicious.

Some of his books are written in French.

Half of the money is mine.

4. All, most, some và half dùng trước giới từ of + một đại từ tân ngữ.

All of them don't approve of my plan.

Some of you have made careless mistakes in your tests.

Most of us feel the same about the war.

5. Có thể lược bỏ of sau all hoặc half, nhưng không thể bỏ of trước một đại từ.

all of the clothes hoặc all the clothes

all of us [không dùng all-us]

half of our group hoặc half our group

half of us [không dùng half-us]

6. None bao gồm no và danh từ đã đề cập trước đó. Do vậy nó không dùng với danh từ.

I went to the library to seek information and found none.

He asked me for some food, but I had none at home.

7. **None of** (không có cái/ người nào) được dùng với đại từ tân ngữ, the, these, those hoặc một số hữu tính từ + một danh từ với ý bao gồm từ ba vật/người trở lên. Động từ có thể chia ở số ít hoặc số nhiều.

None of us agreed with his suggestion.

None of the oranges you gave me was/were good.

None of the drivers has/have turned up.

B. EVERY, EACH, BOTH, EITHER, NEITHER

1. **Every** và **each** được dùng trước danh từ số ít để nói đến cả nhóm. Sau **each** và **every** động từ chia ở số ít.

Every/Each room has a number.

[Every/Each room chỉ tất cả các phòng trong nhà.]

2. **Every** hàm ý tất cả. **Each** hàm ý mỗi một người hoặc vật trong nhóm.

I go for a walk every day. [Mọi ngày]

Each day seems to pass very slowly. [Từng ngày]

3. **Each** có thể được dùng một mình (không đi với danh từ) hoặc với **of**.

There are six flats. Each has its own entrance. [Không dùng Every-has]

Each of the six flats has its own entrance. [Không dùng Every-of]

4. **Each** có thể đi sau đại từ. **Each of** đi với đại từ.

They gave us each an English book.

Each of us can have our own desk. [Không dùng Each-us]

5. Dùng **both** (cả hai), **either** (cái/ người này hoặc cái/ người kia), **neither** (không phải cái/người này hoặc cái/ người kia) với hai người hoặc hai vật.

I asked two people the way to the station but neither of them knew.

Both his parents are from Europe.

Come on Tuesday or Wednesday. Either day is OK.

6. **Both**, **either**, **neither** đi với danh từ. **Both of**, **either of**, và **neither of** đi với đại từ, the, these, those, tính từ số hữu + danh từ. Sau **neither of** động từ có thể chia ở số ít hoặc số nhiều.

Both of us were tired.

Neither of the books is/are interesting.

7. Có thể dùng **both of** hoặc **both** trước danh từ; không dùng **both** trước đại từ.

Both (of) her parents are from London.

Both of us like playing badminton. [Không dùng Both-us]

C. A LOT OF, LOTS OF, MANY, MUCH, (A) FEW, (A) LITTLE

1. **Many**, **much** (nhiều) thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn. **Many** dùng với danh từ số nhiều và **much** dùng với danh từ không đếm được.

There aren't many shops along this street.

Were there many people at the meeting?

There isn't much water in the bottle.

Does the newspaper have much information?

2. **Many**, **much** dùng sau too, so, as và very trong câu khẳng định.

There is too much salt in my soup. [Không dùng too-a-lot-of]

We had so many exercises to do. [Không dùng so-a-lot-of]

I haven't got as much patience as I thought. [Không dùng as-a-lot-of]

Thank you very much for your nice gift.

3. **A lot of**, **lots of** (nhiều) được dùng trong câu khẳng định với danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được.

He's got lots of friends here.

A lot of time is needed to learn a foreign language.

4. **A large number of** + danh từ số nhiều và **a great deal of** + danh từ không đếm được (một số lượng lớn) được dùng trong câu khẳng định.

He has got a large number of English books.

They have invested a great deal of money in education.

5. **A few**, **a little** (được một vài, một số) được dùng với nghĩa xác định. **A few** dùng với danh từ số nhiều và **a little** dùng với danh từ không đếm được.

There are a few girls in my class.

We've got a little bacon and a few eggs.

6. **Few**, **little** (ít) được dùng với nghĩa phủ định, không như mong đợi. **Few** dùng với danh từ số nhiều và **little** dùng với danh từ không đếm được.

Few people can say that they always tell the truth.

There is little sugar in the packet.

7. Có thể dùng **just** hoặc **only** trước **a few** và **a little**.

Only a few people came to the press conference.

High school students give only a little thought to their future jobs.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

19. (A) Điền OF hoặc ghi dấu ✓ nếu không cần thiết.

1. Some the photographs you took on holiday were very good.
2. I was just going to the bank to get some money.
3. All flowers are beautiful.
4. I have lived in this village most my life.
5. Some people are interesting, but some are not.
6. All my friends live in Ho Chi Minh City.
7. None this money is mine.
8. Some the people I met at the party were interesting.
9. We all got wet in the rain because none us had an umbrella.
10. Most my friends like learning English.

20. (A) Tom, Bill, Alice, Harry, Andrew, và Vicky phải trả lời 20 câu hỏi.

Dùng ALL, MOST, SOME, NONE để viết câu.

1. Tom answered all twenty correctly. *He got all of them right.*
2. Bill's score was fifteen.
3. Alice had only eight correct answers.
4. Harry got them all right except three.
5. Andrew gave twenty correct answers.
6. But Vicky didn't get a single one right.

21. (A) Điền ALL, MOST, HALF, NO hoặc NONE. Đôi khi có thể kết hợp OF và THE.

1. Let's go to another hotel. There are rooms available here.
2. Yesterday Jim spent day reading in the library.
3. The weather has been fine today. The sun has been shining day.
4. sugar is made from the sugar cane.
5. Tom: What do you usually do at weekends?
Mike: Not much. We spend time watching television.
6. We should ban cars. cars pollute the air, don't they?
7. food is good for your health, isn't it?
8. There has been a power cut. lights have gone out.
9. It's eleven o'clock. Are you going to lie in bed morning?
10. We all agreed with him. us thought he was right.
11. us are free on Tuesday, and the other half on Thursday.
12. There are apples in the fridge, but there are a lot of oranges.

22. (B) Điền EVERY hoặc EACH. Đôi khi có thể dùng cả hai.

1. person has to pay two dollars.
2. We have a name tag.
3. We don't have one party week, but almost!
4. She gets the train to work at seven morning.
5. Why are you in such a hurry time I see you?
6. guest brings something to eat or drink to the party.
7. Mary is a religious person. She goes to church Sunday.
8. I just can't sleep. I spend night lying awake.
9. We have to pay the rent on the first of month.
10. You look more beautiful time I see you.

23. (B) Điền BOTH, EITHER hoặc NEITHER. Dùng OF nếu cần thiết.

1. He doesn't like buses and trains because them are big and noisy and crowded.
2. My two colleagues are away on business. them are here.
3. Mr Jones was so tired that he didn't talk to the two visitors.
4. He did not like noisy people and loud voices. them annoyed him.
5. There are rice fields on side of the river.
6. my parents is English. They are Vietnamese.
7. I've got two sisters. my sisters are still at school.
8. the socks have got holes in them.
9. Mr Harris likes tea and coffee. He likes them.
10. these oranges are bad. You should throw them away.
11. He lost parents when he was a child.
12. I have two sisters, and I like them very much.

24. (C) Chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc thích hợp.

1. He had so (many/a lot of/much) things to do.
2. The mixture looks rather dry. Maybe you should add (a few/a little/little) water.
3. We're having a big party. We've invited (a lot of/many/much) friends.
4. I feel really tired. I haven't got (many/much/a lot of) energy.
5. He quickly put (a few/a little/few) things into a bag.
6. Could I try (a little/a few/little) wine?
7. Come on! We haven't got (many/much/a lot of) time.
8. The school year has just begun. The children haven't had (much/many/a lot of) lessons yet.

25. (C) Đặt câu hỏi và trả lời, dùng JUST A FEW hoặc JUST A LITTLE.

- (sugar) Do you need any sugar? Yes, just a little, please.
 (oranges) Do you need any oranges? Yes, just a few, please.
 1. bananas 2. help 3. butter 4. money 5. bread
 6. information 7. advice 8. petrol 9. stamps 10. envelopes

26. (C) Điền (A) FEW hoặc (A) LITTLE.

- We receive letters. We don't have many friends and relatives.
- "When did you see that film?" - "..... days ago."
- Henry quite likes golf, but unfortunately he has ability.
- I can speak words of French, which helped me a lot when I was in Paris.
- Can you lend me dollars?
- We must be quick. There's time.
- Could I try wine?
- He isn't very popular. He has friends.
- His ideas are difficult, and people understand them.
- His ideas are difficult, but people understand them.
- Would you mind waiting minutes?
- He'll be back in minutes.

27. (C) Điền MANY hoặc MUCH, thay đổi danh từ cho phù hợp nếu cần thiết.

- I don't know English slang
- Their cat doesn't catch mouse
- How student are there in your class?
- He hasn't done travelling in the last two years.
- The lawyers interviewed witness to the crime.
- We didn't see people on the beach yesterday.
- Peter hasn't made progress in improving his English.
- I didn't know English grammar before buying this book.
- How tooth do babies usually have when they're born?
- He didn't have fun when he was young.

28. (C) Thay thế (cụm) từ in nghiêng bằng (A) FEW hoặc (A) LITTLE. Chú ý không thay đổi nghĩa của câu.

- Let me give you *some* advice if you like.
- She arrived in Australia *several* months ago.
- I think that *some* more sugar makes the coffee taste better.
- He had to go to the post office because he had *some* letters to post.
- Not many* days ago I watched a very interesting film on TV.

- Many people have graduate degrees, but *not many* people have more than two.
- You would have passed the exam if you had made *some* more effort.
- Every day Peter goes to his mailbox, but it is usually empty. He gets *not much* mail.
- I have *not much* patience with people who often ask silly questions.
- The grammar lesson was clearly taught. Therefore, *not many* students had questions at the end of the period.

29. (A, C) Sắp xếp những câu (1-6) với nghĩa (a-f) của chúng.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Not many of the apples are good. | a. Only some of it is good. |
| 2. None of the apples are good. | b. All of it is bad. |
| 3. Not much of the bread is good. | c. Only a few are good. |
| 4. Not all of the news is good. | d. All of them are bad. |
| 5. None of the coffee is good. | e. Only a little is good. |
| 6. Not all the books are good. | f. Only some are good. |

30. (A, B, C) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

- The two boys were not polite to the girl. (*neither*)
- We didn't have much time for a holiday. (*little*)
- I've lived here more than half my life. (*most*)
- All books have something to teach you. (*every*)
- Such a large number of books have been bought for the library. (*so*)

31. (A, B, C) Điền vào ô trống với từ thích hợp trong bảng.

<i>few</i>	<i>a few</i>	<i>no</i>	<i>many</i>	<i>much</i>
<i>a lot</i>	<i>most</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>a little</i>	<i>none</i>

In Sweden there is only (1) cigarette advertising because the government has been successful in preventing (2) cigarette advertisements. Although there are (3) cigarette advertisements in magazines (but not many), there are (4) cigarette advertisements at all in cinemas and also (5) on the radio and television.

In Britain and the United States (6) of cigarette advertisements show beautiful girls and handsome men smoking cigarettes. In spite of attempts to stop people smoking, there are even more advertisements than before.

In Sweden, however, there must be (7) people in cigarette advertisements. The Swedish government wants as (8) people as possible to give up smoking. It tells people that (9) smokers usually die at a (10) earlier age than non-smokers.

4. NOUNS

TÓM TẮT

A. COUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từ đếm được)

1. Danh từ đếm được có thể ở hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều. Danh từ số nhiều được thêm -s ở cuối từ.

a boy	→	boys	a door	→	doors
a window	→	windows	a table	→	tables
a doctor	→	doctors	a train	→	trains
a book	→	books	a girl	→	girls

2. Một số điểm cần lưu ý khi chuyển danh từ số ít sang số nhiều:

a. Thêm -es sau những từ tận cùng bằng -s, -x, -sh, -ch, -tch, -o:

a box	→	boxes	a class	→	classes
a potato	→	potatoes	a church	→	churches
a watch	→	watches	a bush	→	bushes

Nhưng:

a piano	→	pianos	a photo	→	photos
a kilo	→	kilos	a radio	→	radios

b. Danh từ tận cùng bằng -y:

- trước -y là một nguyên âm: thêm s

a monkey	→	monkeys	a boy	→	boys
a bay	→	bays	a key	→	keys

- trước -y là một phụ âm: y → ies

a fly	→	flies	a lady	→	ladies
a country	→	countries	a story	→	stories
a family	→	families	an army	→	armies

c. Đổi f thành v trước khi thêm -es

a leaf	→	leaves	a thief	→	thieves
a loaf	→	loaves	a shelf	→	shelves

Nhưng:

a roof	→	roofs	a safe	→	safes
a proof	→	proofs	a chief	→	chiefs
a belief	→	beliefs	a handkerchief	→	handkerchiefs

d. Các trường hợp số nhiều không theo quy tắc:

a man	→	men	a woman	→	women
a tooth	→	teeth	a foot	→	feet
a goose	→	geese	a mouse	→	mice
a child	→	children	an ox	→	oxen
a deer	→	deer	an aircraft	→	aircraft

e. Các từ luôn ở hình thức số nhiều:

trousers, jeans, spectacles, scissors, clothes, wages

B. UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từ không đếm được)

1. Danh từ không đếm được không có hình thức số nhiều, không dùng với a/ an.

tea	coffee	happiness	knowledge
fruit	advice	information	equipment
news	money	homework	intelligence

2. Có những danh từ vừa đếm được hoặc không đếm được tùy theo nghĩa:

glass: gương [không đếm được]	a glass: cái li [đếm được]
iron: sắt	an iron: bàn ủi
paper: giấy	a paper: tờ báo
space: không gian	a space: chỗ trống

3. Danh từ không đếm được thường đi với **much** (nhiều), **some** (một vài), hoặc một từ chỉ đơn vị định lượng + of.

much milk/homework	some milk/music	a piece of paper
a carton of milk	a bottle of wine	a loaf of bread

C. COMPOUND NOUNS (Danh từ ghép)

Chúng ta có thể kết hợp một từ với một từ khác để tạo thành một danh từ ghép. Danh từ ghép có thể được viết thành hai từ riêng biệt: tin opener (dụng cụ mở hộp), bank account (tài khoản ngân hàng), hoặc đặt một gạch ngang giữa hai từ: pen-name (bút hiệu), baby-sitter (cô giữ trẻ), hoặc kết hợp thành một từ: sunglasses (kính mát), windscreen (kính chắn gió). Có nhiều loại danh từ ghép, dưới đây là một số danh từ ghép thường gặp.

1. Noun + Noun:

alarm clock: đồng hồ báo thức	headmaster: hiệu trưởng
credit card: thẻ tín dụng	toothbrush: bàn chải đánh răng

2. Adj + Noun:

blackboard: *bảng đen*
first aid: *cấp cứu*

3. Gerund + Noun:

washing machine: *máy giặt*
waiting room: *phòng đợi*

4. Noun + Gerund:

handwriting: *chữ viết*
day-dreaming: *mơ mộng*

5. Noun + Verb + er

taxi driver: *tài xế taxi*
goalkeeper: *thủ môn*

6. Verb + Noun:

pickpocket: *tên móc túi*
washbasin: *chậu rửa tay*

7. Verb + Adverb:

breakthrough: *thành tựu*
takeoff: *sự cất cánh*

8. Noun + Verb:

sunshine: *ánh nắng*
handshake: *sự bắt tay*

9. Adverb + Verb:

outlook: *quan điểm*
downpour: *cơn mưa xối xả*

10. Adj + Adverb:

black-out: *tất điện (trong chiến tranh để khỏi bị phát hiện)*

Lưu ý:

Đối với danh từ ghép được kết hợp bởi hai danh từ, danh từ trước dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ sau và thường được dùng ở hình thức số ít. Khi chuyển sang số nhiều, thêm s vào danh từ sau.

- a schoolboy: *một học sinh nam* (số nhiều: schoolboys)
a boyschool: *một trường dành cho học sinh nam* (số nhiều: boyschools)
a racehorse: *một con ngựa đua* (số nhiều: racehorses)
a horserace: *một cuộc đua ngựa* (số nhiều: horseraces)

grandparents: *ông bà*
greengrocer: *người bán rau quả*

reading lamp: *đèn đọc sách*
dancing teacher: *giáo viên dạy múa*

city planning: *quy hoạch thành phố*
oath taking: *tuyên thệ*

holiday maker: *người đi nghỉ mát*
street vender: *người bán hàng rong*

blowpipe: *ống thổi*
hovercraft: *tàu đệm không khí*

walk-out: *cuộc biểu tình*
dropout: *người bỏ cuộc*

sunrise: *mặt trời mọc*
waterfall: *thác nước*

input: *sự nhập liệu*
bypass: *đường vòng*

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

32. (A, B) Viết C (Countable) nếu là danh từ đếm được hoặc U (Uncountable) nếu là danh từ không đếm được.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. dress | 2. music | 3. knowledge | 4. river |
| 5. work | 6. luck | 7. information | 8. newspaper |
| 9. meat | 10. flower | 11. handbag | 12. luggage |
| 13. photo | 14. wool | 15. journey | 16. furniture |
| 17. advice | 18. fridge | 19. description | 20. onion |
| 21. soup | 22. biscuit | | |

33. (A) Viết hình thức số nhiều của các danh từ sau.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. church | 2. tree | 3. lorry |
| 4. holiday | 5. brush | 6. key |
| 7. shelf | 8. sheep | 9. tooth |
| 10. apple | 11. copy | 12. box |
| 13. party | 14. child | 15. leaf |
| 16. mouse | 17. lady | 18. hotel |
| 19. potato | 20. monkey | |

34. (A) Điền vào ô trống với danh từ số nhiều của từ trong bảng.

day	dress	tooth	country
foot	shelf	coach	sandwich

1. She always has two and an orange for dinner.
2. Tom cleans his after every meal.
3. How many are they staying here?
4. There are two outside to take them to the museum.
5. I have friends from ten different
6. He needs some more to put all his books on.
7. My hurt after all that walking.
8. Daisy wants to buy two new to wear on holiday.

35. (A) Tìm một danh từ đếm được bắt đầu bằng mẫu tự đã cho mô tả ý chung của bốn từ trong nhóm.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|---------|----------|--------|
| 1. eat | cook | lunch | potatoes | m..... |
| 2. cash | vault | counter | deposit | b..... |
| 3. Monday | Tuesday | Friday | Sunday | d..... |
| 4. hand | time | strap | number | w..... |

5.	uniform	hospital	medicine	thermometer	n.....
6.	rose	petal	stem	garden	f.....
7.	golf	rugby	tennis	football	s.....
8.	Oslo	Paris	London	New York	c.....
9.	bars	cell	warder	sentence	p.....
10.	barn	plough	tractor	fertilizer	f.....
11.	book	pupil	teacher	classroom	s.....
12.	film	screen	projector	usherette	c.....
13.	Mars	Venus	Saturn	Mercury	p.....
14.	badly	softly	slowly	strongly	a.....
15.	shelf	book	lend	catalogue	l.....

36. (A, B) Chọn từ đúng trong ngoặc.

- Hurry, there (*isn't/aren't*) much time left.
- John hasn't got a (*work/job*) at the moment.
- Can I give (*a/some*) food to the animals?
- Before they go they need to buy some (*cloth/clothes*).
- You will find good (*advice/advicees*) in this book.
- How (*much/many*) money would you like to change?
- Here (*is/are*) the news.
- There (*are/is*) people on the beach.
- There (*isn't/aren't*) very (*many/much*) work to do.
- I haven't got many (*childs/children*).

37. (A, B) a) Điền các danh từ vào ô trống thích hợp.

fun	feet	people	money	luggage
food	meal	advice	traffic	furniture
day	news	music	clothes	research
work	place	group	children	information

1.

There's a	
It's a	
I haven't got a	

2.

I haven't got many	
There are some	
They're	

3.

There's some	
There's	
I haven't got much	

b) Chọn câu trả lời đúng.

- The nouns in Group 1 are:
A. plural nouns B. uncountable nouns C. singular nouns
- The nouns in Group 2 are:
A. plural nouns B. uncountable nouns C. singular nouns
- The nouns in Group 3 are:
A. plural nouns B. uncountable nouns C. singular nouns

38. (A) Đổi danh từ số ít in nghiêng sang số nhiều và thay đổi tương ứng.

- I see a *man*. *I see two men.*
- Look at that *woman*.
- There is a *child* in the room.
- She bought a *knife*.
- I see a *foot*.
- The dentist pulled out a *tooth*.
- She screamed when she saw the *mouse*.
- There is a *sheep* in the field.

39. (A, B) Thay thế các từ dưới vào câu. Lưu ý thay đổi danh từ và động từ.
The man is here.

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. are | <i>The men are here.</i> | | |
| 2. The child | <i>The child is here.</i> | | |
| 3. The people | 4. interesting | 5. The news | 6. bad |
| 7. The tooth | 8. are | 9. good | 10. The knives |
| 11. is | 12. The man | | |

40. (A, B) Sửa lỗi sai những câu sau.

1. Can you give me some informations about the school?
2. All these furnitures are from that old house.
3. The news in these paper are always bad.
4. I've got too many work to do.
5. I've got a lot of luggages.
6. I'd like some glass of beer.
7. There are a lot of stars in spaces.
8. This chair is made of woods.

41. (A) Tìm một danh từ đếm được bắt đầu bằng mẫu tự đã cho mô tả ý chung của bốn từ trong nhóm.

1. E	O	R	W	L
2. mark	eraser	chalk	board	L
3. reading	knitting	swimming	photography	h
4. sink	fridge	cooker	food mixer	k
5. ward	matron	patient	illness	h
6. Arabic	English	French	Portuguese	l
7. ads	headline	article	column	n
8. ½	¼	¾	1/9	f
9. sad	heavy	cheap	beautiful	a
10. Asia	Africa	Europe	Australia	c
11. tube	aerial	volume	channel	t
12. baker	tailor	butcher	salesman	o
13. for	from	beside	between	p
14. and	but	because	although	c
15. Swiss	Dutch	Welsh	Chinese	n
16. CIA	Ph.D	USA	AIDS	a

42. (B) Kết hợp một cụm từ trong bảng với 1 trong 10 danh từ.

a drop of	a grain of	a lump of	an item of	a piece of
-----------	------------	-----------	------------	------------

water	sugar	iron	music	research
meat	rice	news	sand	information

43. (B) Kết hợp một từ ở hàng A và giới từ OF với một từ ở hàng B để điền vào ô trống trong câu.

A: cup, piece, pound, carton, lump, bottle, loaf, bar, jar, packet, can

B: meat, sugar, mineral water, coffee, bread, crisps, chocolate, information, milk, honey, coke

I'd like a cup of coffee.

1. There's an important in the newspaper.
2. She went to the butcher to buy a
3. The little boys drank two
4. He put a in his coffee.
5. Every day people all over the world drink millions of
6. He doesn't drink tea or coffee or coke, just a a day.
7. (At the baker's) Mary said, "I'd like three"
8. Can I have another, Mum?
9. She ate a for lunch.
10. Tom opened the and spread some honey on his bread.

44. (B) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. You take a (bar/jar/lump) of chocolate.
2. You eat a (tube/slice/bar) of cheese.
3. You write with a (stick/packet/bar) of chalk.
4. You eat a (slice/grain/stick) of bread.
5. There are so many (drops/tins/grains) of rice in this small bag.
6. You buy a (plot/slice/fragment) of land.
7. You accept a (word/piece/sentence) of advice.
8. You complete a (part/number/piece) of work.
9. You cut a (slice/roll/lump) of cake.
10. You purchase a(n) (item/number/group) of furniture.
11. You complete a (work/piece/part) of research.
12. You play a (game/set/play) of dominoes.

45. (A, B) Viết A, AN hoặc SOME trước danh từ.

- | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. bread | 2. orange | 3. orange juice |
| 4. coffee | 5. sandwich | 6. tomato juice |
| 7. soup | 8. hot dog | 9. banana |
| 10. tea | 11. sugar | 12. egg |
| 13. fruit | 14. milk | 15. umbrella |

46. (B) Tìm một danh từ không đếm được bắt đầu bằng mẫu tự đã cho mô tả ý chung của bốn từ trong nhóm.

- | | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| 1. club | hole | green | swing | g..... |
| 2. pawn | castle | bishop | queen | c..... |

3. clef	classical	crotchet	compose	m.....
4. cash	dollar	cheque	credit card	m.....
5. ring	bout	round	corner	b.....
6. bag	suitcase	briefcase	haversack	l.....
7. gale	storm	forecast	downpour	w.....
8. corner	striker	referee	penalty	f.....
9. sofa	chair	table	bookcase	f.....
10. Mars	moon	zodiac	Sagittarius	a.....

47. (C) Kết hợp một từ ở hàng A với một từ ở hàng B tạo thành danh từ ghép để điền vào ô trống trong câu.

A: rain, time, head, home, tooth, hair, washing, sign, book, motor

B: case, way, ache, post, coat, drier, work, table, paste, machine

- Daisy used the to dry her hair.
- I need a to put all my books on.
- His mother bought a to save her time.
- It's much quicker if we travel on the
- My brother had a terrible this morning.
- I looked at the to see when the train left.
- I lost my way because the was confusing.
- Our maths teacher gave us too much to do.
- is a thick substance we use to clean our teeth.
- A is a waterproof coat that we wear when it's raining.

48. (C) Kết hợp một danh từ ở hàng A với một danh từ ở hàng B để có một danh từ ghép với nghĩa đã cho.

A: film, disc, news, sugar, film, silk, book, tooth, arm, rain

B: chair, reader, coat, jockey, shop, director, star, cane, dress, paste

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. đạo diễn điện ảnh | 2. người giới thiệu chương trình âm nhạc |
| 3. người đọc tin | 4. cây mía |
| 5. diễn viên điện ảnh | 6. áo lụa |
| 7. tiệm sách | 8. kem đánh răng |
| 9. ghế bành | 10. áo mưa |

49. (C) Viết nghĩa tiếng Việt của những danh từ ghép sau.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. an e-mail address | 2. an opera singer |
| 3. a police uniform | 4. chocolate milk |
| 5. milk chocolate | 6. a horserace |

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 7. a racehorse | 8. a school yard |
| 9. homework | 10. a newspaper |

50. (C) Viết danh từ ghép để hoàn thành câu.

- A box made of metal is a
- His jacket is made of leather. It's a
- Cakes with chocolate in them are
- An engineer who works on computers is a
- Food for dogs is
- A building with offices in it is called an
- She wants some clothes for the babies. She goes to the department that sells
- A school that teaches languages is called a

51. (C) Viết lại câu theo những gợi ý.

- The students had a test. It was on grammar.
The students have a grammar test.
- He's a driver. He drives a bus.
- It's a boat. It has sails.
- He works in a factory. It makes cars.
- They are students. They take engineering.
- He is a student. He goes to university.
- I bought some food. It was for my dog.
- She is a student. She studies biology.
- They are workers. They work on the railroad.
- I know the book. It deals with physics.

52. (C) Điền một từ vào cột A để có một danh từ ghép với nghĩa ở cột B.

- | A | B |
|------------------|--|
| 1. out | a person who withdraws from a sporting event or conventional society. |
| 2. planning | planning the number of children, intervals between births, etc in a family by using birth-control methods. |
| 3. rise | (the time of) the rising of the sun. |
| 4.-license | a shop or part of a public house where alcoholic drinks are sold to be taken away. |
| 5. over | an amount of business done by a company within a certain period of time. |
| 6. machine | an electric machine for washing clothes. |
| 7.-out | a period when all the lights must be put out or covered, |

- especially as a precaution during an air attack.
8. pass a road by which traffic can go round a city or busy area.
 9. pocket a person who steals money from other people's pockets.
 10. pour a heavy and sudden fall of rain.
 11. suit a one-piece garment worn by women and girls for swimming.
 12. writing a person's particular style of writing with a pencil, pen, etc.

53. (C) Kết hợp một từ ở hàng A với một từ ở hàng B tạo thành danh từ ghép để điền vào ô trống trong câu.

A: ice, bus, hair, post, foot, week, living, second, telephone, departure
B: cut, box, end, card, ball, floor, lounge, cream, room, station

1. It's time you had a new
2. They watched TV in the
3. High school boys like playing
4. Children like having in the summer.
5. We often have a small party at the
6. They live on the of a block of flats.
7. He usually reads a newspaper at the
8. Tom sent me a from the seaside resort.
9. There's a public at the corner of the street.
10. Before we got on the plane, we waited in the

54. (A, B) Điền vào ô trống một từ trong bảng. Có thể có hình thức số nhiều.

chair	progress	furniture	hair	information
job	luggage	permission	work	experience

1. My father didn't have much - just two small bags.
2. I'll tell all you want to know. I'll give you plenty of
3. There is room for everyone to sit down. There are plenty of
4. He has no, not even a bed or a table.
5. "What does Tom look like?" - "He's got a long beard and short"
6. Daisy's English is better than it was. She's made
7. Mike is unemployed. He's looking for a
8. Tom is unemployed. He's looking for
9. If you want to leave early, you have to ask for
10. Ed has done many good things. He should write a book about his

55. (A, B) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. This island has a large population. (people)
2. There were a lot of cars on the road to Manchester. (traffic)
3. Gerry is a very strong person. (strength)
4. There are pieces of paper all over the floor. (litter)
5. There is definitely improvement in your work. (progress)
6. Could you get some bread from the supermarket? (loaf)
7. There aren't any tables, chairs or beds in the house. (furniture)
8. This city seems very crowded. (people)
9. Can you tell me about guided tours of the city? (information)
10. The people in the theatre were enthusiastic. (audience)
11. I like maths best. (subject)
12. Sue has gone to see a play. (theatre)
13. I'm looking for somewhere to stay. (accommodation)
14. Jim is out of work at the moment. (job)

56. (C) Kết hợp một từ ở hàng A với một từ ở hàng B tạo thành danh từ ghép để điền vào ô trống.

A: departure, holiday, traveller's, check-in, excess, take, suit, run, charter, travel, duty, seat, boarding, passport

B: agency, resort, card, way, control, cheques, off, case, belt, desk, flight, free, lounge, baggage

First of all, we went to a (1) to get some information. We decided to go to a (2) abroad and we managed to get a (3), which saved us some money. Later we went to the bank and got some (4), At the airport we took our (5) to the (6), They were quite heavy but we didn't have to pay (7), Then we went through (8) and waited for about half an hour in the (9)

While we waited, we looked round the (10) shop and bought some sunglasses. When they called our flight, we got on the plane and showed the stewardess our (11), We found our seats and fastened our (12), Then we taxied to the (13) and waited for (14)

57. (C) Điền một từ vào cột A để tạo một danh từ ghép với nghĩa ở cột B.

- | A | B |
|----------------|---|
| 1. account | a bank account from which money can be drawn without previous notice. |
| 2. ache | a continuous pain in the head. |
| 3. agency | a business helping people to find work and employers to find |

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| 4. alarm | workers.
an automatic device that rings an alarm bell when a burglar enters a building. |
| 5. assistant | a secretary who assists an official or a manager. |
| 6. card | a card allowing a person to board a ship or plane. |
| 7.-chair | a small folding chair on wheels for a baby or small child to be pushed around in. |
| 8. come | an effect or result of an event or circumstances. |
| 9. death | a time of continuous misery. |
| 10.-down | a short rest, usually in bed. |
| 11.-keeper | a person whose job is to record business transactions. |
| 12.-lift | an operation in which the skin is tightened to smooth out wrinkles and make the face look younger. |

5. ADJECTIVES & ADVERBS

TÓM TẮT

A. ADJECTIVES (Tính từ)

1. Tính từ (A) bổ nghĩa cho danh từ và đi trước danh từ (N). Nó có chức năng định ngữ (attributive).

That is a *nice* (A) *house* (N).

This is a *large* (A) *room* (N).

2. Tính từ có chức năng bổ ngữ (predicative) đi sau một số động từ (V) như: be, become, seem, look, sound, feel, get, appear, stay, taste, smell. Trong trường hợp này động từ look, sound có nghĩa là: có vẻ như, động từ get có nghĩa là: trở nên.

This room *is* (V) *beautiful* (A).

The food *looks* (V) *good* (A).

(Thức ăn trông có vẻ ngon.)

It's *getting* (V) *dark* (A).

(Trời trở nên tối.)

3. Phần lớn tính từ có thể vừa có chức năng định ngữ và bổ ngữ.

He is an *intelligent* boy. The boy is *intelligent*.

It is a *hot* room. This room is *hot*.

Lưu ý:

a) Một số tính từ sau bắt đầu bằng a- chỉ có chức năng bổ ngữ, không được dùng làm định ngữ: ablaze (bùng cháy), asleep (đang ngủ), afraid (sợ), alike (giống nhau), alight (cháy), awake (thức), alone (một mình), aware (hiếu), alive (còn sống), afloat (nổi), ashamed (hối thẹn), awash (ngập nước).

The girl is *afraid* when she is *alone*. [Không dùng *an afraid girl*]

Was there anyone *alive* after the accident? [Không dùng *alive people*]

A cigarette set the dry grass *alight*.

The two brothers look *alike*.

In a moment most of the house was *ablaze*.

He feels *ashamed* when he has made a careless mistake.

Is the boy *awake* or *asleep*?

The boat stuck on a sandbank but we soon got it *afloat* again.

b) Ngoài ra, một số tính từ sau cũng chỉ được dùng với chức năng bổ ngữ: ill (ốm đau), well (khỏe), content (hài lòng), lit (được thắp sáng), exempt (miễn), unable (không có khả năng).

Tom is feeling quite *content*.

The candle is *lit*.

Tuy nhiên, *contented* và *lighted* có thể dùng ở các vị trí trong câu.

c) Không dùng *a well-man* hoặc *ill-people*. Thay vào đó, chúng ta dùng *a healthy man* hoặc *sick people*.

The boy isn't *well*. He looks *ill*.

d) Tính từ có thể được dùng sau các đại từ bất định: *something, anything, nothing, everything, someone*.

I don't have *anything interesting* to tell you.

Something wonderful has happened to me since we last met.

She bought *everything necessary* for her trip.

I met *someone difficult* to understand at Tom's party.

There's *nothing new* for me today.

e) Một số tính từ tận cùng bằng *-ible* hoặc *-able* có thể dùng sau danh từ.

It's the only *solution possible*.

Are there any *tickets available*?

I'd like to speak to the *person responsible*.

B. ADVERBS (Trạng từ)

1. Trạng từ (Adv) bổ nghĩa cho động từ (V).

He *drives* (V) *slowly* (Adv).

The girl *sings* (V) *beautifully* (Adv).

Trạng từ *slowly* và *beautifully* bổ nghĩa cho động từ *drives* và *sings*.

So sánh với câu: He is a *slow* (A) *driver* (N). [*Không dùng a slowly driver*]

2. Có nhiều trạng từ tận cùng bằng *-ly*. Những trạng từ này thường diễn tả sự việc xảy ra như thế nào.

He was driving *carefully*.

My brother did his work *successfully*.

Những trạng từ tận cùng bằng *-ly* phần lớn được thành lập từ tính từ.

quick + ly → quickly

beautiful + ly → beautifully

3. Một số điểm cần lưu ý khi thêm *-ly*.

a. Tính từ tận cùng bằng *-y* → *-ily* easy → easily

b. Tính từ tận cùng bằng *-ble* → *-bly* possible → possibly

c. Tính từ tận cùng bằng *-ic* → *-ically* automatic → automatically

C. TRẠNG TỪ CHỈ NƠI CHỖ, THỜI GIAN, MỨC ĐỘ

1. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn (Adverbs of place) cho chúng ta biết sự việc xảy ra ở đâu (here, there...). Trạng từ chỉ thời gian (Adverbs of time) cho chúng ta biết sự việc xảy ra lúc nào (today, tomorrow, yesterday...).

The accident happened *there*.

I'm leaving for Hanoi *tomorrow*.

2. Ngoài ra còn có những trạng từ diễn tả sự việc xảy ra nhiều hay ít (much, a lot, a bit, a little).

We don't like this novel *very much*.

(Chúng tôi không thích cuốn tiểu thuyết này lắm.)

They talked *a lot* on the way home.

(Họ nói chuyện nhiều trên đường về nhà.)

3. Những trạng từ trong mục B, C thường nằm ở cuối câu.

I like it *very much*. [*Không dùng I like very much it, hoặc I very like it.*]

D. TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ

1. Có thể có nhiều tính từ bổ nghĩa cho một danh từ và thường không dùng liên từ *and* giữa các tính từ.

He has a *small white* car.

She has an *expensive wool* coat.

It's a *small, shiny, black leather* handbag.

2. Tuy nhiên, liên từ *and* được dùng khi các tính từ mô tả danh từ bằng cùng chất liệu, màu sắc, tính chất.

It's a *yellow and black* sports car.

That is a *concrete and glass* factory.

3. Trong trường hợp có nhiều tính từ hoặc danh từ bổ nghĩa cho một danh từ, trật tự của các từ bổ nghĩa như sau:

Opinion	Size	Quality	Age	Colour	Origin	Material	Type	Purpose	Noun
beautiful	little								girl
wonderful				red					apples
	long			white					teeth
		clean				paper			bags
			old					coffee	bar
					Chinese		electric		kettle

E. FAST, HARD, HARDLY, WELL, FRIENDLY

1. Fast, Hard, Late, Early, Daily, Weekly, Monthly vừa là tính từ vừa là trạng từ.

Tom was late. (Tính từ)

Tom came late. (Trạng từ)

It's a weekly paper. (Tính từ)

We buy it weekly. (Trạng từ)

2. Hardly, lately có nghĩa khác với hard và late. Hardly có nghĩa là hầu như không (almost not). Lately có nghĩa là gần đây (recently).

I've hardly got any clean clothes left.

(Tôi hầu như không còn áo quần sạch.)

I haven't been to the cinema lately.

(Gần đây tôi không đi xem phim.)

3. Well (trạng từ) có nghĩa là tốt. So sánh với good (tính từ) cũng có nghĩa là tốt.

He's a good worker. (Tính từ)

He works well. (Trạng từ) [Không dùng goodly]

Well (tính từ) có nghĩa là khỏe.

How are you? - Very well, thank you.

4. Friendly, lively, lonely, lovely, ugly, likely, silly đủ tận cùng bằng -ly nhưng đều là tính từ.

Our neighbours are friendly.

I often feel lonely when I'm away from home.

Your bedroom looks very lovely.

It's a silly thing to say so.

Không có trạng từ friendly. Muốn diễn tả ý này để bổ nghĩa cho động từ, phải dùng cách khác.

She spoke in a friendly way.

He acted in a silly manner.

F. TÍNH TỪ TẬN CÙNG BẰNG -ED VÀ -ING

1. interested, bored, excited, annoyed, surprised, frightened, embarrassed, amused, confused, thrilled, worried, tired, horrified, shocked được dùng như những tính từ chỉ cảm xúc.

He feels frightened.

I'm interested in everyone I meet.

I'm sure you must be very tired after working so hard.

2. interesting, boring, exciting, annoying, surprising, frightening, embarrassing, amusing, confusing, thrilling, worrying, tiring, horrifying, shocking được dùng như những tính từ miêu tả sự việc gây nên những cảm xúc nêu trong phần 1.

The ghost story is frightening.

(Câu chuyện ma thật dễ sợ.)

The teacher was boring. The students felt bored.

(Thầy giáo dạy thật buồn tẻ. Học sinh cảm thấy chán.)

G. TRẬT TỰ CỦA TRẠNG TỪ

1. Trạng từ thường đi trước các động từ thường.

He always forgets his birthday.

I often get headaches in the morning.

She rarely goes to the cinema on Sundays.

2. Trạng từ thường đi sau động từ to be và các động từ đặc biệt.

You are usually right.

She has probably forgotten.

I can never wake up in time.

3. Chúng ta đặt ở cuối câu những từ hoặc ngữ diễn tả ý how (như thế nào), where (ở đâu) và when (khi nào).

She sang very well at the concert last night. [Không dùng last-night-at-the concert]

He works in the garage on Tuesdays. [Không dùng on-Tuesdays-in-the garage]

Let's go to bed early. [Không dùng early-to-bed]

4. Chúng ta không đặt trạng từ giữa động từ và tân ngữ của nó.

They speak English very well. [Không dùng speak-very-well-English]

Can you do your work now? [Không dùng do-now-your-work]

H. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES (Tính từ ghép)

Tính từ ghép là sự kết hợp của hai (hoặc nhiều) từ để tạo thành một từ mới có chức năng của một tính từ. Có nhiều loại tính từ ghép, dưới đây là một số tính từ ghép thường gặp.

1. Noun + Adj:

sea-sick: nhớ nhà

ankle-deep: sâu ngang mắt cá chân

2. Noun + P₁:

machine-repairing: sửa máy

hydrogen-containing: có chứa hydro

3. Noun + P₂:

hand-made: làm bằng tay

city-run: do thành phố quản lí

4. Adj + Adj:

red-hot: nóng đỏ

dark-blue: xanh đậm

5. Adj + N+ed:

blue-eyed: có mắt màu xanh

good-tempered: tính tình vui vẻ

6. Adj + Noun:

long-distance: đường dài

high-quality: chất lượng cao

7. Adj + P₁:

fine-looking: trông đẹp mắt

easy-going: thoải mái, dễ chịu

8. Adj + P₂:

ready-made: may sẵn

clear-cut: rõ ràng

9. Adv + P₁:

far-reaching: có ý nghĩa sâu sắc

hard-working: cần cù

10. Adv + P₂:

newly-invented: mới phát minh

well-known: nổi tiếng

11. Noun + tight:

air-tight: kín gió

water-tight: không thấm nước

12. Noun + proof:

bullet-proof: chống đạn

shock-proof: chống rung

13. Noun + free:

duty-free: miễn thuế

pollution-free: không gây ô nhiễm

14. Cardinal number + singular noun:

two-year-old (child): đứa bé hai tuổi

eight-hour (day): ngày làm việc tám giờ

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

58. (A) Đưa tính từ trong ngoặc vào vị trí trong câu.

- He lives in a town. (*small*)
He lives in a *small* town.
- whales are because they are. (*blue, famous, big*)
- An elephant is a animal with a trunk. (*big, long*)
- Thanks very much for your letter. (*lovely*)
- You'll need a coat and boots. (*warm, strong*)
- I'd like to work for a company. (*international*)
- Cigarettes are so in our country. (*expensive*)
- She told me some news. (*awful*)
- You'll be to hear that our teacher retired month. (*sad, old, last*)
- She suffers from vision and hearing. (*poor*)

59. (A) Sắp xếp những từ thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

- is / cold / it / getting
- grew / and / tired / hungry / he
- got / little / the / ready / girl
- promised / she / be / careful / to
- are / their / friendly / neighbours / very
- mountain / lovely / we / driving / along / a / road / were
- was / too / we / go / further / couldn't / because / snow / deep / any / the
- to / naughty / the / short / child / decided / a / take / a / cut / wood / through
- narrow / was / along / a / a / she / path / she / heard / noise / walking / when / loud

60. (A) Đặt câu với những từ dưới đây. Lưu ý vị trí của tính từ và hình thức của động từ.

- Tom / very / tall *Tom is very tall.*
- That dress / look / expensive
 - It / get / dark / early / winter
 - My parents / getting / old
 - The teacher / seem / happy / because / the pupils / good
 - I / want / become / rich / famous
 - The plan / sound / interesting
 - My memory / getting / bad
 - The little girl / walking / through / a dark forest
 - She / feel / ill

61. (B) Viết trạng từ cho những tính từ sau.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. usual | 2. nice | 3. cold | 4. comfortable | 5. wrong |
| 6. loud | 7. hungry | 8. angry | 9. final | 10. probable |
| 11. sincere | 12. happy | 13. dramatic | 14. successful | 15. attractive |

62. (A, B) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

- The (*main/ mainly*) street is in the centre of the city.
- She seems very (*angrily/ angry*).
- Could you talk more (*quiet/ quietly*)?
- He talked very (*interesting/ interestingly*) about his work.
- You can try some of the (*local/ locally*) restaurants.
- The staff are always (*helpful/ helpfully*).
- I sing very (*bad/ badly*).
- I will give you an (*easy/ easily*) assignment.
- They have been (*happy/ happily*) married.
- Tom is (*amazing/ amazingly*) good at mathematics.
- Do you think that's a (*real/ really*) diamond in her ring?
- He was (*wonderful/ wonderfully*) kind to me.
- As soon as I saw him I was (*sure/ surely*) he had been drinking.
- I felt her arm (*gentle/ gently*) to see if any bones were broken.
- The job was (*surprising/ surprisingly*) easy.

63. (C) Hoàn thành câu với trạng từ thích hợp trong bảng.

<i>slowly</i>	<i>easily</i>	<i>here</i>	<i>a bit</i>	<i>tomorrow</i>
<i>clearly</i>	<i>happily</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>a lot</i>	<i>automatically</i>

- You must see the doctor
- You didn't write the address
- The children played
- The train travelled so
- They won the game
- The meeting was held
- The machine switches itself off
- We don't go out
- I play the piano
- I watch TV

64. (C) Sắp xếp những từ thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

- securely / you / all / did / the / lock / doors?
- a / he / quietly / was / on / sitting / seat.

- a / my / was / head / aching / lot.
- the / land / managed / pilot / to / safely.
- early / I'd / to / like / arrive.
- the / performed / experiment / they / scientifically.
- I / these / travel / much / don't / days.
- the / we / to / had / wait / a / at / bit / station.

65. (A, B, C) Viết câu thứ hai, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

- The train was slow. (*slowly*)
The train *travelled slowly*.
- The food had a good smell. (*smelled*)
- Jenny gave an angry shout. (*shouted*)
- The film's ending is dramatic. (*ends*)
- The receptionist was very polite. (*spoke*)
- The children wore expensive clothes. (*dressed*)
- Everyone discussed the idea with enthusiasm. (*enthusiastically*)
- Her toothache was terrible. (*ached*)

66. (D) Viết lại những từ theo đúng trật tự. Từ in nghiêng là danh từ.

- a / landscape / Chinese / *painting*
- a / three-bedroom / house / country
- a / leather / brown / smart / *briefcase*
- a / recorder / Japanese / video / portable
- a / shirt / green / cotton
- a / huge / savage / black / *dog*
- a / Toyota / lovely / blue / little / *car*

67. (D) Viết mỗi nhóm câu thành một câu hoàn chỉnh.

- It's a coat. It is red and is used for winter.
- It's a table. It is wooden, and it's modern.
- It's a brand-new TV. It's portable and has a 12-inch screen.
- This coat is made from fur, and it's brown.
- I've got a pair of boots. They are black and size 10.
- We use a Singer machine. It's for sewing. It has an electric motor.

68. (E) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

- I sing very (*bad/ badly*).
- She speaks English (*good/ well*).
- They make very (*good/ well*) bread here.
- She (*hard/ hardly*) ever wins a game.

5. Do you (*usual/usually*) eat in restaurants?
6. I understand English quite (*good/well*).
7. We have to work (*hard/hardly*) for the exams.
8. I ran as (*fast/fastly*) as I could.
9. I haven't seen the postman (*late/latey*).
10. He often gets up (*early/earlyly*).

69. (E) Điền vào ô trống với từ trong bảng.

<i>daily</i>	<i>friendly</i>	<i>hard</i>	<i>lovely</i>	<i>hardly</i>
<i>silly</i>	<i>monthly</i>	<i>well</i>	<i>lonely</i>	<i>weekly</i>

1. It is a old garden.
2. He needed a friend during those long, ... nights.
3. It is to tramp about so long in the cold.
4. Sally has a relationship with her customers.
5. The Information Centre is open from Monday to Friday.
6. We do the shopping every Thursday.
7. Many people are now having trouble making their house payments.
8. You have worked extremely , and you deserve a holiday.
9. My grandfather hasn't been very lately, I'm afraid.
10. When we reached the top of the mountain I could walk.

70. (A, B, E) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

Peter had a (1) (*strange/strangely*) dream last night. He was in a (2) (*large/largely*) garden. It was getting (3) (*dark/darkly*) and it was (4) (*terrible/terribly*) cold. His head was aching (5) (*bad/badly*). He was walking out of the garden when (6) (*sudden/suddenly*) he saw a girl sitting on a seat. She seemed very (7) (*unhappy/unhappily*). She looked up and smiled (8) (*sad/sadly*) at him. He felt (9) (*anxious/anxiously*) for some reason. He wanted to be (10) (*friend/friendly*) so he tried (11) (*hard/hardly*) to think of something to say. But he couldn't. He just stood there (12) (*foolish/foolishly*).

71. (F) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. The journey was (*tired/tiring*).
2. The book was (*interested/interesting*).
3. She felt (*depressed/depressing*) after her husband left.
4. His family were (*frightened/frightening*) by the event.
5. We are so (*interested/interesting*) in other people's lives.
6. It was a rather (*bored/boring*) meeting.
7. I was so (*surprised/surprising*) when she told me the news.

8. I felt very (*excited/exciting*) when he said that.
9. An (*excited/exciting*) new life is waiting for you.
10. I'm totally (*bored/boring*) with my homework.
11. I wanted to talk to him, but he wasn't (*interested/interesting*).
12. The rise in traffic accidents is (*worried/worrying*).

72. (F) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. I was very (*amused/boring*) when I saw the play.
2. I felt really (*thrilled/exciting*) to hear about your success.
3. The book you gave me was very (*excited/amusing*).
4. He felt (*confused/worrying*) about what they told him.
5. What's the most (*embarrassed/frightening*) experience you've ever had?
6. They were (*horrified/thrilling*) by your news.
7. His wife was (*shocked/amazing*) when he told her he was leaving.
8. What you've told me was very (*surprised/confusing*).
9. You're a very (*amazed/surprising*) person; I never thought you would do anything like that.
10. The details of the murder were (*frightened/horrifying*).

73. (F) Chọn a, b, c hoặc d.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Daisy is very interested | a) I think you should tell her more. |
| 2. Mary is very interesting | b) I think you should listen to her more. |
| 3. Peter is very boring. | c) There are no other children to play with him. |
| 4. Tom is very bored. | d) That's why no one plays with him. |

74. (F) Điền vào ô trống với từ trong bảng.

<i>tired</i>	<i>exciting</i>	<i>surprised</i>	<i>tiring</i>	<i>excited</i>	<i>interesting</i>
<i>bored</i>	<i>boring</i>	<i>frightened</i>	<i>worried</i>	<i>annoyed</i>	<i>frightening</i>

1. I've got a present for you. Don't look so
2. The exhibition was very I loved it.
3. The TV program was so I turned it off.
4. Children can't get to sleep on Christmas Eve because they're too
5. Where have you been all day? We've been so about you.
6. My feet were killing me. I found going round art galleries and museums very
7. I don't go out at night because I'm that someone will rob me.
8. I'm really with my homework. I'd like to go out for a change.
9. I feel very because I went to bed so late last night.

10. It's to go on a ten-day holiday to the Far East.
11. Her father was when she told him she had failed the exam.
12. Their financial situation is very They spend more and more, but they're earning less and less.

75. (G) Đặt trạng từ trong ngoặc vào đúng vị trí trong câu.

1. She cooks a meal in the evening. (*always*)
2. They book that August holiday in June. (*usually*)
3. He is going to stay overnight. (*probably*)
4. Chocolate cakes are the best. (*definitely*)
5. I have tried to find it. (*often*)
6. It is very difficult. (*sometimes*)
7. I feel cold in my house. (*never*)
8. We should look where we're going. (*always*)
9. November is the coldest month. (*usually*)
10. He has had an illness in his life. (*never*)

76. (G) Đặt (cụm) trạng từ trong ngoặc vào đúng vị trí trong câu.

1. Daisy works at night. (*best*)
2. He speaks French. (*fluently*)
3. He reads the passage. (*slowly*)
4. I can't explain my feelings. (*clearly*)
5. She works at the village shop. (*on Sundays*)
6. She practises the violin here. (*every evening*)
7. Put the milk in the fridge. (*at once*)
8. They talked about the problem. (*at lunchtime*)
9. She broke the eggs into the bowl. (*carefully*)
10. I don't think Tom plays tennis. (*very well*)

77. (H) Điền vào ô trống một từ trong bảng để tạo thành một tính từ ghép.

<i>free</i>	<i>deep</i>	<i>witted</i>	<i>hearted</i>	<i>distance</i>	<i>famous</i>
<i>made</i>	<i>tight</i>	<i>covered</i>	<i>minded</i>	<i>lighted</i>	<i>looking</i>

1. After the flood, all the roads in the area were *mud*-.....
2. There is a lot of beautiful *hand*-..... pottery in this shop.
3. Tom is too *narrow*-..... to listen to what we have said.
4. Daisy is not only intelligent but she is also terribly *good*-.....
5. There is not enough light for us to read. It's a *badly*-..... room.
6. This is a *water*-..... container because water cannot go in or out.
7. We should do everything to make our world a *weapon*-..... place.

8. The good news of her mother made her feel very *light*-.....
9. They could cross the stream because the water was just *ankle*-.....
10. Peter always helps us deal with difficult problems. He's a *quick*-..... person.
11. Tom goes around the country in his lorry. He's a *long*-..... lorry driver.
12. Pele is a *world*-..... football player, who scored more than 1,000 goals in his official matches.

78. (H) Điền vào ô trống bằng tính từ ghép trong bảng.

<i>airsick</i>	<i>trustworthy</i>	<i>duty-free</i>	<i>homesick</i>	<i>praiseworthy</i>
<i>airtight</i>	<i>snow-white</i>	<i>carsick</i>	<i>waterproof</i>	<i>good-tempered</i>

Peter was a student living far from home. Because of his hard work at college, he rarely returned home and he sometimes felt (1) Whenever he had a chance to go home to visit his family, he always went by train, not by plane or by car because he was afraid of being (2) and (3)

In his learning, he was very successful and always got good marks from all of his teachers, who often said that he was (4) and (5) had achievements. Besides, his friends often regarded him as a (6) classmate because he was always willing to help them.

One day, he got the first prize with some money in a competition at college. He decided to go to a (7) shop for students to buy some chocolate kept in an (8) container for his father, a (9) watch for his mother and a doll with (10) hair for his little sister.

79. (H) Điền vào ô trống bằng tính từ ghép trong bảng.

<i>one-egg</i>	<i>three-course</i>	<i>twelve-man</i>	<i>ten-ton</i>	<i>thirty-five-hour</i>
<i>one-litre</i>	<i>five-minute</i>	<i>fifteen-piece</i>	<i>2,000-word</i>	<i>4,000-year-old</i>

1. Their cat was run over by a lorry.
2. The concert was performed by a orchestra.
3. The man was convicted of murder by the jury.
4. The Vietnamese people are proud of their history.
5. The price of a bottle of whisky has gone up by 90p.
6. The workers are on strike for better pay and a week.
7. Peter can't go out. He has to write a essay by tomorrow.
8. I didn't have a big lunch. Just a omelette and some potatoes.
9. My new house is very handy for the shops and only a walk from my school.
10. At this excellent restaurant, we can get a meal and coffee just for \$5 per person.

80. (H) Điền vào ô trống một từ trong bảng để tạo thành một tính từ ghép.

air	soft	blue	shock	absent
far	time	easy	world	whole
near	cold	hard	ready	short

--sighted people must wear glasses when they drive a car.
- We can find a great number of-made clothes in this supermarket.
- My mother doesn't mind who comes to stay, she's very-going.
- My father usually has a-boiled egg and bread for breakfast.
--collar workers are those who work in industries, doing physical work.
- Are all the rooms in this hotel-conditioned?
- This is a-proof watch because it is designed to resist damage when knocked or dropped.
- Everyone should make-hearted effort to fight against air pollution.
- Hundreds of thousands of people were unemployed during the-wide economic depression.
- My grandfather often forgets almost everything I tell him, he is so-minded.
- Some of the more-consuming jobs can now be done by machines.
- Daisy passed every exam she took because she was a very-working student.
--blooded animals have a blood temperature which varies with the temperature of the surroundings.
- The restaurant in front of my house is-handed, so they are all having to work much harder.
- Many-reaching proposals were brought in at the Sustainable Development Summit organised by the United Nations in September 2002.

6. PREFIXES & SUFFIXES

TÓM TẮT

A. TIẾP ĐẦU NGŨ CHỈ MỨC ĐỘ, KÍCH THƯỚC, SỐ LƯỢNG

Các tiếp đầu ngữ sau đây được thêm vào trước một số từ nhất định để tạo thành một từ mới diễn tả mức độ, kích thước, số lượng, phạm vi: over-, under-, sub-, bi-, semi-, out-, multi-, super-, inter-.

crowded	→	over-crowded (quá đông đúc)
paid	→	under-paid (được trả lương không đúng)
way	→	subway (đường ngầm)
lingual	→	bi-lingual (song ngữ)
final	→	semi-final (bán kết)
grow	→	outgrow (lớn nhanh hơn)
racial	→	multi-racial (đa sắc tộc)
market	→	supermarket (siêu thị)
national	→	international (quốc tế)

There are many *over-crowded* cities in the world.

The workers are against the management because they're *under-paid*.

That road is very dangerous. Use the *subway* to get across.

We should have a *bi-lingual* dictionary to learn English better.

Korea reached the *semi-final* of the World Cup in 2002.

Children quickly *outgrow* their shoes.

There were a lot of *international* sports competitions in 2000.

We can see a lot of things we need in this *supermarket*.

B. TIẾP ĐẦU NGŨ CHỈ THỜI GIAN, NHẬN THỨC, TÁC ĐỘNG

Các tiếp đầu ngữ sau đây được thêm vào trước một số từ nhất định để tạo thành một từ mới: fore-, mid-, post-, pre-, re-, ex-, pro-, anti-, non-, co-, en-.

see	→	foresee (tiên đoán)
autumn	→	mid-autumn (trung thu)
graduate	→	postgraduate (sau đại học)
school	→	pre-school (trước tuổi đi học)
write	→	rewrite (viết lại)
coach	→	ex-coach (cựu huấn luyện viên)

war	→ anti-war (chống chiến tranh)
Vietnamese	→ pro-Vietnamese (ủng hộ Việt Nam)
existence	→ non-existence (không tồn tại)
operate	→ co-operate (hợp tác)
danger	→ endanger (gây nguy hiểm)

Do you *foresee* any problems with the new system?

Children often get moon cakes in *mid-autumn* festivals.

There are nursery schools for *pre-school* children.

You have to *rewrite* your composition. It's full of mistakes.

We should *co-operate* for a better future of the world.

He likes Vietnamese people and culture. He's very *pro-Vietnamese*.

C. TIẾP ĐẦU NGŨ PHỦ ĐỊNH

Các tiếp đầu ngữ sau đây được thêm vào trước một số từ nhất định để tạo thành một từ mới mang nghĩa phủ định: **un-, in-, im-, ir-, il-, dis-, mis-**.

lucky	→ unlucky (bất hạnh)
correct	→ incorrect (sai)
possible	→ impossible (không thể được)
regular	→ irregular (bất quy tắc)
legal	→ illegal (bất hợp pháp)
appear	→ disappear (biến mất)
spell	→ misspell (đánh vần nhầm)

He is the *unluckiest* person I've ever met.

Some of his answers to the questions are *incorrect*.

Modern life is *impossible* without travelling.

It's so hard to learn all the *irregular* verbs by heart.

It's *illegal* to go hunting in the close season.

I saw him *disappear* round the corner.

Each *misspelt* word should be put right at once.

D. TIẾP VĨ NGŨ CHỈ TÍNH CHẤT

1. Các tiếp vĩ ngữ sau đây được thêm vào sau một số danh từ nhất định để tạo thành một tính từ chỉ tính chất hoặc đặc điểm của danh từ gốc: **-able, -ous, -y, -ful, -ern, -ly, -al, -ish, -like, -ive, -ic, -ical**.

change	→ changeable	poison	→ poisonous
rain	→ rainy	success	→ successful
north	→ northern	day	→ daily
music	→ musical	girl	→ girlish
child	→ childlike	attract	→ attractive
climate	→ climatic	alphabet	→ alphabetical

English weather is very *changeable*.

Keep away from this chemical. It's very *poisonous*.

He will be *successful* in his new job.

Thanh Niên is a *daily* newspaper.

The man has a *childlike* smile.

She still wears rather young, *girlish* fashions.

2. Tiếp vĩ ngữ **-en** được thêm vào sau một số tính từ nhất định để tạo thành một động từ:

tight	→ tighten	less	→ lessen
weak	→ weaken	sharp	→ sharpen
light	→ lighten	wide	→ widen

That screw is loose. *Tighten* it with a screwdriver.

You can *lessen* the risk of theft by locking your bicycle.

Do you have a knife? I want to *sharpen* my pencil.

This road is very narrow but they're planning to *widen* it.

E. TIẾP VĨ NGŨ THÀNH LẬP DANH TỪ

Các tiếp vĩ ngữ sau đây được thêm vào sau một số từ nhất định để tạo thành một danh từ: **-y, -cy, -ty, -ity, -al, -ion, -sion, -tion, -ation, -dom, -sis, -ence, -ance, -ure, -ship, -ness, -age, -ment, -ery**.

difficult	→ difficulty	fluent	→ fluency
clear	→ clarity	popular	→ popularity
refuse	→ refusal	invent	→ invention
divide	→ division	introduce	→ introduction
admire	→ admiration	free	→ freedom
diagnose	→ diagnosis	differ	→ difference
attend	→ attendance	fail	→ failure
friend	→ friendship	dark	→ darkness

use → usage improve → improvement
rob → robbery

The doctor's *diagnosis* was that I had bronchitis.

His *failure* to become a minister was a shock to him.

I had *difficulty* in improving my English speaking skill.

What is the *difference* between these two books?

I don't understand his *refusal* to help us.

The American *usage* of this word is different from the British.

The teacher was pleased at the *improvement* in his students' work.

A book sometimes sells better if it has an *introduction* written by a famous person.

This is a matter of great *urgency*. It must be solved immediately.

She could see nothing in the *darkness*.

F. TIẾP VĨ NGỮ CHỈ NGƯỜI, VẬT

1. Các tiếp vĩ ngữ sau đây được thêm vào sau các từ nhất định để tạo thành một danh từ chỉ người: **-er, -or, -ess, -ist, -ant, -ee, -ar, -ian.**

teach	→	teacher	act	→	actor
wait	→	waitress	science	→	scientist
account	→	accountant	train	→	trainee
beg	→	beggar	library	→	librarian

We're very glad to have a new *teacher* of English.

The film was played by a famous *actor*.

Scientists have devoted their life to the world people.

She'd like to become an *accountant* when she leaves school.

Daisy worked as a *waitress* in her summer holiday.

2. Đôi khi, danh từ chỉ người có thể kết thúc bằng **-ent, -ive, -aire, -al.**

study	→	student	detect	→	detective
million	→	millionaire	crime	→	criminal

Mary is a very good *student*.

The police have tried to look for the *criminal*.

3. Hai tiếp vĩ ngữ **-er** và **-or** cũng được thêm vào một số từ để tạo thành danh từ chỉ vật.

cook	→	cooker	calculate	→	calculator
------	---	--------	-----------	---	------------

wipe	→	wiper	record	→	recorder
------	---	-------	--------	---	----------

My father bought a new *cooker* yesterday.

Tom always brings his *calculator* to school.

G. TIẾP VĨ NGỮ PHỦ ĐỊNH

Tiếp vĩ ngữ **-less** được thêm vào sau một số danh từ nhất định để tạo thành một tính từ mang nghĩa phủ định.

tree	→	treeless	child	→	childless
care	→	careless	rest	→	restless
priceless	→	priceless	harm	→	harmless

No trees can grow on that soil. It is *treeless*.

Mr and Mrs Brown have no children. They're a *childless* couple.

He failed because of his *careless* mistakes in his exam.

My little brother was ill all night. My parents spent a *restless* night.

Two of the paintings in the museum are *priceless*.

Some people still think that smoking is *harmless*.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

81. (A) Điền tiếp đầu ngữ thích hợp vào ô trống.

- national sport really improves relations between countries.
- America has people from all over the world. It's a-racial society.
- Obesity is mainly caused by eating.
- My pupils' desks were arranged in a-circle round me.
- There are few people in this area. It's populated.
- His father is Greek and his mother is Italian so he's-lingual.
- He managed to run every competitor in the race.
- She believes in ghosts and other natural things.
- You've charged me. The price is \$8, not \$10.
- There is a school in this town for normal children.
- They're solving the problems of developed rural areas.
- Many national companies have operations in Africa.

82. (A) Điền tiếp đầu ngữ thích hợp vào ô trống.

- She's incredibly rich. He's certainly a-millionaire.
- He estimated the cost of the holiday and ran out of money.
- Many problems are caused by poverty and population.
- The men in this firm number the women by four to one.
- We should do everything to reduce the number of continental missiles.
- The marine approached the warship unseen.
- He was-conscious when the ambulance arrived.
- He needs a good holiday. He's suffering from work.
- His father has just bought him a new cycle.
- Concorde is a sonic plane. It flies faster than sound.
- Migrants are much more likely to be poor and employed.
- In some places American skis are selling Swiss and Austrian ones.

83. (B) Điền tiếp đầu ngữ thích hợp vào ô trống.

- The-pilot took over the plane's controls while the captain had a cup of coffee.
- He got his university degree last year. Now he's doing graduate studies.
- The teacher told his student to write his bad composition.
- He likes American people and culture. He's-American.
- The building of a new highway across the forest will danger wildlife.
- That's sense! You don't know what you're talking about.
- Men who once served in the armed services are called-servicemen.
- His father was in prison for-payment of fines.
- Dinosaurs lived millions of years ago in historic times.

- I ran into her on a lovely winter morning in a small town.
- We can't tell how the war will end.
- script is a message written at the end of a letter after we have signed our name.

84. (B) Điền tiếp đầu ngữ thích hợp vào ô trống.

- Do you prefer the smoking or-smoking section?
- My teacher courageed me to take part in this exam.
- Peter is not-marriage. He thinks it's a very good custom.
- The main-war problem was to rebuild the destroyed cities and industries.
- He's divorced but he's still on good terms with his-wife.
- Most houses need painting every five to seven years.
- Some flights go from London to the Middle East-stop.
- The party didn't stop until night.
- Both boys and girls go to that school. It's-educational.
- There was an-war march in London yesterday.
- This failure forced us to think all of our plans.
- It's possible to see that the coming winter will be a hard one.

85. (C) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

- It's almost for young people leaving school to get a job. (*possible*)
- John's kind and sympathetic although he's so to look at. (*attractive*)
- Please don't be so I can't do all the work by myself. (*reasonable*)
- It is of you to discourage him from studies. (*responsible*)
- Don't depend on him, he's a very person. (*reliable*)
- The water in this area is and shouldn't be drunk. (*pure*)
- 7.30 a.m. on a Saturday is a rather time for an appointment. (*convenient*)
- Every year many people come to Africa to see its beautiful countryside and its animals. (*usual*)
- hunters are killing many elephants for their ivory. (*legal*)
- Sorry about the mistake. I the instructions you gave me. (*understand*)
- It is to take credit for other people's ideas. (*moral*)
- His attempt to break the world record was sadly (*successful*)

86. (C) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

- I could never be a teacher. I'm too (*patient*)
- Burning coal is an way of heating a house. Gas is much cheaper. (*economical*)

3. Don't trust him. He's completely (honest)
4. He's caused his parents a lot of (happiness)
5. Mr Brown went home at weekends. (regularly)
6. So many things have been going wrong recently that it's It seems like a nightmare. (real)
7. Tom would like to be of their parents. (dependent)
8. was one of the three problems facing the Vietnamese government after the August Revolution in 1945. (literacy)
9. There are very few places left on earth. Man has been nearly everywhere. (explore)
10. The train service was because it wasn't used by many people. (continue)
11. She's very You never know whether she's going to be in a good or bad mood. (predictable)
12. They've my name on this form. The first letter is L, not R. (spell)

87. (C) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I'd lost my key so I couldn't the door when I got home. (lock)
2. His teacher scolded him for his during the lesson. (attention)
3. After I had got to know him better, I him intensely. (like)
4. My family were completely (religious)
5. It was of you to make fun of him like that. (kind)
6. Some of Tom's answers in his exam were (correct)
7. It's a good idea in theory, but rather (practical)
8. She is an person. That's the fourth time her house has been broken into this month. (lucky)
9. There are always mistakes because the firm is so (efficient)
10. After taking some aspirin her headache (appear)
11. I'd love to see you next week, but it won't be possible. (fortunately)
12. He completely the signs telling him to slow down, and ended up crashing into a wall. (regard)

88. (D) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. This is my favourite chair. It's very (comfort)
2. It's to drive so fast. (danger)
3. I must clean this floor. (dirty)
4. Elvis Presley was a pop singer. (fame)
5. How many holidays do we have? (nation)
6. It was not to write down the address. (fool)
7. I live in the part of the city. (south)

8. Everyone likes him because he is (friend)
9. You can rely on his judgement, he's very (sense)
10. She dresses with great style and her clothes are (fashion)
11. The President was a very man. (power)
12. It was so they had to drive very slowly. (fog)

89. (D) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Is lunch ready yet? I'm very (hunger)
2. You can trust her. She's a very girl. (true)
3. The film was and he became very rich. (success)
4. That was a very thing to do. (coward)
5. I caught the train at the station. (centre)
6. His broken arm is still very (pain)
7. She lives in a flat. (luxury)
8. Be careful. The roads are very (ice)
9. Although Tom is twenty, he is quite in many ways. (child)
10. It's to have some toys for the children to play with. (advise)
11. He has a routine of exercises. (day)
12. Thanks for everything. I had a time. (wonder)

90. (D) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I prefer the version of the film. (origin)
2. They saw a figure at the castle door. (ghost)
3. We bought this house at a price. (reason)
4. Why do they give such parties? (noise)
5. He makes people smile because he's so (cheer)
6. What was that sound? (mystery)
7. He's a very driver. (skill)
8. It was of him to start smoking again. (fool)
9. He was very before his interview. (nerve)
10. His new job is very (stress)
11. The children always get bored on a day. (rain)
12. I had to have a examination before I took the job. (medicine)

91. (E) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I'm afraid is hard to find round here. (employ)
2. The man made a thorough of the body. (examine)
3. Have you got any kind of on you? (identify)
4. They had a very happy, ... (marry)
5. His definitely needs working on. (pronounce)

6. There was a strange in the bowl. (*mix*)
7. He sued the company for unfair (*dismiss*)
8. There was a lot of outside his door. (*active*)
9. After some time she recovered (*conscious*)
10. He made a about the robbery. (*state*)
11. Could I have to go home early? (*permit*)
12. I wish you a very happy (*retire*)

92. (E) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. We were shocked by his to see his son. (*refuse*)
2. What kind of is there in this town? (*entertain*)
3. We should always remember to tell the (*true*)
4. He had a strange on his face. (*express*)
5. His will lead to misfortune one day. (*curious*)
6. I don't expect such from my staff. (*familiar*)
7. He was unaware of the of her illness. (*serious*)
8. Is there any more about the accident? (*inform*)
9. There was some new in the laboratory. (*equip*)
10. Swiss watches are famous for their (*accurate*)
11. There's a that he will come tomorrow. (*possible*)
12. You must read the to this book. (*introduce*)

93. (E) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. He hopes to be a minister in the next (*govern*)
2. We are waiting for the of his plane. (*arrive*)
3. There was a to find the best cook. (*compete*)
4. A house always needs space for old luggage. (*store*)
5. He's having a for his bad back. (*treat*)
6. It was the actor's finest (*perform*)
7. Her writing certainly shows (*original*)
8. The of the blood helped them find the murderer. (*analyse*)
9. I have an to the party tonight. (*invite*)
10. There was a look of on her face. (*sad*)
11. Is there any to treat her so badly? (*necessary*)
12. In England there is no postal on Sundays. (*deliver*)

94. (F) Chia các từ trong bảng thành hai nhóm danh từ chỉ người và chỉ vật.

driver, lighter, translator, player, scooter, labourer, actor, eraser, heater, cooker, dancer, wiper, traveller, grocer, opener, freezer

95. (F) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. That speaks too quickly. (*announce*)
2. Can we meet that at the party? (*magic*)
3. The wanted to interview all of us. (*detect*)
4. If you're a , you have to work hard. (*science*)
5. An should be good at maths. (*account*)
6. The sat there asking for money. (*beg*)
7. He's a good He wins all his fights. (*box*)
8. The asked us not to make noise. (*library*)
9. Look! That is going too fast. (*cycle*)
10. Our makes us practise a lot. (*instruct*)
11. She was the only left in the town. (*inhabit*)
12. He talks so much because he's a (*politics*)

96. (F) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I try to speak clearly when I meet a (*foreign*)
2. He's the of this machine. (*invent*)
3. Who is the of the group? (*lead*)
4. Agatha Christie is a famous for her detective stories. (*novel*)
5. The telephone put me through to the office. (*operate*)
6. She's a so we must be polite. (*visit*)
7. Mr Peter Brown is a famous (*economy*)
8. A is an entertainer making people laugh. (*comedy*)
9. Are you the of this car? (*own*)
10. The hotel asked us to register. (*reception*)
11. I don't know why they call him a (*lie*)
12. Alfred Hitchcock was a famous film (*direct*)

97. (F) Chia các từ trong bảng thành hai nhóm danh từ chỉ người và chỉ vật.

saucer, instructor, shower, recorder, commuter, stationer, calculator, photographer, scanner, notepaper, typewriter, interviewer, foreigner, fertilizer, passenger, employer

98. (G) Điền vào ô trống với tính từ tận cùng bằng -LESS.

1. These people have nowhere to live. They're
2. Tom made a lot of mistakes in his test. He's
3. This tin opener doesn't work at all. It's
4. This man never thinks about other people. He's
5. This food has no flavour at all. It's
6. I had an injection but it didn't hurt. It was

7. That boy is very stupid. He's
8. Don't worry, the dog won't bite you. It's
9. I'm always putting my foot on the chair. I'm
10. This painting has no price at all. It's

99. (D, E) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I think the most idea is to go by car. (*sense*)
2. He made an for the position of manager. (*apply*)
3. She got a letter from her boss. (*person*)
4. We need her before we can go ahead. (*approve*)
5. I'd like a nice orange. (*juice*)
6. We must make a about where to go. (*decide*)
7. There are ways of doing this work. (*vary*)
8. is my favourite hobby. (*photograph*)
9. He always feels in the morning. (*sleep*)
10. He made an to see me at two o'clock. (*arrange*)
11. You must be when you open the door. (*care*)
12. The train made a late (*depart*)

100. (D, E) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Some singers earn a lot of money. (*profession*)
2. This time his were not believed. (*deny*)
3. I don't think guns are toys for children. (*suit*)
4. This new centre is an interesting (*develop*)
5. The countryside looks very now. (*colour*)
6. He gave no for his absence. (*explain*)
7. I hope we have weather for our holiday. (*sun*)
8. I had starting my car this morning. (*difficult*)
9. We have a newspaper in this town. (*week*)
10. She has a large of stamps. (*collect*)
11. She was when I told her my plan. (*doubt*)
12. How serious is her ? (*ill*)

101. (D, F) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Although it rains little, the local tap water is quite (*drink*)
2. He lives in a house by the sea. (*wood*)
3. Do you know the of this book? (*write*)
4. We're that they'll agree to come. (*hope*)
5. The sat silently on the street. (*demonstrate*)
6. I think gas is an way of cooking. (*economy*)

7. A football team normally has a to keep the players fit. (*train*)
8. Firemen wear clothing, or they would get burnt. (*protect*)
9. He looks in that hat. (*fun*)
10. They are living in a countryside. (*mountain*)
11. My father has just bought me a (*compute*)
12. He looked when he heard the news. (*thought*)

102. (D, F) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Let's go for a walk in the fresh air. (*health*)
2. The wanted to know everything about the accident. (*report*)
3. It's a very academic, ... book. (*scholar*)
4. I worked as a engineer when I left university. (*train*)
5. Peter is an student in our class. (*industry*)
6. All the felt happy in the end. (*compete*)
7. This city has over a million (*inhabit*)
8. Whisky of course is an drink. (*alcohol*)
9. The music program was performed by some famous (*sing*)
10. This map is very on my holiday. (*use*)
11. He spoke English fluently but with some mistakes. (*grammar*)
12. It was too for sunbathing. (*cloud*)

103. (D, E, F) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. She never comes late. I'm impressed by her (*punctual*)
2. When he was young, he was a (*sail*)
3. You were not to be killed in the accident. (*luck*)
4. of the club is open to all who live in the town. (*member*)
5. We often end our letter with our (*sign*)
6. I wonder if you could help me. I need some (*inform*)
7. Every hopes to discover a new star. (*astronomy*)
8. He was very and explained everything to me carefully. (*help*)
9. This rice dish is a local (*special*)
10. We have just bought a new gas (*cook*)
11. He slipped on the ground. (*mud*)
12. I was impressed by the people's in London. (*hospitable*)

104. (D, E, F) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. It's hard to find in the summer. (*accommodate*)
2. The soldiers had very boots. (*shine*)
3. As I like good food, I decided to go to classes. (*cook*)
4. In your family you have the to behave as you wish. (*free*)

5. My car isn't very It often lets me down. (*rely*)
6. She was the of last month's competition. (*win*)
7. To get married, you should need your parents' (*approve*)
8. This car is famous for its (*reliable*)
9. This model has automatic windows and a engine. (*power*)
10. That company has 2,000 (*employ*)
11. I had to write a for homework. (*compose*)
12. The factory has four lines working at any time. (*produce*)

105. (D, E, F, G) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I wrote letters of application, but got no reply. (*end*)
2. He made a between food in his country and mine. (*compare*)
3. The water in this lake is rather , like sea water. (*salt*)
4. That is going very fast. (*ride*)
5. Smoking is very to our health. (*harm*)
6. This used to happen with alarming (*regular*)
7. Put the ice-cream in the , please. (*freeze*)
8. I like physics, chemistry and other subjects. (*science*)
9. The Sahara Desert in Africa is a vast area. (*water*)
10. She gave a of the new washing machine. (*demonstrate*)
11. Do you think that man with a gun is a ? (*rob*)
12. I decided to come to the shop to meet the (*manage*)

106. (D, E, F, G) Điền vào ô trống với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

1. I was alone and in a strange city. (*friend*)
2. The makes my house look attractive. (*decorate*)
3. Some teachers put a lot of on learning by heart. (*emphasize*)
4. We found a nice place by the river for our picnic. (*grass*)
5. Poor people are often helped by some organizations. (*religion*)
6. The of America was made in 1492 by Columbus. (*discover*)
7. A is someone who studies history. (*history*)
8. I feel very fit and today. (*energy*)
9. The doctors tried to cure him of his on drugs. (*depend*)
10. More and more come to our city. (*travel*)
11. He's very He can repair almost anything. (*practice*)
12. They demanded the of the statue from the square. (*remove*)

7. PREPOSITIONS

TÓM TẮT

A. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn)

1. AT

- a) *At được dùng cho một vị trí, một điểm trong không gian hoặc địa chỉ có số nhà.*
 at the door/ window/ desk/ office/ crossroads/ roundabout/ match/ meeting/
 bus stop/ the traffic lights/ station/ airport/ seaside/ party/ concert/ conference/
 restaurant/ doctor's/ hairdresser's
 at work/ home/ school/ college/ university
 at 69 Trần Khánh Dư Street
 Who is that man standing at the bus stop/ door/ window?
 Mr Brown is at work now.
 Our school is at 139 Lê Lợi Street.

b) *At được dùng để tạo thành một cụm giới từ chỉ nơi chốn.*

- at the top of the hill, at the bottom of the page, at the end of the street, at the
 back of the queue, at the front of the cinema, at/on the corner of the street.
 The garden is at the back of the building.
 There is a public telephone at/on the corner of the street.
 Our room is at the top of the house.
 Let's sit at the front of the cinema.

2. ON

a) *On được dùng cho bề mặt của một vật, một nơi chốn hoặc tầng nhà.*

- on the pavement/ rug/ carpet/ wall/ floor/ ceiling/ table/ page/ shirt/ door/ map
 on the platform/ farm/ island/ river/ road/ beach/ coast
 on the ground (first/ second/ third) floor
 There's a dirty mark on the door/ window/ wall.
 She sat silently on the beach.
 The cat is sleeping on a chair.
 They live on the fourth floor of a block of flats.

b) *On được dùng cho đường phố (USA), phương tiện đi lại công cộng hoặc cá nhân.* on Wall Street, London Road

on a bus/ train/ ship/ plane

on a bicycle/ motorbike/ horse

Her house is *on* Regent Street.

The bus was very full. There were too many people *on* it.

Tom passed me *on* his bicycle.

c) *On* được dùng để tạo thành một cụm giới từ chỉ nơi chốn.

on the right/left of the computer, *on* the back of an envelope

In Britain, people drive *on the left* of the street.

Write your name *on the back* of the envelope.

3. IN

a) *In* được dùng để nói một người hoặc một vật ở trong một nơi nào đó.

in the telephone box/ pocket/ bottle/ kitchen/ bathroom/ garden/ pool/ pub/
cinema/ restaurant/ book/ lesson/ newspaper/ picture/ town/ city/ country/
world/ sky/ queue/ line/ row.

My mother is cooking *in* the kitchen.

There's a little water *in* the bottle.

I have got much information *in* the newspaper.

There's a lot of cloud *in* the sky.

b) *In* được dùng với phương tiện xe hơi, taxi hoặc với đường phố (GB).

in a car, *in* a taxi

in Regent Street, *in* London Road

Peter arrived at the party *in* a taxi.

They live *in* Hùng Vương Street

c) *In* được dùng với danh từ không có mạo từ để nói rằng một người đang ở tại đó.

in bed/ hospital/ prison

Tom isn't up yet. He's still *in* bed.

Daisy's mother is now *in* hospital.

d) *In* được dùng để tạo thành một cụm giới từ chỉ nơi chốn.

in the middle of the room, *in* the back/front of the car

There's a computer *in the middle* of the room.

I was sitting *in the back* of the car when it crashed.

Ngoài các giới từ **AT**, **ON** và **IN**, còn có các giới từ và cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn sau:

a) *above* (phía trên), *against* (tựa vào), *near* (gần), *opposite* (đối diện), *inside* (phía trong), *outside* (phía ngoài), *near* (gần), *by*, *beside*, *next to* (bên cạnh), *over* (ở trên), *past* (ngang qua), *behind* (phía sau), *between*, *among* (ở giữa), *towards* (về hướng), *under* (ở dưới), *around*, *round* (quanh), *on top of* (ngay phía trên).

The plane is *above* the clouds.

Tom is sitting *next to* / *beside* Peter.

There's a bridge *over* the river.

We are not *inside* our house. We are *outside* it.

The car is running *past* the house.

The house is *among* the trees.

He put the ladder *against* the wall.

b) *in* the south/ east/ west/ north of a country (nằm về phương nam ... của)

Ho Chi Minh City is *in* the south of Vietnam.

c) *on/ off* the coast (trên/ ngoài bờ biển)

Danang is *on* the coast.

Off the coast is an island called the Isle of Cham.

d) *south/ east/ west/ north of* (phía nam ... của)

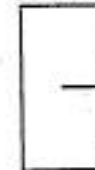
This island is *east of* Hoi An.

e) some kilometres *from* a place (cách ... bao nhiêu cây số)

Hoi An is about 20 kilometres *from* Danang.

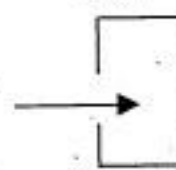
B. PREPOSITIONS OF MOVEMENT (Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động)

out of



The man went *out of* the hotel.

into



The elephants ran back *into* the jungle.

up

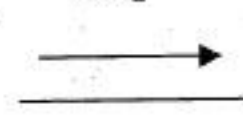


The fireman climbed *up* the ladder and rescued the little boy.

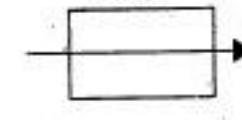
down



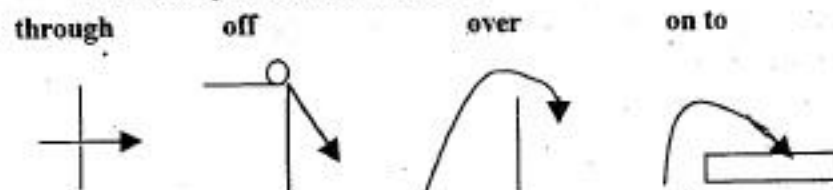
along



across



The man went quickly *down* the hill.
There are many houses *along* the road to the village.
The little boy ran *across* the street.



We went *through* a wood to the cottage.
The man jumped *off* the wall.
The boys climbed *over* the wall into the orchard.
The thief climbed *on to* the roof.

C. PREPOSITIONS OF TIME (Giới từ chỉ thời gian)

1. AT

- a) *At* được dùng để chỉ thời gian trong ngày.
at 5 o'clock/ 11.30/ midnight/ night/ lunchtime/ sunset/ sunrise/ dawn/ noon
They arrived *at* 2 o'clock yesterday.
My father often works *at* night.
We got up *at* dawn and reached the summit *at* noon.
- b) *At* được dùng để chỉ một dịp lễ hội, một thời khắc nào đó.
at the weekend/ Easter/ Christmas. [người Mỹ và Úc dùng *on* the weekend.]
at present/ the moment/ (this/ that) time/ the same time
Will you be here *at / on* the weekend?
Tom and Peter arrived *at* the same time.
- c) *At* được dùng để tạo thành một cụm giới từ.
at the end/beginning of (this month), *at* the age of (25)
At the end of the holiday, I needed another holiday.
He came to live in London *at the age of* twenty-eight.

2. ON

- a) *On* được dùng để chỉ thứ trong tuần, ngày trong tháng.
on Saturday, *on* 7th February, *on* this (that) day
They arrived *on* Saturday.

I was born *on* 7th February.

- b) *On* được dùng để chỉ buổi trong ngày hoặc một ngày cụ thể.
on Sunday evenings, *on* Christmas (Easter) Day, *on* New Year's Day, *on* my birthday
He'll be at home *on* Friday morning.
We met *on* Easter Day and went for a walk across the hills.
We always go out for a meal *on* our wedding anniversary *on* 18th September.

3. IN

- a) *In* được dùng cho buổi trong ngày nói chung, một kì nghỉ hoặc một học kì.
in the morning/ afternoon/ evening, *in* the Easter holiday, *in* the summer term
He always gets up early *in* the morning.
Most students look for temporary jobs *in* the summer holidays.
- b) *In* được dùng cho tháng, mùa, năm, thập niên, thế kỉ, thời đại và thiên niên kỉ.
in August, *in* (the) summer, *in* 2002, *in* the 1990s, *in* the 20th century, *in* the Middle Ages, *in* the 3rd millennium
Our football season often begins *in* August every year.
It's always cold *in* (the) winter.
This church was built *in* 1910.
We have seen many important changes in science *in* the last five decades.
There will be a lot of scientific achievements *in* the twenty-first century.
- c) *In* được dùng trong một số cụm từ để chỉ một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai.
in a moment, *in* a few minutes, *in* an hour, *in* a day, *in* a week, *in* six months
Peter will be here *in* a moment.
They will be coming *in* a few minutes.
Could you run thirty miles *in* a day?
Daisy has gone away. She'll be back *in* a week.
- d) *In* được dùng trong cụm từ *in the end* với nghĩa cuối cùng (finally, at last).
My car used a lot of petrol. *In the end* I sold it and bought another one.
Peter got more and more angry. *In the end* he walked out of the room.

Lưu ý:

Không dùng giới từ *at*, *on*, *in* trước *all*, *each*, *some*, *this*, *next*, *last*, *every*, *today*, *yesterday*, *tomorrow*.

He hasn't been here *all morning*. [*Không dùng in-all-morning*]
 She's going to Oslo *next Saturday*. [*Không dùng on-next-Saturday*]
 Goodbye. See you *tomorrow*. [*Không dùng on-tomorrow*]
 He came to see me *last week*. [*Không dùng in-last-week*]
 The weather was beautiful *yesterday*. [*Không dùng on-yesterday*]

Ngoài các giới từ **at, on và in**, còn có các giới từ chỉ thời gian sau đây:

a) Until, till (cho đến ...)

I'll be in Hanoi *till* Saturday.

You can borrow this book *until* Thursday.

b) from ... to (từ ... đến...)

Every morning he plays tennis *from 6 to 7*.

I watched TV *from 9 to 12* last night.

c) by (trước hoặc đến một thời điểm nào đó)

You must be home *by* half past seven.

She'll have to return the book *by* next Monday.

d) for (trong một thời gian bao lâu)

I lived in Paris *for* three months.

The shop will be closed *for* ten days.

e) since (từ một thời điểm nào đó)

I've been waiting for her *since* half past six.

She has lived here *since* 1996.

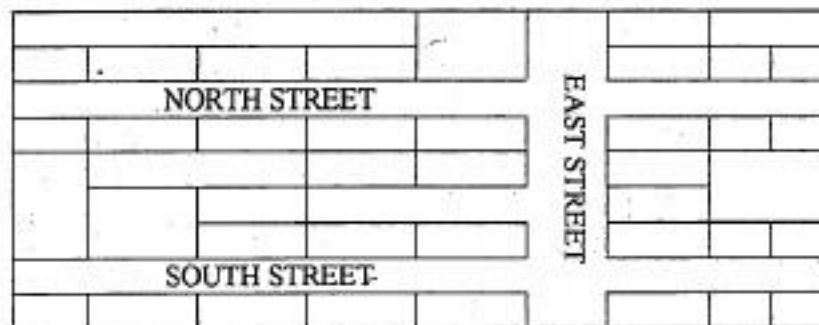
f) during (trong một lúc nào đó)

I slept *for* 20 minutes *during* the play.

You have to be quiet *during* the performance.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

107. (A) Dựa vào phần miêu tả, hoàn thành sơ đồ bằng các kí hiệu.



– church H hotel bookshop post office
 ≡ tree τ theatre hospital

There is a church *in* North Street. *Next to* the church, *west of* it, there is a hotel. Also *next to* the church, *on the corner of* East Street, there is a bookshop. *Next to* the bookshop, just *south of* it, there is a post office. *In front of* the post office there is a tree, and *behind* the post office there is a hospital. *Opposite* the post office there is a theatre.

108. (A) Điền IN hoặc ON vào ô trống.

1. He is the kitchen.
2. Her photo is page 9.
3. There's a bird the roof.
4. They put the notice the door.
5. She had a ring her index finger.
6. children's stories, animals can talk.
7. They live a little village.
8. I wrote the phone number a piece of paper.
9. Is there anything interesting the paper?
10. Ryde is the road from St Helen's to Cowes.

109. (A) Điền IN, ON hoặc AT vào ô trống.

1. Tom is in such a hurry that he didn't stop the traffic lights.
2. Their house is the bottom of the hill.
3. They arrived a taxi.
4. He has a hat his head.
5. I met him a party.

6. We often get our pay the beginning of the month.
7. The train was late. I spent 40 minutes waiting the station.
8. This shirt looks good you.
9. I'm leaving the 3.30 train.
10. New York is the Atlantic Ocean.

110. (A) Chọn giới từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. You can park your car (*in front of/against/between*) the house.
2. They live in a beautiful old house (*above/by/under*) the river.
3. I like sitting (*behind/by/in front of*) a window in class.
4. She put the money (*at/by/in*) the bottom of her suitcase, (*in/between/under*) her clothes.
5. I'll meet you (*in/near/at*) the station (*against/between/under*) the clock.
6. Some birds were flying (*in/on/above*) the trees.
7. We're late because we were driving (*on/in/behind*) a slow bus all the way.
8. Please don't put your stick (*under/against/over*) our wall.
9. Our house is (*near/far from/next*) to the school. It takes about five minutes to walk.
10. I left my bicycle (*on/between/against*) the shop window.

111. (A) Điền vào chỗ trống với giới từ chỉ nơi chốn.

1. My office is (1) Queens Street. It is (2) 22 Queens Street, (3) a large building called Talavera House. Talavera House is (4) the corner (5) Dixon Street.
2. Our office is (1) the second floor. The Viet Hoa Restaurant is (2) the third floor. It is just (3) us. It is (4) the top (5) the building, and we are just (6) it.
3. You'll recognise the building easily; there are some flags (1) top (2) it.
4. This is my room. I am sitting (1) an armchair, and my guitar is (2) a small chair. I have several pictures (3) the wall.
5. You can see a tree the window.
6. Vung Tau is a city (1) Vietnam. It is (2) the south (3) Vietnam, and it is (4) the coast.
7. the coast, there is an island called Con Dao.
8. Danang is about a hundred kilometres Hue.
9. London is (1) the River Thames. There are fish (2) the River Thames.
10. Quito is the Andes Mountains.

112. (A) Viết câu, dùng những từ đã cho để thay thế. Lưu ý thay đổi giới từ và động từ.

I study in the library.

- | | | | |
|---------|-----------|-------------|-------------------|
| 1. here | 2. we | 3. library | 4. read |
| 5. I | 6. here | 7. eat | 8. the restaurant |
| 9. John | 10. there | 11. studies | 12. that building |

113. (B) Hoàn thành câu với giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động.

1. Paul got the lift. He got out from the lift at the tenth floor.
2. He went some stairs to the eleventh floor. Then he went some stairs back to the tenth floor.
3. He walked a corridor, ... a door, and a room.

114. (B) Điền vào ô trống với giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động.

Paul fell (1) a bridge (2) a river. He swam (3) the river, then he climbed (4) it, and climbed (5) some rocks. He ran (6) a field and jumped (7) a gate. There were some bulls in that field, so he climbed (8) a pile of stones and then jumped (9) the stones, (10) the ground on the other side of the fence.

115. (B) Chọn danh từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. They walked across the (*road/church*).
2. They saw a car moving up the (*hill/corner*).
3. The students ran past the (*cafe/wall*) on their way to the library.
4. I went up the (*office/stairs*) to my room.
5. They jumped over the (*corner/wall*).
6. They walked out of the (*church/stairs*).

116. (B) Điền vào ô trống với giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động.

1. The burglar got in the window.
2. They saw the girl walk the street.
3. Flowers grow the side of the wall.
4. The rain ran the roof of the house.
5. Her hair hang her back to her waist.
6. He climbed the wall into the garden.
7. Mike jumped bed as the telephone rang.
8. The little boy dived the swimming pool.
9. I went the mountain to have some fresh air.
10. The passengers stepped out of the train the platform.

117. (C) Điền giới từ chỉ thời gian vào ô trống.

(1) 2000, there were many public events in our city. (2) 2 September, there was a fishing boat race. (3) May there were two big events: May Day and Uncle Ho's Birthday Anniversary (4) 19 May. There was a tennis tournament (5) October. Of course there were many parties and dances (6) 31 December and (7) New Year's Day.

118. (C) Điền giới từ vào ô trống nếu cần thiết.

- What are you doing Sunday?
- There's a carnival next Monday.
- I am sorry we weren't here May!
- There aren't so many events this month, but there's a fishing boat race next Saturday.
- Can we meet lunchtime Wednesday?
- Friday we're going riding. Do you remember? I had some riding lessons last summer.
- They have a tennis tournament every October.
- We're going to Ha Noi the first week of August.

119. (C) Điền giới từ vào ô trống nếu cần thiết.

Yesterday we went shopping (1) the morning. (2) 10 o'clock, we felt tired, so we had some drink in a cafe. We had lunch (3) 12 o'clock, and (4) the afternoon we stayed at home. (5) the evening we went to the cinema, and I got to bed (6) 11 o'clock. After breakfast (7) this morning we hired bikes and biked round Brighton. We're having a rest now, but (8) this evening we're going (9) a concert, which begins (10) 8.30.

120. (C) Chọn danh từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

- My mother usually comes to stay at (*Christmas/summer*).
- We all went to the mountains (*the weekend/last summer*).
- She got married on (*Easter Monday/Easter*).
- The classes start on (*September/September 5th*).
- I will be at work late (*Tuesday morning/tomorrow*).
- I had to work on (*Christmas/Christmas Day*).
- I don't like driving at (*night/the evening*).
- I'll finish high school in (*June/June 1st*).

121. (C) Hôm nay là ngày 20. 8. 2002. Viết câu với THIS, NEXT, LAST, EVERY, YESTERDAY và TOMORROW.

- It rained heavily on August 19, 2002.
- The pupils will go to school on September 5.
- I began my new job in 2001.
- I went away for my holiday in July.
- I'll have my birthday party in September.
- I've spent too much money in August.
- The supermarket will be open in August 2003.
- My holiday is in July 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, etc.
- I hope the weather will be fine on August 21.

122. (C) Viết câu, dùng những từ đã cho để thay thế. Lưu ý thay đổi giới từ và động từ.

We usually have lunch at noon.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. one o'clock | 2. coffee | 3. morning | 4. always |
| 5. noon | 6. lunch | 7. 12 o'clock | 8. usually |
| 9. coffee | 10. evening | 11. afternoon | 12. night |

123. (C) Hoàn thành câu với các chi tiết trong bảng.

Tuan's life

1981	born in Hue.
1987	began primary school.
1991	finished primary school.
1993	started organ lessons.
1996	moved to upper secondary school.
1997	won first prize at the Yamaha Organ Competition.
1999	passed school leaving exam.
1999	began university in Hue.
2002	still at university. Still plays the organ.

- Tuan has lived in Hue from till
- He was born in
- He was a primary pupil until
- In 1996, he had been playing the organ for years.
- He has been playing it since
- He began playing the organ during

124. (C) Hoàn thành câu về cuộc đời Tuan, dùng giới từ chỉ thời gian.

- Tuan has lived in Hue 1981.

2. He has lived in Hue 21 years.
3. He started primary school he was 6.
4. He attended secondary school 1992 1999.
5. He won the prize upper secondary school.
6. He has been at university three years.
7. He has been playing the organ nine years.

125. (C) Điền giới từ chỉ thời gian vào ô trống.

1. The play went on 11.
2. I didn't like the film, so I didn't stay the end.
3. We talked to the neighbours 8 8.30.
4. Vietnamese children have to go to primary school 5 years.
5. This book must go back to the library Tuesday.
6. I got a headache the examination.
7. He lost his passport the journey.
8. I will love you ever.
9. They played tennis an hour or so and then went home.
10. Could I talk to you a few minutes?
11. Can you finish your work 5 in the afternoon?
12. I must find some money the end of the week.

126. (C) Viết câu, dùng những từ đã cho để thay thế. Lưu ý thay đổi giới từ và động từ.

The teacher has breakfast at a restaurant in the morning.

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. 7 a.m. | 2. home | 3. every day | 4. restaurant |
| 5. coffee | 6. noon | 7. here | 8. that building |
| 9. afternoon | 10. every day | 11. we | 12. noon |

127. (A, C) Chọn giới từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. I'll be back (in/on/at) an hour.
2. They've been learning English (in/for/at) five years.
3. I was in the army (during/for/since) the war.
4. He lives (in/beside/at) the corner of Green Street and Link Road.
5. She usually reads a newspaper (in/on/at) the evening.
6. I hope to see him (in/on/at) 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.
7. Who else was (in/on/at) the party on Saturday?
8. What do you often eat (in/on/at) Christmas Day?
9. We don't usually embrace friends (in/behind/at) the street.
10. He lives (in/on/at) the second floor.
11. We stayed (at/on/over) a nice hotel last year.

128. (A, C) Điền giới từ thích hợp vào ô trống.

1. He never drinks alcohol lunchtime.
2. I last saw Helen Tuesday.
3. We've known about it two days.
4. A woman sitting next to me dinner spilt her drink all over me.
5. I like that picture hanging the wall.
6. We met a lot of people our holiday.
7. The lorry had to wait the traffic lights.
8. He turned up early to make sure he had a seat the plane.
9. Did you go away the summer holiday?
10. There was an accident the crossroads this morning.
11. They have been living in Rome last year.
12. We waved him off the station.
13. He often gets his salary the fifth of the month.
14. We have a tea break four o'clock.
15. Shall we travel your car or mine?
16. You can't stay out midnight.
17. The price of electricity is going up November, 2002.
18. We watched TV two hours last night.
19. They hope to finish the bridge next December.
20. the end of the street there is a path leading to the river.

129. (A, B, C) Điền giới từ thích hợp vào ô trống.

1. Do you usually have a holiday Easter?
2. I've been learning English five years.
3. My father was in the army the war.
4. I haven't seen John he got married.
5. What time do you usually get up the morning?
6. See you 4 o'clock tomorrow.
7. The police car chased the robbers the streets.
8. I haven't smoked ages.
9. They stayed a marvellous hotel last summer.
10. I went the chemist's, but I didn't notice if it was open.
11. Peter hurt himself. He fell his bike.
12. We had to wait for him the school gate for a few minutes.
13. The sheep got out a hole in the fence.
14. What do English people eat Christmas Day?

130. (A, B, C) Điền giới từ thích hợp vào ô trống.

John arrived (1) London (2) May 10th (3) eight o'clock (4) the evening. He decided to call on his uncle, who lived (5) Regent Street. He got (6) a bus. It was crowded with passengers, so he had to stand all the way. When John reached Regent Street, he got (7) the bus and walked a short distance (8) the apartment building (9) which his uncle lived.

He knocked (10) the door, and waited (11) a few minutes, but no one came (12) the door. He saw a bench (13) the end (14) the hall, and sat down (15) it. He was disappointed to find no one (16) home.

131. (A, B, C) Điền giới từ thích hợp vào ô trống.

- I'll meet you the airport tomorrow.
- He held the world record for seven years the 1970s.
- There are many tall buildings the road to the city.
- Tom has been ill. He isn't work today.
- It's a public holiday New Year's Day.
- I want to look up at the stars the sky at night.
- The President made a speech his visit to Madrid.
- His village is the south-west of England.
- London is the Thames.
- They rushed the room when the fire began.
- She is wearing a ring her little finger.
- We should hurry. I have to be at home 5 o'clock.
- My father will be here the weekend.
- I've been invited to a wedding party 18th September.
- They drove home silently the darkness.
- The passengers had to stand a queue.
- Tom is out of work the moment.
- We got the train and headed for Nha Trang.
- I didn't get up half past seven yesterday morning.
- He walked the road reading a newspaper.

8. TENSES

TÓM TẮT

A. SIMPLE PRESENT (Thì hiện tại đơn)

- diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc thường hay xảy ra.

He *smokes* two packets of cigarettes a day.

We *go* to school every morning except Sundays.

- diễn tả một sự việc có thực trong một khoảng thời gian tương đối dài.

He *works* for an advertising company.

They *live* in Oxford.

- diễn tả một sự thật hoặc một chân lí ở thời nào cũng đúng.

They *come* from America.

The sun *rises* in the east.

- nói về một hành động trong tương lai đã được đưa vào chương trình, kế hoạch.

The next term *starts* on 5 May.

The last train *leaves* at 4.45.

- nói về tương lai trong các mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng **If** và **When**.

If I come there tomorrow, I'll phone you.

When it is ready, I'll give it to you.

- To be used to + noun/ verb-ing** được dùng để chỉ một tập quán hoặc thói quen trong hiện tại.

Peter has lived in Paris for six years now, so he *is quite used to the traffic*.

You can say what you like. I'm *used to being criticized*.

Lưu ý:

Các trạng từ thường diễn (adverbs of frequency) sau đây thường được dùng với thì hiện tại đơn và đứng trước các động từ thường (ordinary verbs), sau động từ đặc biệt (auxiliary verbs) và giữa các thì tiếp diễn và hoàn thành.

always - usually - often - sometimes - not often - seldom - rarely - never

100% 0%

I *always* get up at 6 o'clock in the morning.

She *usually* finds it easy to do her homework.

Tom *rarely* eats at restaurants.

Do you *often* go swimming?
 He *is sometimes* late for school.
 Pupils *are usually* talking in class.
 They *have always* wanted to live in a big house.

B. PRESENT CONTINUOUS (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

1. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc diễn ra vào lúc nói.
 I can't answer the phone. I *am having* a bath.
 Please don't make so much noise. We *are discussing* an important matter.
2. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc đang xảy ra ở một thời điểm không nhất thiết vào lúc nói.
 He normally goes to work by car, but his car has broken down. So he *is coming* to work by train this week.
 Peter is a student, but he *is working* as a waiter during the holiday.
3. diễn tả một dự định sẽ thực hiện trong một tương lai gần.
 What *are you doing* tonight?
 I *am going* to the cinema with my father tonight.
4. dùng với ý chung để nói về một điều có thể đang xảy ra ở một thời điểm nào đó.
 I don't like to be disturbed if I *am working*.
 She looks lovely when she *is smiling*.
5. để nói đến những hành động xảy ra không mong đợi hoặc bức mình, được dùng với các trạng từ *always, constantly, continuously, forever*.
 You *are constantly* talking in class, Tom.
 My father *is forever* losing his keys.
 She's *always* borrowing money and forgetting to pay me back.

Lưu ý:

a) Những động từ: like, hate, dislike, love, prefer, want, wish, astonish, impress, please, satisfy, surprise, doubt, guess, imagine, know, mean, realize, suppose, understand, sound, believe, remember, belong, concern, consist, contain, depend, deserve, fit, include, involve, lack, matter, need, owe, possess, appear, resemble, seem không được dùng ở các thì tiếp diễn.

I like this wine. [Không dùng *I am liking*]

I need a good dictionary. [Không dùng *I am needing*]

She *doesn't believe* what he says. [Không dùng *She isn't believing*]
 They *don't seem* to understand the question.

b) Các động từ sau đây dùng được ở hai hình thức với nghĩa khác nhau.

I *think* you're right.
 (Tôi cho rằng bạn nói đúng.)
 What *are you thinking* about?
 (Bạn đang nghĩ gì?)
 I *feel* we shouldn't do it.
 (Tôi cho rằng chúng ta không nên làm điều này.)
 I'm *feeling* fine today.
 (Hôm nay tôi cảm thấy khỏe.)
 The meat *smells* bad.
 (Thịt này có mùi thiu rồi.)
 Why *are you smelling* that milk? Has it gone off?
 (Sao bạn lại ngửi li sữa vậy? Nó bị chua rồi ă?)
 The whisky *tastes* wonderful.
 (Rượu whisky này có vị thơm thật.)
 I'm *just tasting* it.
 (Tôi đang nếm thử đây.)
 I *weighed* 45 kilos two months ago.
 (Tôi nặng 45 cân cách đây hai tháng.)
 The scales broke when he *was weighing* himself this morning.
 (Cái cân bị hỏng khi anh ấy tự cân mình sáng nay.)
 I *measure* 80 centimetres round the waist.
 (Vòng eo tôi đo được 80 centimet.)
 Why *is* that man *measuring* the road?
 (Vì sao ông ấy lại đo con đường vậy?)
 I *see* what you mean.
 (Tôi hiểu anh muốn nói gì.)
 I *am seeing* Tom tomorrow.
 (Tôi sẽ gặp Tom ngày mai.)

C. SIMPLE PAST (Thì quá khứ đơn)

1. diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra và chấm dứt ở một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

I *went* to London last year.

She *lived* in Rome when she was a little girl.

2. kể lại một chuỗi hành động xảy ra liên tục.

The man *came* to the door, *unlocked* it, *entered* the room, *went* to the bed and *lay* down on it.

There *was* once a man who *lived* in a small house in the country. One day he *left* his house and *went* into town. From then on, he *never came* back to his house.

3. được dùng với nghĩa hiện tại hoặc tương lai với cấu trúc wish, would rather, it's (high/about) time.

Ten o'clock - *it's time* we *went* home.

I *wish* I *had* a better memory.

Don't come and see me today. I'd *rather* you *came* tomorrow.

4. Could, might, would, should được dùng để diễn tả ý ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Could you help me for a moment?

I think it *might* rain soon.

Daisy *should* be here soon.

5. Used to + verb được dùng để chỉ một thói quen trong quá khứ.

When I was young, I *used to go* swimming in this river.

My sister *used to be* afraid of dogs.

D. PAST CONTINUOUS (Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn)

1. diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra vào thời điểm đã xác định trong quá khứ.

What *were* you *doing* at 9 o'clock last night?

When I got home my father *was watching* TV.

2. diễn tả hai hành động cùng xảy ra đồng thời trong quá khứ.

While my father *was reading* a book, my mother *was watching* TV.

I *was doing* my homework while he *was playing* games on the computer.

3. diễn tả nhiều sự việc đồng thời xảy ra trong quá khứ.

That morning was really beautiful. The sun *was shining*, the birds *were singing*, and everyone in the streets *was smiling* and *saying* hello to each other...

The bride *was wearing* a white dress and *carrying* a nice bunch of lilies. The bridegroom *was trembling* and *looking* pale. Suddenly a stranger stood up at the back of the church...

E. SIMPLE FUTURE (Thì tương lai đơn)

1. diễn tả một quyết định đưa ra vào lúc nói.

It's cold. I *will shut* the window.

The phone is ringing. I *will answer* it.

2. diễn tả một đề nghị hoặc lời hứa.

I *will tell* him about that. Don't worry.

I promise I *won't get* drunk again.

3. diễn tả một ước đoán trong tương lai.

Do you think the car *will start*?

One day people *will travel* to Mars.

4. diễn tả một sự đe dọa.

If you do that again, I *will beat* you.

He *will kill* you if you tell the truth.

5. diễn tả một quyết tâm.

I *will go* with you whether it rains or not.

He *will take* that job even though his father doesn't want him to.

6. diễn tả một đề nghị muốn giúp đỡ hoặc cần được giúp đỡ.

Shall I *carry* this bag for you?

Will you *post* these letters for me?

Lưu ý: Cách dùng của to be going to.

- a) diễn tả một ý định đã được sắp đặt trước.

She *is going to buy* a new computer. (She *has saved* for a year.)

- b) diễn tả một dự đoán có căn cứ.

There isn't a cloud in the sky. It's *going to be* a lovely day.

- c) diễn tả một quyết tâm. (Có thể thay thế bằng will)

We'll *be going to win* the match.

F. FUTURE CONTINUOUS (Thì tương lai tiếp diễn)

1. diễn tả một hành động sẽ đang xảy ra ở một thời điểm trong tương lai.

At this time next week we *will be sitting* for our final exam.
Don't telephone me after eight. I *will be having* a dinner party.

2. diễn tả một hành động là kết quả của một chuyện thường ngày.
Daisy *will be cleaning* the flat tomorrow. She always does it on Sundays.
He *will be giving* another talk on Asian cultures at the same time next week.
3. hỏi một cách lịch sự về kế hoạch của một người nào đó.
Will you be having dinner at home this evening?
Will you be using the car tomorrow? If not, can I borrow it?
4. diễn tả hai hành động sẽ đang xảy ra đồng thời trong tương lai.
I *will be learning* English while my father *will be watching* TV.

G. PRESENT PERFECT (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành)

1. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc bắt đầu trong quá khứ, kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại và còn có thể tiếp tục trong tương lai.
We *have learned* English for five years.
He *has had* his car since he was 21.
2. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc xảy ra và chấm dứt trong quá khứ nhưng không xác định rõ thời gian.
She *has come* here once in her life.
I *have had* two crashes in my career as a driver.
3. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ mà kết quả vẫn còn lưu lại trong hiện tại.
She *has broken* her leg, so she can't play tennis.
I can't do my homework because I *have lost* my pen.
4. diễn tả một hành động vừa mới xảy ra, trạng từ just thường được dùng với cách này. Tuy nhiên, người Mỹ vẫn dùng thì quá khứ đơn để diễn tả hành động này.
I *(have) just received* a letter from my father.
She *(has) just told* me this story.

H. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

1. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc bắt đầu trong quá khứ, kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại. Cách dùng này nhấn mạnh tính liên tục của hành động.
She *has been working* for the same company for thirty years.
How long *have you been learning* English?

2. diễn tả một hành động có tính cách tạm thời hoặc có thể sắp thay đổi.

I *have been living* at 150 Lê Lợi Street, but I plan to move soon.
It *has been raining* for two hours, but I'm sure it will stop.

3. nói đến một hành động bắt đầu ở quá khứ và chỉ ra kết quả hiện tại của hành động này.

She *has been crying*. (Her eyes are red.)
The boy *has been fighting*. (He has a black eye.)

Lưu ý:

Trong một số trường hợp cụ thể, chủ ý sự khác nhau giữa thì hiện tại hoàn thành và thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

I *have read* the book. (I *have finished* it.)
(Tôi đã đọc xong cuốn sách.)
I *have been reading* the book. (I *haven't finished* it.)
(Tôi đọc chưa xong cuốn sách.)
I *have learned* irregular verbs. (I *have already known* them.)
(Tôi đã học thuộc các động từ bất quy tắc.)
I *have been learning* irregular verbs. (I *haven't finished learning* them yet.)
(Tôi học chưa thuộc các động từ bất quy tắc.)

I. PAST PERFECT (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành)

1. diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc xảy ra trước một hành động khác ở trong quá khứ.

When Tom *arrived* at the party, Paul *had already gone* home.
They *had finished* their homework before they *went* swimming.

2. được dùng trong lời nói tường thuật sau các động từ said, told, asked, explained, thought, wondered. Nó nói đến hành động đó xảy ra trước cuộc đối thoại.

I *told* them that I *had done* enough work for one day.
She *wondered* who *had left* the door open.
I *thought* I *had sent* the cheque a week before.

3. thường được dùng với các liên từ chỉ thời gian (when, after, as soon as).

When I *had done* my homework, I went out for a walk.
She didn't feel the same *after* her cat *had died*.

Tuy nhiên, có thể dùng thì quá khứ đơn với liên từ *before* thay cho thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

He died *before* she (had) had a chance to speak to him.

She went out *before* I (had) realized what was happening.

4. dùng để diễn tả một hi vọng, ước mơ chưa thực hiện được.

I *had intended* to make a cake, but I ran out of time.

I *had hoped* that we would be able to leave tomorrow, but it's beginning to look difficult.

5. được dùng sau *if*, *if only*, *wish*, *would rather* để nói đến ao ước hoặc điều kiện không có thật trong quá khứ.

I *wish* I *had had* time to do my homework yesterday.

If only she *had told* me about it before.

I *would rather* you *had told* him the truth.

If you *had come* everything would have been all right.

J. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

1. dùng để nhấn mạnh tính liên tục của hành động hoặc tình huống cho đến khi một hành động khác trong quá khứ xảy ra.

When she arrived, I *had been waiting* for three hours.

I realized that I *'d been overworking*, so I decided to take two days off work.

2. được dùng trong lời nói tường thuật khi động từ trong lời nói trực tiếp dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

He said, "I *have been waiting* for you since 2 o'clock."

He said he *had been waiting* for me since 2 o'clock.

K. FUTURE PERFECT (Thì tương lai hoàn thành)

1. diễn tả một sự việc hoặc hành động sẽ hoàn thành trước một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

We *will have finished* our game of tennis by six o'clock.

I *will have been* here for seven years next October.

2. diễn tả một sự việc hoặc hành động sẽ hoàn thành trước một sự việc khác trong tương lai.

When he retires from his work, he *will have made* a great fortune.

Mary *will have walked* to school before you finish your breakfast.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

132. (A, B) Điền vào ô trống với dạng đúng của động từ BE hoặc DO.

A Who (1) Mary talking to?

B I can't see Mary.

A You (2) looking in the right place. She's over there.

B Oh, that's Peter. He's new here.

A Really? Where (3) he live? (4) you know?

B No, I (5)

A What (6) they talking about?

B Well, he (7) look very interested. He seems to be very bored. And he (8) saying anything.

133. (A, B) Chia động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp.

L: Laura G: George

L Hello, George. What (1) (you do) these days?

G Hi, Laura. I (2) (learn) French at college. What about you?

L Me? Oh, I (3) (work) at a Travel Agency until August.

G (4) (you like) it?

L Yes, I do. They (5) (give) me a good training. I (6) (work) in the shop most mornings, and three afternoons a week the manager (7) (tell) me about the travel business. I (8) (work) quite long hours. I (9) (not get) home until six, but I (10) (prefer) that to not having enough to do.

G Yes, I (11) (work) hard too at the moment. It (12) (become) difficult to get a suitable job. They (13) (ask) for higher and higher exam grades all the time.

L You can do it, George. You (14) (be) clever.

G Thanks, Laura.

134. (A, B, C, G) Điền vào ô trống với dạng đúng của động từ DO.

C: Cathy S: Sue

C Let's go this way past the sports centre.

S Oh, I (1) know there was a sports centre here. It looks new. When (2) it open?

C A few months ago. You can (3) all kinds of sport.

S (4) you use the centre a lot?

C Quite a lot. There are courses in different sports. I'm (5) a tennis course this term. I (6) judo last term.

S Judo? That's for boys, isn't it?

- C (7) be silly. Lots of girls (8) it as well as boys. I've (9) it for ages.
- S How much (10) it cost to go in?
- C You have to pay every year to be a member. But it (11) cost very much. You can go in as my guest if you want to.
- S Oh, good.
- C What about a game of badminton some time?
- S I (12) like badminton much. (13) they have table tennis?
- C Yes, of course. We can have a game this evening.

135. (A, B) Chia động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp.

I (1) (write) to let you know that I've arrived and that everything's fine. At the moment I (2) (stay) at a hotel in Athens and I (3) (do) a lot of sightseeing. Next week, I (4) (move) to the island of Crete, which is where most people in my company (5) (live). I (6) (rent) a villa there for the summer.

The weather's not nice. It (7) (rain) at the moment. Still, it (8) (get) better slowly, and I'm sure it'll be fine when you (9) (come) in the summer. I (10) (look) forward to it. The job (11) (not seem) to be too demanding. Most of the time I (12) (deal) with bookings and (13) (answer) inquiries. But I (14) (suppose) it'll be different when the tourist season (15) (start) next month. Even now the restaurants (16) (begin) to get busier.

136. (A, B, E, K) Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng những từ trong ngoặc.

- There's a party at Mary's house next week. (*Next week Mary*)
- Our meeting is tomorrow. (*We are*)
- The arrival time of Helen's flight is 8.00. (*Helen's flight*)
- We'll get to the theatre after the beginning of the play. (*By the time*)
- Do you have anything fixed for Saturday evening? (*What are*)
- Is this your car? (*Do you*)
- There's rain on the way. (*It's*)
- Our twenty-fifth wedding anniversary is at the end of next year. (*By the end*)

137. (C, D) Chia động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp.

- Kim I hear the lights (1) (go) out last night.
- Charles Yes, I (2) (watch) TV at the time. The program (3) (get) interesting. But the electricity (4) (come) on again after about ten minutes. I (5) (not miss) very much of it.
- Angela Sarah (6) (come) down the stairs when the lights went out. She

almost (7) (fall) over.

Jessica Tom and I (8) (play) table tennis at the time.

Peter I (9) (work) at the computer. When it (10) (happen), I (11) (stop) work and (12) (go) to bed.

138. (A, B, C) Chọn dạng động từ thích hợp.

- D: Dave S: Sue
- D Have you (1) any hobbies?
- S Yes, I (2) pop music.
- D Do you (3) any games?
- S Yes, I do. I like tennis.
- D I like it, too. Can we (4) a game now?
- S Oh, dear, I'm sorry. I (5) time at the moment.
- D Where (6) ?
- S I'm playing hockey. (7) you like hockey?
- D Not really. I'm not good at (8) about and hitting a ball with a stick.
- S That doesn't matter. We just play for fun. Why (9) you try playing?
- D Some time, perhaps. But I (10) a hockey stick.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. get | B. getting | C. got | D. gets |
| 2. A. like | B. liking | C. liked | D. likes |
| 3. A. play | B. playing | C. played | D. plays |
| 4. A. for having | B. have | C. having | D. to have |
| 5. A. don't get | B. am not getting | C. haven't got | D. not get |
| 6. A. you going | B. you go | C. are you going | D. you go |
| 7. A. Do | B. Is | C. Are | D. Have |
| 8. A. run | B. ran | C. I run | D. running |
| 9. A. doesn't | B. hasn't | C. haven't | D. don't |
| 10. A. not got | B. don't get | C. didn't get | D. haven't got |

139. (A, B, C, D, E) Dùng thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc.

I thought you would like to know some of my news. I (1) (arrive) in New York two weeks ago and I (2) (stay) with a family called the Browns. Mrs Brown (3) (work) in a bank, but at the moment Mr Brown (4) (not have) a job. He (5) (do) a course in business management which starts next month. I (6) (have) a good time here, but the work is boring. I would like to find another job.

I (7) (travel) on the underground the other day when I met Tom. Do you remember him? When we last (8) (see) him, he (9) (work) for his

father's shop. Now he (10) (*learn*) English at a school here. We (11) (*see*) an art exhibition together tonight. I'm really looking forward to it.

I like New York very much, but I (12) (*think*) it's very expensive. Could you do me a favour? I need some more money. Of course I will pay you back when I see you.

140. (E) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc với WILL hoặc BE GOING TO.

A: Anita C: Carlo

A What about your plans, Carlo? (1) (*you return*) home after the exams?

C I expect I (2) (*go*) back home at some time in the future, but first I (3) (*spend*) six months in the USA.

A Oh, that (4) (*be*) interesting.

C I've got a job. I (5) (*work*) for a chemical company in Boston. I'm looking forward to it. I'm sure it (6) (*be*) good experience.

A I don't know what I (7) (*do*). At the moment I'm trying to revise for the exams. But I don't know enough. I (8) (*fail*).

C I'm sure you (9) (*not fail*).

141. (A, B, E, F) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc để diễn tả tương lai.

A Hello. Where are you going?

B To my evening class. I'm learning Swedish. And I (1) (*speak*) it for real this time next week. I (2) (*go*) to Sweden for three weeks. I (3) (*leave*) on Friday evening. I (4) (*visit*) friends there.

A Oh, that (5) (*be*) nice.

B Oh, it's nearly half past seven. My lesson (6) (*start*) in a minute.

A Well, have a good time. I (7) (*see*) you next month.

B Thanks. I (8) (*tell*) you all about it when I (9) (*get*) back.

142. (G, H) Dùng hình thức đúng của động từ và FOR hoặc SINCE.

1. I (*not have*) time to do any typing Monday.

2. The boy (*wear*) the same old clothes a week.

3. He (*not ride*) a bike 2000.

4. It (*not snow*) here ages.

5. They (*live*) in that house it was built.

6. My neighbour (*not speak*) to me more than two months.

7. She (*wait*) for you an hour and a half.

8. I (*not see*) my aunt ages.

9. My father (*not get*) enough exercise his last operation.

10. Our sister (*apply*) for jobs she left school last summer.

143. (C, G, H) Sửa các lỗi sai trong những câu sau đây.

1. I have been in Mexico during the summer of 1998.

2. Three years ago he had been a student at a university in New York.

3. We took the bus downtown, did a few errands, and had gone to lunch.

4. The doctor had seen ten patients since eight o'clock this morning.

5. He is studying English for the last five years.

6. I am studying here since August.

7. We have met several fascinating people at the conference last week.

8. Once upon a time a beautiful princess has lived in a castle.

9. I've been owning this answer phone for three years.

10. They haven't been selling all the tickets for the Cup Final yet.

144. (A, B, E, G) Hoàn thành đoạn hội thoại, chọn hình thức đúng.

A: Alice K: Ken

A Look. (1) soon.

K I'm not sure about that, but the sun (2) behind those black clouds.

A And (3) quite windy, too.

K Yes, but I don't think the weather (4) too much.

A (5) the forecast?

K They say (6) fine for the next few days.

A Oh, they're usually wrong. I (7) we can go sightseeing now.

K Oh, let's go. It (8) so far this week.

A All right, but (9) my raincoat and umbrella with me.

K I think (10) about nothing.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. It's raining | B. It's rained | C. It's going to rain |
| 2. A. has disappeared | B. already disappeared | C. has gone to disappear |
| 3. A. it becomes | B. it became | C. it's becoming |
| 4. A. changed | B. changes | C. is going to change |
| 5. A. Do you hear | B. Are you hearing | C. Have you heard |
| 6. A. it's being | B. it's going to be | C. it has been |
| 7. A. not think | B. am not thinking | C. don't think |
| 8. A. isn't raining | B. doesn't rain | C. hasn't rained |
| 9. A. I'm going to take | B. I take | C. I've taken |
| 10. A. you've worried | B. you're worrying | C. you worried |

145. (A, B, C, F, G) Dùng thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc.

I'm sorry I (1) (*not write*) to you for so long, but I (2) (*be*) very busy lately. All last month I (3) (*have*) exams, and I (4) (*not do*)

anything else but study for ages. Anyway, I (5) (stop) studying now, and I (6) (wait) for my exam results.

As you can see from the letter, I (7) (change) my address and (8) (live) in Croydon now. I (9) (decide) that I wanted a change from central London because it (10) (become) so expensive. A friend of mine (11) (tell) me about this flat, and I (12) (move) here about two months ago.

When you (13) (come) to London this summer, please visit me. I (14) (stay) here until the middle of October. Then I (15) (go) on holiday to Scotland. Please write soon.

146. (A, B, D, E, G, H) Chọn hình thức động từ thích hợp.

- "Hurry up. What's taking you so long?"
"I for an important phone call."
A. wait B. will wait C. am waiting D. have waited
- Robert is going to be famous some day. He in three movies.
A. has been appearing B. had appeared
C. has appeared D. appeared
- "Where's Polly?" - "She"
A. is in her room studying B. in her room is studying
C. studies in her room D. has in her room studied
- "Hello, Alice? This is Jeff. How are you?"
"Jeff? I about you when the phone rang."
A. was just thinking B. just thought
C. have just been thinking D. was just thought
- What about the new tax law?
A. are you thinking B. do you think
C. have you thought D. have you been thinking
- "When is Mr Brown planning to retire?" - "He here for a long time."
A. worked B. had been working
C. has been working D. is working
- "Why did you buy all this sugar and chocolate?"
"I a delicious dessert for dinner tonight."
A. make B. will make C. am going to make D. will have made
- "Let's go! What's taking you so long?"
"I'll be there as soon as I my keys."
A. found B. will find C. find D. am finding
- Next week when there a full moon, the ocean tides will be higher.
A. is being B. is C. will be D. will have been
- While I TV last night, Tom telephoned me.
A. watch B. watched C. was watching D. am watching

147. (A, B, G, H) Chia động từ trong ngoặc với động từ thích hợp ở hiện tại.

- What (be) Mr Brown (do) in the garden?
- I (not sleep) very well lately because of the noisy traffic.
- I (try) to get a loan from the bank for eighteen months now.
- The architect (finish) the plans for the new high school.
- The yard (be) full of dead leaves.
- I (wait) for Tom since ten o'clock.
- The local council (build) twenty new houses every month.
- There (not be) any open fireplaces in this house.
- The Government (make) many new laws about housing.
- The residents' association generally (meet) once a month.

148. (C, G) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp.

- R: Rachel B: Bob
- R Hello, Bob.
- B Hello. I (1) (not see) you for a long time.
- R I (2) (see) you in town two or three weeks ago, but you (3) (not see) me. I (4) (be) on a bus.
- B Well, how are things? Are you still living in West Street?
- R No, I (5) (move) now. I (6) (find) a flat just before I went on holiday. I (7) (be) there for three months.
- B (8) you (pass) your driving test yet?
- R Yes, I (9) (pass) in October. I (10) (not buy) a car yet. But what about you? (11) anything exciting (happen) to you lately?
- B Not really. My mother (12) (not be) well for a few months now.
- R Oh, I'm sorry to hear that.
- B And my brother's out of work.
- R (13) (he leave) school in the summer, then?
- B Yes. He (14) (not do) very well in his exams and he (15) (not find) a job yet.
- R Are you still working at the bank?
- B Yes. They (16) (give) me a pay rise.
- R Well, that's one piece of good news.

149. (C, D, I) Hoàn thành đoạn văn, chọn câu trả lời đúng.

Sherpa Tenzing Norgay, conqueror of Mount Everest, was born in the village of Thami in Nepal, probably in 1914. Like many other people, Sherpas, he (1) to Darjeeling in India, from where he (2) part in several attempts to scale Mount Everest.

When Lord Hunt (3) organizing the 1953 British expedition, he (4)..... Tenzing as Sherpa leader, because Tenzing (5) years of mountain experience, and a strong ambition to reach the summit. In fact it was Tenzing and Edmund Hillary, the strongest climbers in the team, who (6) reach the highest mountain peak in the world for the first time. Following this great achievement Tenzing (7) an internationally known leader and guide, and by the time he (8) in 1968, he (9) thousands of people to appreciate the magnificence of the mountains he (10) so well.

1. A. has moved B. moved C. would move D. was moving
2. A. took B. would take C. was taking D. has taken
3. A. had B. has C. had been D. was
4. A. chose B. was choosing C. choose D. had chosen
5. A. was having B. has had C. had D. has having
6. A. could B. had been able C. succeeded to D. managed to
7. A. became B. has become C. is becoming D. was becoming
8. A. had died B. died C. is dead D. has died
9. A. has helped B. helped C. has been helping D. had helped
10. A. knew B. known C. was knowing D. has known

150. (C, G, H) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp.

Before I (1) (visit) Australia, an Australian friend in London (2) (tell) me I'd learn "the Australian salute". "What's that?" I (3) (ask). "You'll find out when you get there," he (4) (say). I (5) (arrive) in Perth last week. Since then, I (6) (stay) at a nice hotel near a beautiful beach. I (7) (never visit) Australia before and I am enjoying my stay. I (8) (swim) every day from the time I (9) (arrive).

Yesterday, an Australian friend (10) (suggest) a tour into "the bush". I (11) (agree) at once. The first thing I (12) (notice) when we (13) (be) in the bush (14) (be) the flies. After a while I (15) (remember) the talk I had had in London before I (16) (come) here. "What's the Australian salute?" I (17) (ask) suddenly, as I waved my right arm to keep the flies away. "That's it!" my friend said as he (18) (wave) back!

151. (A, B, C, E, G, H, I, J) Chọn hình thức động từ thích hợp.

1. Fish on earth for ages and ages.
A. existed B. are existing C. exist D. have existed
2. The phone constantly since Jack won the first prize this morning.
A. has been ringing B. rang C. had rung D. had been ringing

3. The earth on the sun for its heat and light.
A. is depend B. depending C. has depend D. depends
4. I don't feel good. I home from work tomorrow.
A. am staying B. stay C. will have stayed D. stayed
5. In the last two decades, space exploration great contributions to weather forecasting.
A. is making B. has made C. made D. makes
6. On July 20, 1969, Neil Armstrong down onto the moon, the first person ever set foot on another planet.
A. was stepping B. stepped C. has stepped D. was step
7. When boarding the plane, many passengers were annoyed because they waiting in the airport for three and a half hours.
A. are B. were C. have been D. had been
8. If coastal erosion continues to take place at the present rate, in another fifty years this beach any more.
A. doesn't exist B. isn't going to exist
C. isn't existing D. won't be existing
9. Their football team a championship until last season.
A. has never won B. is never winning
C. had never been winning D. had never won
10. By the end of this year, Tom English for three years.
A. will be studying B. has studied
C. will have studied D. has been studying

152. (C, D, I) Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng những từ trong ngoặc.

1. I haven't been to an Indian restaurants for ages. (*It's ages*)
2. How long have Helen and Robert been married? (*When*)
3. When you phoned me, it was my lunch time. (*When*)
4. I haven't had a Chinese meal for ages. (*It's ages*)
5. David went home before we arrived. (*When*)
6. I've only recently started wearing glasses. (*I didn't*)
7. Jack left the office before I arrived there. (*When*)
8. During my dinner, the phone rang. (*While*)
9. I haven't been to the cinema for two months. (*The last time*)

153. (E, F, K) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp.

By the middle of the 21st century we (1) (build) space stations which (2) (circle) the earth and (3) (probably circle) the moon, too. We (4) (establish) bases on planets like Mars. At present, we use radar to "watch" nearly 8,000 objects in space. In addition, there are at least 30,000 bits of

rubbish from the size of marbles to the size of basket balls flying round the earth. These (5) (increase) in number by the year 2050 and (6) (orbit) the earth. All these bits and pieces are watched by NORAD (North American Radar Defense Command).

NORAD (7) (have) more and more rubbish to watch as the years go by. Some bits fall back to the earth, like the Russian satellite C954, which crashed in the Northern Territories of Canada in 1978. Crashing junk could give us a bad headache. Most of the stuff (8) (stay) up there (we hope)! The sad fact is that we who are alive today (9) (not clear) up our own junk tomorrow. Perhaps we (10) (just watch) from some other safe place as it goes round and round the earth!

154. (C, D, I) Hoàn thành câu với động từ trong ngoặc ở các thì quá khứ.

- Last week I (drive) to the office every day.
- How long (be) it before he reached the station?
- How many lessons (you have) before you passed your tests?
- How (you manage) to stop in time when that car shot out in front of you?
- He ran over the cat as it (run) across the road.
- The front tyre burst just as he (turn) the corner.
- The car was stolen because he (forget) to lock it.
- I waited at the traffic lights for ten minutes before they (change) green.
- The breakdown service arrived five minutes after he (phone).
- The car stopped for the children who (wait) to cross the road.

155. (C, D, H) Hoàn thành đoạn đối thoại với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

- J: Journalist MF: Mr Foster
- J Mr Foster, you saw the robber, didn't you? When the two men burst into the bank, what (1) (you do)?
- MF I was counting money behind the counter. Then I noticed the shotguns.
- J And what (2) (you do)?
- MF Well, nothing really. I just stood there.
- J And how long (3) (the robbery take)?
- MF The whole robbery was over in about five minutes.
- J And who (4) (call) the police?
- MF The manager called them. After the men had gone.
- J And (5) (they question) you?
- MF Not just me, everybody. They questioned us as soon as they arrived.
- J And what (6) (you tell) them?
- MF The same things I've told you. There's not much to say, is there?

- J Could you give me a few details about yourself? How long (7) (you work) here?
- MF Three years. I used to be at the branch in the High Street.
- J And why (8) (you move)?
- MF I had to move as I had lost some money. I seem to be rather unlucky.

156. (A, B, C, G) Hoàn thành đoạn đối thoại, chọn câu trả lời đúng.

- A The traffic (1) much worse now.
- B Yes, it (2) easy to park in the city centre.
- A That's right, but not any longer. (3) more and more difficult in the past few years.
- B I remember when you (4) park outside any shop you (5) to.
- A Yes, you (6) park anywhere at all, but now there are parking meters everywhere.
- B And they (7) so many roads into one-way streets now.
- A Yes. There have been nasty accidents. People (8) to the new system.
- B It'll take a while before everyone (9) familiar with it.
- A I miss the good old days when we (10) cycle to the shops. There were no cars at all on the roads.
- B I must say I prefer travelling by car!

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. got | B. is getting | C. used to get | D. getting |
| 2. A. would be | B. used to be | C. is being | D. has been |
| 3. A. It's got | B. It gets | C. It used to get | D. It was getting |
| 4. A. can be | B. could | C. can | D. could be |
| 5. A. go | B. are going | C. have gone | D. were going |
| 6. A. could | B. can | C. are able to | D. could be |
| 7. A. turned | B. have turned | C. turn | D. used to turn |
| 8. A. used | B. using | C. aren't used | D. aren't using |
| 9. A. has become | B. shall become | C. could become | D. is becoming |
| 10. A. are | B. have | C. are used to | D. used to |

157. (C, G, H) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở thì thích hợp hoặc USED TO.

- R: Reporter MV: Mrs Vincent
- R How long (1) you (live) in this house, Mrs Vincent?
- MV I (2) (live) here for seventy-five years now.
- R And how long is it since your husband (3) (die)?
- MV Oh, he (4) (be) dead for forty years. Yes, he (5) (die) a long time ago. I (6) (be) alone since then. It (7) (be) a long time.

- R And where (8) you (*live*) before you (9) (*come*) here?
 MV Well, before we (10) (*get*) married I (11) (*live*) with my parents in West Street. They (12) (*knock*) the house down now. I (13) (*only live*) in two houses all my life.
 R I expect you (14) (*see*) a lot of changes in all that time.
 MV Oh, yes. Miesher (15) (*be*) very quiet in my young days. And it (16) (*not be*) as big as it is today. I (17) (*go*) for picnics on Long Hill with my parents. Now they (18) (*build*) houses there.
 R (19) you (*enjoy*) life in those days?
 MV Oh, yes. We (20) (*have*) a wonderful time. People (21) (*be*) friendlier. We (22) (*do*) things together. Nowadays people just sit at home and watch television.

158. (C, D, G, I) Cho biết dạng động từ gạch chân có thích hợp hay không.

- While I had a bath, someone knocked on the door.
- Sally didn't go to a boxing match before.
- Dick tried to repair the car, but he didn't really know what he was doing.
- What did you wear to Tom's party?
- Were you eating spaghetti every day when you lived in Italy?
- I didn't know you had bought a new car.
- They all wanted to believe her, but suspected she was lying.
- As Mary walked home, she tried to remember what happened.
- "What a terrible day!" thought Lucy. Everything had gone wrong!
- Although it rained a lot, I was enjoying my holiday last year.

159. (A, B, C, G, I) Điền vào ô trống với thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc hoặc một trợ động từ nếu không có động từ cho sẵn.

We (1) (*live*) in our present house in the country for three years. We (2) (*move*) here after our second child (3) (*be*) born. We (4) (*live*) in town for ten years, and (5) (*decide*) that as soon as we (6) (*can*) afford it, we (7) (*move*) away from the smoke and the noise of the city centre, which we finally (8) in 1999.

We (9) never (*regret*) it. We (10) (*be*) reminded of the wisdom of our decision every morning when we (11) (*draw*) the curtains to see open fields stretching before us. When the children (12) (*have*) breakfast, they (13) (*rush*) outside to play, which they (14) whatever the weather. While they (15) (*play*) outside, we somehow manage to start the day.

160. (B, E, F) Hoàn thành câu với động từ trong ngoặc ở các thì tương lai.

- How much money the musicians (*receive*) for this concert?

- He (*not come*) as he's going to London this evening.
- By the end of the day the fair (*make*) a lot of money for charity.
- I (*never forget*) the music played by the old organ at the fair.
- you (*go*) to the concert tonight?
- He (*not play*) cards again tonight, is he?
- I (*meet*) you at ten o'clock outside the cinema.
- The circus (*appear*) at our city again some time.
- They (*hear*) a concert of classical music tonight.
- Do you think they (*go*) on a sight-seeing trip on Thursday?

161. (G, H) Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng những từ trong ngoặc.

- Steve started learning the violin a month ago. (*Steve has*)
- When she heard the results, Mary began to feel more confident. (*Since*)
- The last time Nancy came here was in 1996. (*Nancy hasn't*)
- This is my first visit to Japan. (*This is the first time*)
- It's a long time since our last conversation. (*We haven't*)
- Thanks, but I had something to eat earlier. (*Thanks, but I've*)
- This is my first game of water-polo. (*I haven't*)
- I started working for this company three years ago. (*I've*)
- Oh no! My wallet is missing. (*Oh no! I have*)
- Do you have any experience of driving this kind of car? (*Have you ever*)

162. (C, G, H, K) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở thì thích hợp.

- Jim and Mary (*marry*) since 1995.
- Since arriving in Jakarta, Daisy (*become*) very good at finding her way around.
- I think I'll have to go to the doctor as I (*feel*) ill for some days.
- Mary (*tell*) me that she (*have*) a hard time persuading my son to share his toys.
- Tom soon (*realize*) he couldn't live as cheaply in England as he had hoped.
- For the first time in years Peter (*remember*) his wife's birthday.
- Peter claimed he (*respect*) my feelings on the matter but he just (*cannot*) agree with me.
- I don't believe it! It's three in the morning and that party still (*not finish*).
- I hope Mike (*write*) his report by the end of this week because I want to check it.
- Since the end of the conflict, many refugees (*force*) to stay in the camps for long periods.

163. (A, B, C, D, G, H, I) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở thì thích hợp.

An eight-year-old boy (1) (*disappear*). Mark Brown (2) (*not return*) yesterday from the park near his home in West Road, Boston. The Browns (3) (*live*) five minutes' walk away from the park.

Mark (4) (*go*) to the park at four o'clock and (5) (*play*) football with his friends. After they (6) (*play*) for about an hour, they (7) (*sit*) down for a rest. Mark (8) (*leave*) the park at quarter past five. He (9) (*be*) alone. A man who (10) (*walk*) his dog (11) (*see*) him go out of the gate. No one (12) (*see*) Mark since then.

The police (13) (*question*) local residents, and so far they (14) (*speak*) to about two hundred people. They want to question a middle-aged man in a green sweater who (15) (*lie*) on the grass near the park exit at five o'clock. At the moment the police and other helpers (16) (*search*) nearby fields and woods in the hope of finding the missing boy.

9. MODAL VERBS

TÓM TẮT

A. CAN, SHOULD, MUST, MAY, MIGHT.

1. **can('t)**: được dùng để nói rằng một điều gì (không) có thể xảy ra hoặc một người nào (không) có thể làm gì.

You *can* have a look at them.

You *can't* smoke in here.

2. **should(n't)**: được dùng để khuyên một người nào (không) nên làm một điều gì. Có thể thay thế bằng *ought(n't)* to hoặc *had better (not)*.

I think you *should* take the train; it's faster than the bus.

You know, you really *shouldn't* smoke so much. It isn't good for you.

You *ought to/ had better* learn hard to pass the final exam.

3. **must(n't)**: được dùng để nói rằng một người nào phải hoặc không được phép làm một điều gì.

You *must* do everything he says while we're away.

Soldiers *mustn't* disobey his superior officer.

4. **may/ might**: được dùng để nói rằng một người nào được phép làm gì hoặc một điều gì có lẽ xảy ra.

You *may* come and see the things on display.

She *might* be at home today.

5. **can't, mustn't và shouldn't** thường có thể được dùng trong cùng một tình huống, nhưng chúng có nghĩa khác nhau.

You *can't* make noise in the library.

(Bạn không được phép làm ồn trong thư viện.)

You *mustn't* make noise in the library.

(Tôi muốn bạn không được làm ồn trong thư viện.)

You *shouldn't* make noise in the library.

(Bạn không nên làm ồn trong thư viện.)

Lưu ý: Modal verbs là một (nhóm) động từ đặc biệt.

a) Động từ đi sau chúng luôn ở nguyên thể không có *to*, ngoại trừ *ought to*.

You *should* do this. [Không dùng *should-to-do*]

My brother *can* swim.

You *must* do your homework.

b) Ngồi thứ ba số ít không thêm -s.

He *can* speak English well. [Không dùng *He-ears*]

c) Không dùng do trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi.

You *shouldn't* go. [Thêm **not** sau modal verb trong câu phủ định]

Must I bring any money? [Đưa modal verb ra trước chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi]

d) Không có hình thức nguyên thể (to-ean), và các hình thức phân từ (maying, musted).

I'd like to *be able to* skate. [Không dùng *to-ean-skate*]

She's going to *have to* work harder. [Không dùng *to-must-work*]

B. MUSTN'T, NEEDN'T, DON'T HAVE/NEED TO

1. Mustn't: người nói không cho phép người nghe làm điều gì.

You *mustn't* do this.

You *mustn't* make noise in the library.

You *mustn't* forget the keys or I won't get in.

2. Needn't: người nói cho rằng người nghe không cần phải làm điều gì.

You *needn't* do this.

You *needn't* bring sandwiches. We can stop at a café.

We *needn't* hurry. We still have a lot of time.

3. Don't have to hoặc don't need to: thay cho needn't; quá khứ dùng didn't.

You *don't have/need to* bring sandwiches. We can stop at a café.

We *don't have/need to* hurry. There's plenty of time.

He *didn't need to* take a coat. It was a lovely day.

C. CAN, COULD, BE ABLE TO

1. Dùng can để nói rằng một người có khả năng hoặc cơ hội để làm điều gì trong hiện tại. Could dùng cho quá khứ, will be able to dùng cho tương lai và can't là hình thức phủ định.

Tom *can* play three musical instruments.

It's nice today. We *can* go to the seaside.

In the past, people *could* hardly travel easily.

When the road is built, I *will be able to* go to school in fifteen minutes.

I *can't* come to see her tomorrow.

2. Dùng can và could với các động từ see, hear, smell, taste, feel, remember, understand, believe, decide.

I *can* smell something burning in the kitchen.

She *can't* decide where to go for her holiday.

We *could* see the village in the distance.

I *couldn't* understand what was happening.

3. Dùng was/were able to khi nói đến một sự việc xảy ra ở một tình huống cụ thể trong quá khứ.

That was the first time I *was able to* swim across this river.

The fire spread through the building quickly, but everyone *was able to* escape.

4. Phải dùng (to) be able to, không phải can hoặc could, khi điều chúng ta muốn bày tỏ cần động từ nguyên mẫu, động từ ở dạng -ing, thì hoàn thành hoặc trước đó là một động từ đặc biệt khác.

It's nice to *be able to* travel to Greece.

It was awful, *not being able to* see you for so long.

Since he left, no-one has *been able to* do his work.

Tom *will be able to* come to the party on time.

5. Không dùng (to) be able to, phải dùng can, khi chúng ta nói về một điều đang xảy ra hoặc trước to be + past participle.

Look! The little boy *can* swim across the river. [Không dùng *is-able-to-swim*]

This work *can be done* very easily. [Không dùng *is-able-to-be-done*]

6. Couldn't có thể được dùng cho mọi tình huống.

He *couldn't* swim across this river.

I *couldn't* go on holiday because I was very busy.

7. Can you ...?, Could you ...? hoặc May I ...? thường dùng trong câu đề nghị.

Could you please open the window?

Can you tell me the way to the station, please?

May I read your newspaper?

8. Can hoặc may được dùng để bày tỏ sự cho phép.

You *can* wait in my office if you like.

You *may* borrow this book for a few days.

D. MUST, HAVE (GOT) TO, CAN'T

1. **Must** (chắc hẳn) dùng để nói đến sự việc người nói đoán chắc có thể xảy ra.

No one answers the phone. They *must* be out.

I had my keys a few minutes ago. It *must* be here somewhere.

2. **Have (got) to** được dùng như cách diễn tả của **must**.

I often *have to* work on Sunday mornings.

To get there on time, I *have (got) to* leave home by 8.15.

3. Chú ý sự khác nhau giữa **must** và **have to**. **Must** được dùng khi người nói yêu cầu người nghe phải thực hiện, **have to** được dùng khi người nói cho rằng người nghe có nghĩa vụ phải làm.

You *must* finish this work today. (I'm telling you.)

You *have to* go to school in time. (That's a rule.)

4. **Can't** là hình thức phủ định của **must**.

No one answers the phone. They *can't* be in.

Life *can't* be easy when we're out of work.

Your story *must* be a joke. It *can't* be true.

E. SHALL, WILL

1. **Shall I ...?** (Người nói đề nghị làm một việc gì) (Offering)

Shall I carry the bag for you?

(Tôi mang cái xách này giúp bạn nhé?)

Shall I post these letters for you?

(Tôi gửi những lá thư này giúp bạn nhé?)

2. **Shall we ...?** (Người nói đề nghị cùng làm một việc gì) (Offering)

Shall we go for a walk now?

(Chúng ta đi dạo bây giờ nhé.)

Shall we go boating tomorrow?

(Ngày mai chúng ta đi chơi thuyền nhé.)

3. **Will:** đoán chắc, tán thành, sẵn lòng (Predicting, agreeing, offering)

I think it *will* rain tomorrow.

(Tôi nghĩ ngày mai trời sẽ mưa.)

I *will* talk more slowly again.

(Tôi sẽ nói lại chậm hơn.)

I *will* give you another opportunity to do this.

4. **Will you...?** (Dùng trong câu đề nghị) (Requesting)

Will you shut the door, please?

(Làm ơn đóng cửa giúp.)

Will you come and see us again?

F. QUESTION TAGS (Câu hỏi đuôi)

Câu hỏi đuôi được thành lập từ một động từ đặc biệt và một đại từ nhân xưng. Nó được đặt cuối câu để hỏi về một điều chúng ta chưa chắc chắn hoặc để khẳng định một điều nào đó.

1. Mệnh đề chính là một câu trần thuật (khẳng định hoặc phủ định). Nếu mệnh đề chính ở khẳng định, câu hỏi đuôi ở phủ định và ngược lại.

You *are* a worker, *aren't you*?

You *don't* like beer, *do you*?

2. Nếu mệnh đề chính có dùng một động từ đặc biệt (modal verb), câu hỏi đuôi dùng lại động từ đó.

Your little brother *can* swim, *can't he*?

You *haven't* been to London before, *have you*?

3. Nếu mệnh đề chính dùng động từ thường (ordinary verb), câu hỏi đuôi dùng dạng thích hợp của động từ đó.

Your school begins at 7.30, *doesn't it*?

He went to the cinema yesterday, *didn't he*?

4. Câu hỏi đuôi của đại từ nhân xưng ngôi thứ nhất số ít với động từ to be có dạng đặc biệt.

I'm late, *aren't I*?

I'm right, *aren't I*?

5. Không lặp lại danh từ trong mệnh đề chính ở câu hỏi đuôi. Thay thế bằng đại từ nhân xưng tương ứng.

Peter doesn't feel well, does he? [Không dùng *does Peter*?]

The train is late, isn't it? [Không dùng *isn't the train*?]

6. Nghĩa của câu hỏi đuôi thay đổi tùy theo ngữ điệu. Nếu ngữ điệu xuống, câu nói là một lời khẳng định. Nếu ngữ điệu lên, câu nói thực sự là câu hỏi.

You're a pupil, *aren't you*? ↘ (Bạn là một học sinh mà.)

He is an architect, *isn't he*? ↗ (Ông ấy là một kiến trúc sư phải không?)

7. **There** được dùng lại trong câu hỏi đuôi như một chủ ngữ.
There's something wrong with them, isn't there?
There won't be any trouble, will there?
8. Câu hỏi đuôi được dùng để đề nghị được giúp đỡ, hoặc hỏi thông tin với you couldn't..., you haven't..., you don't know... trong mệnh đề chính.
You couldn't lend me this book, could you?
You haven't seen her today, have you?
You don't know anything about this, do you?
9. **Won't you... ?** được dùng cho câu mời. **Will, would, can và can't you ... ?** dùng cho câu đề nghị một người hãy làm điều gì.
Have a cup of coffee with me, won't you?
Close the door, would you?
Help me with this homework, will you?
Go out of the room, can't you?
10. Câu đề nghị phủ định phải dùng **Will you... ?**
Don't forget to remind me of the meeting, will you?
Don't come to school late, will you?
11. Câu bắt đầu bằng **Let's...**, **shall we** được dùng trong câu hỏi đuôi.
Let's go out for a walk in the park, shall we?
Let's eat out this evening, shall we?
12. Nếu chủ ngữ của mệnh đề chính là nothing, everything và all, đại từ ít được dùng trong câu hỏi đuôi, nếu là nobody, somebody, someone, everybody và everyone chúng ta dùng đại từ they. Chú ý những đại từ hoặc trạng từ phủ định trong mệnh đề chính sẽ được theo sau bằng câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định.
Everything is all right, isn't it?
Nothing can stop him, can it?
Nobody came while I was out, did they?
Everyone feels well after the trip, don't they?
They seldom go to the cinema on Saturdays, do they?
13. Có thể dùng câu hỏi đuôi ở khẳng định khi mệnh đề chính ở khẳng định để chỉ sự quan tâm, thú vị hoặc ngạc nhiên.
You're going to get married, are you? How nice!
She would like to be an engineer, would she?

G. MODAL PERFECT

1. **must have + past participle:** *đảm bảo đã xảy ra trong quá khứ*
I have lost one of my gloves. I must have dropped it somewhere.
My watch says only ten past six. It must have stopped.
2. **should(n't) have + past participle:** *(không) nên làm một việc gì trong quá khứ*
You shouldn't have come to school so late.
We didn't play very well. We should have played better.
3. **ought to have + past participle:** *nên làm một việc gì trong quá khứ*
You ought to have asked me before you took my bike.
We ought to have been more careful in our exam.
4. **needn't have + past participle:** *không cần làm một việc gì trong quá khứ*
You needn't have bought her such a precious present.
We needn't have gone to the supermarket. There's enough food at home.
5. **can't/couldn't have + past participle:** *đảm bảo đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ*
She went to London two days ago. You can't/couldn't have seen her yesterday.
Tom couldn't have taken a bus yesterday. There aren't any buses on Sundays.
6. **may/might/could have + past participle:** *có thể đã xảy ra trong quá khứ*
You may/might/could have left your book in class.
Someone may/might/could have taken the keys from my bag.
7. **may not/mightn't have + past participle:** *có thể đã (không) xảy ra trong quá khứ*
I wonder why she didn't say hello.
She may not/ mightn't have seen you.
(Có lẽ cô ấy đã không nhìn thấy bạn, hoặc đã thấy.)
8. **would rather have + past participle:** *ước muốn đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ*
The film at the cinema was boring. I would rather have stayed home to watch TV.
He studied French at school only because his parents wanted him to. He would rather have studied English.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

164. (A) Viết câu hỏi (?) hoặc câu phủ định (-).

- Ann can play tennis. (*badminton?*) *Can she play badminton?*
- Tom may be late. (-) *Tom may not be late.*
- It may rain. (-)
- Susan can speak Spanish. (*Chinese?*)
- Tom must pay for the service. (*Mary?*)
- David should phone his mother. (*now?*)
- She must work hard. (-)
- They should take a taxi. (-)

165. (A) Điền vào ô trống với CAN('T), SHOULD('T) hoặc MUST('T).

- You make noise in the library.
- I'm sorry, sir, you drink beer in here.
- Jan: We're getting married.
Sam: Congratulations!
Jan: But you tell anyone, it's a secret.
- If you're worried about your health, perhaps you see a doctor.
- You know, you really smoke so much; it isn't good for you.
- These are my most precious possessions so you touch them, but you look at them.

166. (A) Sắp xếp những câu ở cột A với nghĩa ở cột B.

A

- I think you should marry him; I know you love each other.
- You can marry him if you really love him.
- You must marry the Prince, for me and for the family.
- You shouldn't marry him because you don't love him.
- You can't marry him; he's your brother.
- You mustn't marry him. If you do I shall never speak to you again.

B

- I order you to marry him.
- I order you not to marry him.
- I think it's a good idea for you to marry him.
- I don't think it's a good idea for you to marry him.
- You are allowed to marry him/ I allow you to marry him.
- You are not allowed to marry him.

167. (A) Sắp xếp câu bên trái với nghĩa ở bên phải.

- You can't smoke in here. a) I'm telling you not to smoke.
- You mustn't smoke in here. b) They don't allow smoking here.
- You shouldn't smoke in here. c) I suggest you don't smoke here.

168. (A) Viết lại những câu sau với MAY.

- Perhaps we'll buy a car. *We may buy a car.*
- Perhaps Mary is ill.
- Perhaps she's not at home.
- Perhaps he won't change his job.
- Perhaps it won't rain.

169. (A) Chọn hình thức đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- Visitors (*should/ might/ can't*) pay attention to the following advice.
- When dining with friends in a restaurant, you (*can/ must/ should*) be expected to "go Dutch".
- We (*can/ might/ mustn't*) discuss the differences between urban life and rural life in groups.
- You (*can/ will/ should*) avoid walking under a ladder.
- (*May/ Should/ Can*) this new product prolong human life?

170. (A) Hoàn thành câu với MIGHT BE và danh từ trong bảng.

teacher	gardener	doctor	vet	actor	engineer
---------	----------	--------	-----	-------	----------

- Peter likes teaching. When he grows up he *might be a teacher.*
- Mary likes taking care of other people. She
- Tom likes building. He
- Paul likes the theatre. He
- George likes animals. He
- David likes planting flowers. He

171. (B) Viết câu với MUSTN'T, dùng từ ở cột A với từ ở cột B.

A	B
light fires	in the cinema
play	in the classroom
pick flowers	near the lake
smoke	on a plane
make noise	at a campsite
use a mobile phone	in the park

172. (B) Sắp xếp câu ở cột A với câu ở cột B.

A	B
1. You needn't hurry.	a. We've got enough for breakfast.
2. You needn't lend me any money.	b. I've got a map.
3. You needn't make lunch.	c. I've got an alarm clock.
4. You needn't tell me the directions.	d. I've got some.
5. You needn't wake me up.	e. We'll eat out.
6. You needn't buy more bread.	f. You have plenty of time.

173. (B) Điền MUSTN'T hoặc NEEDN'T vào ô trống.

- You wake me up. I am not working tomorrow.
- You wake me up. I need a rest.
- We leave early. It's very cold in the early morning.
- We leave early. The class starts at 9.
- We leave the door open. The rain will come in.
- We leave the door open. Peter has got a key.
- You look for it in the kitchen. I didn't put it there.
- You eat these mushrooms. They are poisonous.
- You drive so fast. The speed limit is only 40 km per hour.
- You phone her. She knows already.

174. (C) Viết câu hỏi với CAN hoặc COULD.

- I am looking for a job. (What/ do)
What can you do?
- I want to be an interpreter. (speak English)
Can you speak English?
- They wanted to buy a car. (afford it)
- He lived in France for a short time. (speak French)
- My sister wants to work in an office. (type)
- My son is 5 years old now. (read)
- I was in Sydney in 2000. (see the Olympic Games)
- We once reached the North Pole. (How/ get there)
- I've finished my homework. (When/ do that)

175. (C) Điền vào ô trống với CAN, COULD, các dạng của chúng ở nguyên thể, tương lai, quá khứ, và hoàn thành. Đôi khi, dùng hình thức phủ định.

- I can read French, but I speak it.
- He is learning English. He speak it soon.
- When I was four I read and write.

- In the future we make very small computers.
- Yesterday my friend and I climb to the top of this mountain.
- Before he was ill he eat anything.
- If I won a lot of money, I buy a big house.
- Simon is so worried. He sleep recently.
- I have a pain in my leg. I walk well these days.
- She fell into the river but fortunately we rescue her.

176. (C) Viết lại câu theo cách nói lịch sự hơn.

- Open the door. *Can you open the door?*
- Tell me your name.
- Change some dollars for me.
- Give me a receipt.
- Show me the way to the station.
- Pass me the salt.

177. (D) Hoàn thành câu với MUST hoặc CAN'T.

- She smiles all the time. I'm sure she's happy.
She must be happy.
- Many people are leaving the theatre. I am sure the play isn't very good.
The play can't be very good.
- Listen to his accent. I'm sure he's Australian.
- He's just bought a house and a car. I feel sure that he has a lot of money.
- Their car isn't in the garage. I'm sure they are not at home.
- Many people wave to her. I'm sure she is very popular.
- I gave him a lot of money yesterday. I'm sure he doesn't spend so much in a short time.

178. (D) Hoàn thành hai câu về mỗi tình huống, một với MUST, một với CAN'T.

- This restaurant is always empty.
The food must be bad.
The service can't be good.
- They've just moved in.
..... be new here.
..... know many people here.
- She always wears old clothes.
..... poor.
..... rich.

4. Her shoes are small.

Her feet a grown-up girl.

5. The boy looks pale.

..... sick.
..... well.

179. (E) Hoàn thành câu với SHALL I hoặc SHALL WE.

1. You offer to turn on the light.

Shall I turn on the light?

2. You suggest going to the library.

Shall we go to the library?

3. You ask your friend if she wants you to buy a dress.

..... this dress?

4. You and your friend don't know where to go for your holiday.

You ask: Where

5. You and your friend don't know when to go to the circus.

You ask: When

6. You offer to make your friend a cup of tea.

..... you a cup of tea?

7. You offer to drive your friend to the airport.

..... to the airport?

8. You suggest looking for a hotel.

..... for a hotel?

9. You and your friend don't know how much bread to buy for the party.

You ask: How much

180. (E) Điền WILL, WON'T hoặc SHALL vào ô trống.

1. Can somebody post the letters? - I do it.

2. The baby stop crying. Can you sing to her?

3. Don't worry. I drive too fast.

4. we go? - Just a minute, I'm not ready yet.

5. we take the bus or the train?

6. The car start. There must be something wrong with it.

7. Tea or coffee? - I have coffee, please.

8. I listen to any of this nonsense.

9. I wait for you? - Oh, thank you.

10. Tom and I help you get everything ready.

181. (A, B, C, D, E) Viết lại các câu sau, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. What about going to the cinema tonight? (*shall*)

2. There is someone at the door. Perhaps it's Peter. (*might*)

3. I'm sure this is the restaurant we ate at. (*must*)

4. It's not a good idea to eat so much meat. (*shouldn't*)

5. I want to leave the room. (*may*)

6. It isn't necessary for you to get up early. (*need*)

7. It's OK for her to leave early. (*can*)

8. There is a possibility of better weather tomorrow. (*might*)

9. You are not allowed to buy cigarettes if you're under 16. (*mustn't*)

10. I think you'd better follow your father's advice. (*ought*)

11. The doctor insists that I avoid fatty foods. (*have*)

12. Do you know how to make a sandwich? (*can*)

13. I'm sure we're going to have good weather tomorrow. (*will*)

14. What's that noise? Maybe it's the children playing upstairs. (*might*)

182. (F) Hoàn thành câu với câu hỏi đuôi thích hợp.

1. Tom went to the seaside yesterday, ... ?

2. There's an exam tomorrow, ... ?

3. Daisy will be attending university in September, ... ?

4. We've been learning English for five years, ... ?

5. You should stay in bed, ... ?

6. You can't play badminton today, ... ?

7. I ought to clean the room now, ... ?

8. You'd rather wait till next week, ... ?

9. He must be there, ... ?

10. It might rain tonight, ... ?

11. She loves him very much, ... ?

12. There aren't any apples left, ... ?

183. (F) Hoàn thành đoạn hội thoại với câu hỏi đuôi thích hợp.

Nam Hello. You're Nga, (1) ?

Nga Yes, I remember you, too. You're Nam.

Nam That's right. We were in the same class, (2) ? But it's easy to forget people, (3) ?

Nga I think I remember most of the people here. Look at the woman over there. It's Lan. She's a newscaster at our local television station, (4) ?

Nam Yes, she's on television quite often. She's done well, (5) ?

Nga We had a lot of fun at school (6) ?

Nam Yes. Don't turn round. Phong is looking at us.
 Nga Is he?
 Nam Yes. You can remember him, (7)?
 Nga Oh, yes.
 Nam I hated him. Oh, he's coming over here.
 Nga Well, it's a reunion. We ought to be friendly, (8)?
 Phong Hello, Nam. Nice to see you again.
 Nam Nice to see you too, Phong.
 Phong This reunion was a good idea, (9)?
 Nam Yes, I'm enjoying it. Phong, do you remember Nga?
 Phong Yes. She's going to be my wife.
 Nam Oh. You're getting married, (10)? How nice!

184. (F) Hoàn thành câu với câu hỏi dưới thích hợp.

1. This grammar lesson is easy, ...?
2. I'm right, ...?
3. They had to do it, ...?
4. Don't tell him about it, ...?
5. Let's have a picnic on the beach, ...?
6. We could stay overnight, ...?
7. You're going on holiday, ...?
8. Nobody died in that accident, ...?
9. These books aren't yours, ...?
10. Remember to lock the door when you're out, ...?
11. We've seen this movie before, ...?
12. There weren't many people at the meeting, ...?

185. (G) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. I'm sure that Jack hasn't left home yet. (*can't*).
2. Perhaps Jean's plane was delayed. (*might*).
3. You were wrong to get up so late. (*shouldn't*).
4. It was unnecessary for you to come early today. (*needn't*).
5. Tony is supposed to be here by now. (*should*).
6. I suppose that I left my keys at home. (*must*).
7. It was possible for me to do it instead. (*could*).
8. It's possible that this prediction has already come true. (*may*).

186. (G) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. It was a mistake not to bring your umbrella. (*should*).
2. I can imagine how worried Tom's father was. (*must*).

3. It is possible that one of the men died on the mountain. (*may*).
4. It wasn't necessary for you to do all this work. (*needn't*).
5. It was a mistake for you to buy that house. (*shouldn't*).
6. I don't think Sally enjoyed her holiday. (*can't*).
7. Perhaps Alan didn't mean what he said. (*mightn't*).
8. It was the driver's fault. He didn't stop at the red light. (*should*).
9. It's possible that I left my wallet at home. (*could*).
10. Perhaps he spent all his money when he was young. (*might*).

187. (A, B, C, D, E, G) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. When my father was young, he work in the garden for long hours.
A. can B. could C. will D. should
2. He have committed the crime because he was with me that day.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. won't D. couldn't
3. Since we have to be there by 8.30, we take a taxi.
A. had better B. may C. ought D. are able to
4. It rain this evening. Why don't you take an umbrella?
A. could be B. must C. might D. had better
5. you help me with the homework?
A. May B. Shall C. Should D. Will
6. She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She be really hungry.
A. might B. will C. must D. can
7. I put my keys on the table, but now it's gone. Someone have taken it.
A. may B. had to C. should D. would rather
8. Daisy is reading her English text because she has a test tomorrow. She be studying.
A. will B. should C. must D. can
9. We put the fish in the fridge before it spoils.
A. had to B. may C. can D. had better
10. Mr Brown is very rich. He work hard for a living.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. can't D. doesn't have to
11. Tom has just got a new job. He be very pleased.
A. might B. must C. should D. will
12. Tom painted his room black. It looks dark and dreary. He have chosen another colour.
A. should B. must C. could D. may
13. you carry this bag for me?
A. May B. Should C. Will D. Shall
14. You throw litter on the streets.
A. mustn't B. couldn't C. needn't D. won't

10. CONDITIONALS & WISHES

TÓM TẮT

A. FIRST CONDITIONAL

diễn tả một điều kiện có thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

If you leave before 10 o'clock, you will catch the train easily.

I will stay at home if it rains.

B. SECOND CONDITIONAL

diễn tả một điều kiện trái với hiện tại hoặc không thể xảy ra trong tương lai.

If I were you, I would follow his advice.

She would get the job if she could speak English.

C. THIRD CONDITIONAL

diễn tả một điều kiện không có thể xảy ra trong quá khứ.

If the driver had been more careful, he wouldn't have had the accident.

If I had known that you were in hospital, I would have come to visit you.

Types	If- Clauses	Main clauses
First Conditional	Simple present	Simple future
Second Conditional	Simple past	Future in the past
Third Conditional	Past perfect	Modal perfect

D. WISH, IF ONLY + CLAUSE

Cấu trúc wish và If only + clause (giá mà) dùng để bày tỏ:

1. ao ước không có thật hoặc giả định ở hiện tại.

I wish Peter were here now. [He isn't here now.]

(Tôi ước Peter có mặt ở đây bây giờ.)

If only I had more money, I could buy some new clothes. [I don't have enough money]

(Giá mà bây giờ tôi có tiền nhiều hơn, tôi có thể mua một số quần áo mới.)

2. ao ước không có thật hoặc giả định ở tương lai.

She wishes Tom would be here tomorrow. [He is away on business now.]

(Cô ấy ước Tom sẽ có mặt ở đây ngày mai.)

If only Tom would be here tomorrow.

(Giá mà Tom sẽ có mặt ở đây ngày mai.)

3. ao ước không có thật hoặc giả định ở quá khứ.

We wish she had passed her exam. (She failed the exam.)

(Chúng tôi ước gì cô ấy đã thi đậu.)

If only you hadn't told Peter about our plan. (You have already told him.)

(Giá mà bạn đừng nói cho Peter về kế hoạch của chúng ta.)

Lưu ý:

a) Ở điều kiện 2, có thể dùng was thay cho were trong mệnh đề If. Trong văn phong hoặc ngữ cảnh trang trọng, và trong cấu trúc If I ... you, nên dùng were.

I would go out if it weren't/wasn't raining.

If I were you, I would follow his advice.

b) If ... not có thể thay thế bằng Unless (trừ phi).

We will be late if we don't hurry.

We will be late unless we hurry.

If you don't work much harder, you won't pass the exam.

Unless you work much harder, you won't pass the exam.

c) Một số (cụm) từ sau được dùng thay cho If với nghĩa tương đương: provided/ providing/ supposing (that), as long as, on condition that.

You can borrow my book provided (that)/ providing you bring it back.

He can stay with us, as long as he shares the rent.

I'll give you the day off on condition that you work on Saturday morning.

d) Would có thể được thay bằng một modal verb khác trong mệnh đề chính.

If I stopped smoking, I would/could/might run faster.

If I had worked harder last year, I would/could have passed the exam.

e) Có thể kết hợp điều kiện 2 (Main clause) và điều kiện 3 (If clause) trong một câu.

If I hadn't stayed up late last night, I wouldn't be so tired now.

(Nếu tối qua tôi đã không thức khuya, bây giờ tôi sẽ không mệt thế này.)

You wouldn't be so hungry if you had had breakfast this morning.

(Bạn sẽ không bị đói như thế này nếu sáng nay bạn đã ăn sáng.)

Đ) Có thể lược bỏ If trong câu điều kiện và phải dùng hình thức đảo ngữ.

If somebody asks me, please tell them I will be back in an hour.

Should anyone ask me, please tell them I will be back in an hour.

If it weren't for his help, I would never succeed.

Were it not for his help, I would never succeed.

(Nếu bây giờ không có sự giúp đỡ của anh ấy, tôi không thể thành công.)

If I had known he was afraid, I wouldn't have done it.

Had I known he was afraid, I wouldn't have done it.

g) Will có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề If ở điều kiện I với nghĩa sẵn lòng hoặc cố tình.

If you will come tomorrow, I will be very happy.

(Nếu ngày mai bạn sẵn lòng đến, tôi sẽ mừng lắm.)

If you will get drunk every night, it's not surprising you feel ill.

(Nếu đêm nào bạn cũng say sưa cả, bạn bị đau là điều đương nhiên.)

h) Có thể đặt hai mệnh đề ở trước hoặc sau.

If I got rich I would travel around the world.

I would travel around the world if I got rich.

i) Đôi khi chúng ta dùng thì hiện tại đơn cho cả hai mệnh đề của câu điều kiện để diễn tả một sự thật hiển nhiên và nó được gọi là zero conditional.

If we don't water these flowers, they die.

Oil floats if we pour it on water.

j) Mệnh đề chính trong câu điều kiện có thể là một câu đề nghị hoặc lời mời.

If you see Peter at the meeting, please tell him to return my book.

If you are free now, have a cup of coffee with me.

k) Chúng ta có thể dùng as if / as though trong câu điều kiện.

You look as if / as though you are ill.

She acts as if / as though she were a Queen.

He looks as if / as though he had seen a ghost.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

188. (A) Hoàn thành câu với thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. If you have enough time, please *paint* (paint) the chair before you leave.
2. My dog always wakes up if he *hears* (hear) strange noises.
3. If you *see* (see) Mary today, please ask her to call me.
4. I *accept* (accept) if they invite me to the party.
5. If he *gets* (get) the raise, it will be because he does a good job.
6. If he leaves his bicycle outside someone *steals* (steal) it.
7. If she wins the prize, it will be because she *writes* (write) very well.
8. Lucy, if you *do* (do) that again, you *have* (have) to go to bed.
9. If I finish the dress before Saturday, I *give* (give) it to my sister.
10. The teacher will not accept our work if we *turn* (turn) it in late.

189. (B, D) Hoàn thành câu với thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. He would understand it if you *explain* (explain) it to him more slowly.
2. I wish they *stop* (stop) making so much noise so that I could concentrate.
3. We could go for a drive if today *be* (be) Saturday.
4. What would you *do* (do) if you *be* (be) in my situations?
5. Mrs Wood always talks to her pupils as though they *be* (be) adults.
6. This flat would be all right if the neighbours *not be* (not be) so noisy.
7. Tom wishes that he *spend* (spend) his holiday in Paris next year.
8. He would give you the money if he *have* (have) it.
9. Henry talks to his dog as if it *understand* (understand) him.
10. I could understand the French teacher if she *speak* (speak) more slowly.

190. (C, D) Hoàn thành câu với thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. If he *decide* (decide) earlier, he could have left on the afternoon flight.
2. If he had left already, he *call* (call) us.
3. If we *understand* (understand) the problem, we wouldn't have asked for help.
4. If Dickens *have* (have) a happy life, he *not write* (not write) his novels.
5. If Mary *tell* (tell) me she was growing her vegetables, I *buy* (buy) from her.
6. If Ed *give* (give) the correct treatment, he would have recovered sooner.
7. Mike wished that the editors *permit* (permit) him to copy some of the material yesterday.
8. If I had seen the movie, I *tell* (tell) you about it last night.
9. If I *know* (know) they weren't going to come tomorrow, I *not buy* (not buy) any more food.
10. Because Rose did so poorly on the exam, she wishes that she *study* (study) harder last night.

191. (D) Sửa các lỗi sai hoặc đánh dấu (✓) các câu đúng.

1. They wish they were able to spend more time in London.
2. My father wishes that he does not have to retire at the age of sixty.
3. The farmer wished that he does not lose money on his cotton crop.
4. Tom wishes that his soccer team were the national champions.
5. The doctor wishes that he has more free time to play golf.
6. Each of her children wishes he did not ignore the advice that she gave him.
7. I wish that I was earning more money and working less time.
8. My mother wishes that my father does more work around the house.
9. We wish that we did not have to go to the library this Saturday.
10. My friend Daisy wishes she was still living in Paris.

✓ 192. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. If I could speak Spanish, I next year studying in Mexico.
A. will spend B. had spent C. would spend D. would have spent
2. If energy inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.
A. is B. were C. will be D. would be
3. If you to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess right now.
A. listen B. will listen C. listened D. had listened
4. more help, I could call my neighbour.
A. Should I need B. Needed C. I have needed D. I should need
5. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I so much noise when I came in.
A. don't make B. didn't make C. won't make D. wouldn't have made
6. If you to talk loudly, I will have to ask you to leave.
A. continue B. continued C. will continue D. could continue
7. "How do you like your new apartment?"
"I wish I used to the constant noise from the street below."
A. got B. could get C. had gotten D. am
8. "Will you see Tom at lunch? I'd like you to give him a message."
"If I him later, I'll give it to him."
A. will see B. would see C. see D. could see
9. A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavourable if it more money on imports than it gains from exports.
A. will spend B. would spend C. can spend D. spends
10. A huge tree crashed through the roof and broke my bed. in the room, I would have been killed.
A. Should I be B. Had I been C. Would I be D. Would I have been

193. (A) Kết hợp một câu ở cột A với một câu ở cột B.

- A**
1. If we heat water to 100°C,
 2. If the weather's fine,
 3. If you don't get a good night's sleep,
 4. If you push this button,
 5. If you take another week off school,
 6. Careful! Unless you slow down,
 7. Unless it rains soon,
 8. If she works hard,
 9. If you still feel awful tomorrow,
 10. If Daisy doesn't pass the exam this year,

- B**
- a. you can't catch up with your friends.
 - b. take a few days off work.
 - c. she can try again next year.
 - d. all the plants are going to die.
 - e. you're going to have an accident.
 - f. you're always tired in the morning.
 - g. it boils.
 - h. we can go to the seaside today.
 - i. she'll pass the exam.
 - j. the camera rewinds automatically.

194. (A) Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng những từ trong ngoặc.

1. I'll call the police if you don't leave me alone. (Unless)
2. In the snowy weather we don't go to school. (If)
3. You press this button to stop the machine. (If)
4. Make me some coffee, and I'll give you one of my biscuits. (If)
5. If you see Peter, tell him he should be here at 8.00. (If)
6. If the news turns out to be true, I'll sell my shares at once. (Should)
7. If he fails the final examination, he won't be able to graduate. (Unless)
8. Should you persist in defying instructions, we'll be forced to act. (If)
9. Provided that you leave an address we will be able to contact you. (Unless)
10. Unless you save some money, you will never be able to buy a car. (Provided)

195. (B, D) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. You drink too much coffee, that's why you can't sleep. (if)

2. It would be nice to be able to fly a plane. (*wish*)
3. It's a shame we don't have a video. (*wish*)
4. Don't shout all the time, it's so annoying. (*wish*)
5. I don't like being so tall. (*wish*)
6. What I would give to be able to pass my driving test first time! (*only*)
7. I'm sorry you're leaving so soon. (*wish*)
8. Unfortunately, he hasn't phoned me for days. (*wish*)
9. In the event of your failing your driving test, would you take it again? (*supposing*)
10. He always has his nose in a book and never pays attention to what I say. (*if*)

196. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. Gloria never seems to get tired. I wish I her energy.
A. had B. have C. have had D. would have
2. The videotapes were so realistic that it was as though we there, driving through the desert.
A. are B. were C. will be D. have been
3. I'm really sleepy today. I wish I Bob to the airport late last night.
A. didn't have to take B. weren't taking
C. hadn't had to take D. didn't take
4. in the nuclear plants go wrong, the impacts on the surrounding area could be disastrous.
A. Something would B. Something will
C. Does something D. Should something
5. If everyone, how would we control air traffic?
A. flies B. can fly C. will fly D. could fly
6. If you, I would have brought my friends over to your house this evening.
A. had studied B. studied C. hadn't been studying D. didn't study
7. "Here's my phone number."
"Thanks. I'll give you a call if I some help tomorrow."
A. will need B. need C. needed D. would need
8. The medicine made me feel dizzy. I felt as though the room around and around.
A. were spinning B. will spin C. spins D. would be spinning
9. If my candidate had won the election, I happy now.
A. am B. was C. would be D. can be
10. any problem with the product, contact our local dealer.
A. Do you have B. Should you have
C. Had you D. You have

197. (C, D) Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng những từ trong ngoặc.

1. I didn't have an umbrella with me and so I got wet. (*if*)
2. Without Jack's help, I wouldn't have been able to move the table. (*if*)
3. If you hadn't told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed. (*Unless*)
4. What a pity we ate all the food. (*if*)
5. I regret not going to university. (*I wish*)
6. I should have bought that car. (*if only*)
7. Oh dear! I didn't realize it was so cheap. (*I wish*)
8. The policeman showed me the way, so I found the house. (*if*)
9. If I'd gone to the party, I'd have met Melanie. (*Had*)
10. He would have lent you his violin if you'd asked him. (*Had*)

198. (B) Kết hợp một câu ở cột A với một câu ở cột B.

A

1. If you didn't stay up so late,
2. If you were really ill,
3. If her English was perfect,
4. If his hair wasn't so long,
5. If people didn't drive so fast,
6. If I had my address book with me,
7. If we had a lot of money,
8. If I stayed in Britain for a year,
9. If the weather wasn't so awful,
10. If I had more time,

B

- a. my English would improve.
- b. we could buy the house of our dreams.
- c. you'd be able to go to school in time.
- d. there wouldn't be so many accidents.
- e. we could go swimming in the sea.
- f. she could get a job in my company.
- g. I'd be able to phone her.
- h. I'd love to read more books.
- i. everyone would like him.
- j. you could stay in bed in a few days.

199. (B, D) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. I'm sorry I can't speak English perfectly. (*wish*)
2. I'm sorry I can't do this exercise. (*only*)

3. I'm sorry I'm not rich. (only)
4. Are you ever sorry that you aren't rich? (wish)
5. I'm sorry I can't answer that question. (wish)
6. It's a pity the weather isn't better today. (only)
7. I'm sorry you don't love me. (only)
8. It's a pity you can't understand how I feel about you. (wish)
9. I'm so tired of listening to your complaints. (would)
10. It's such a pity I'm so bad at maths. (better)

200. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. I wish I you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.
A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend
2. If I weren't working for an accounting firm, I in a bank.
A. work B. will work C. have worked D. would be working
3. "I'm sorry about what happened during the meeting. I felt I had no choice."
"It's OK. I'm sure you wouldn't have done it if you"
A. had to B. hadn't had to C. have to D. should have
4. I wish Janet to the meeting this afternoon.
A. could come B. came C. can come D. will come
5. Mary walked away from the discussion. She something she would regret later.
A. said B. will say C. might say D. might have said
6. "Can I borrow your car for this evening?"
"Sure. If Lora it back in time, you're welcome to borrow it."
A. brought B. brings C. will bring D. would bring
7. I William with me if I had known you didn't get along with him.
A. hadn't brought B. didn't bring C. wouldn't have brought D. won't bring
8. If I the same problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
A. had had B. have C. would have D. should have
9. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people the same language?
A. speak B. spoke C. will speak D. had spoken
10. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I it.
A. don't believe B. can't believe C. hadn't believe D. would never have believed

201. (A, B, C) Hoàn thành câu với dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. Their friendship lasted three years. If he (be) less mean, she (not leave) him.
2. Everybody's ready. If we (leave) now, we (miss) the rush hour traffic.
3. If you (smoke) less, you (have) much more money. But I don't think you will.
4. If we (lock) the car window, we (not give) them the opportunity to break in.
5. When Alice (get) here, you (show) her to her room?
6. I know it's a delicate situation. What you (say) if I (give) you a little present?
7. If you (press) that button, a receptionist (come) to help you.
8. The film was marvelous. If you (come) with us, you (enjoy) it too.
9. Imagine, what we (do) if your father (have) an accident?
10. If I (be) the prime minister, I (bring) back capital punishment.

202. (C) Kết hợp một câu ở cột A với một câu ở cột B.

A

1. If Tom had worked hard last year,
2. If I had had more money,
3. If Dick and Daisy had come here yesterday,
4. If I hadn't gone to Daisy's party,
5. If we'd arrived a few minutes earlier,
6. If Mike had followed our advice,
7. If I had paid much attention to my learning,
8. If he'd accepted the job,
9. If you had remembered to bring the map,
10. If you'd gone to the party,

B

- a. I'd never have met some of my friends.
- b. they would have met us.
- c. he wouldn't have got into trouble.
- d. you would have had a good time.
- e. he would have passed the exam.
- f. I'm sure he would have regretted.
- g. I could have bought the dictionary.
- h. we might have caught the train.
- i. I might have done better in my exams.
- j. we wouldn't have got lost.

203. (A, B, C) Sửa các lỗi sai hoặc đánh dấu (✓) các câu đúng.

1. If Jack had been honest, he would return the money.
2. The video pauses if you press this button.
3. If she would have really wanted to see me, she would have come earlier.
4. If he doesn't break the window then who is responsible?
5. If Claire will continue to work hard, she should pass the exams easily.
6. Steve would have been attacked if I hadn't come along.
7. Speak to Jane if you want to book a room.
8. If you know what it was going to be like, why did you know?
9. You'd be surprised if I told you how much this cost.
10. We might be soon making a profit if all will go according to plan.

204. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. I didn't get home until after midnight last night. Otherwise, I your call.
A. returned B. had returned
C. would return D. would have returned
2. The lecturer didn't know what he was talking about, but if Dr Mason I would have listened carefully.
A. lectured B. was lecturing
C. would lecture D. had been lecturing
3. I you sooner had someone told me you were in hospital.
A. visited B. visit
C. would have visited D. had visited
4. If you can give me one good reason for your acting like this, ... this incident again.
A. I don't mention B. I will never mention
C. I never mention D. will I never mention
5. If Jake to go on the trip, would you have gone?
A. hadn't agreed B. doesn't agree C. didn't agree D. wouldn't agree
6. If I found Rob's phone number now, I him about the change in plans.
A. called B. had called C. could call D. will call
7. "Why aren't you going with the rest of us next weekend?"
"If I weren't, I with you."
A. go B. would go C. will go D. would have gone
8. "Why didn't you tell me you were having so many problems?"
"I you, but I figured you had enough to worry about."
A. would tell B. had told C. would be telling D. would have told
9. I wish you making that noise. It's bothering me.
A. would stop B. stop C. can stop D. are going to stop

10. When my lost briefcase was returned, I felt relieved. It was as if a huge weight from my shoulders.
A. is lifting B. is being lifted C. had been lifted D. would be lifted

205. (B, C) Viết câu điều kiện, dựa vào các tình huống đã cho.

1. We stayed up all night, and that's why we're so tired this morning.
2. He wasn't able to answer the questions, so he failed the exam.
3. I didn't see you there, or I'd have said hello.
4. The reason I haven't been to Hawaii is that I can't afford it.
5. They didn't go to the beach because the weather was so bad.
6. She hasn't studied English before. That's why she's in an introductory class.
7. One of the reasons I didn't phone you was that I was very busy.
8. They won the game because two of our players were injured.
9. They are having a row because she borrowed his tennis racket and lost it.
10. I'm afraid of travelling by air, so I had to go to America by boat.

206. (A, B) Hoàn thành hội thoại với dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.
I: Interviewer H: Hilary

- I Miss Hilary, what is the situation in Omagua?
- H Well, it's very bad. Thousands of people have died, and thousands more (1) (die) soon if they (2) (not get) help. The people have very little food or water. And if we (3) (not do) something soon, things (4) (get) much worse.
- I Is the British government doing anything to help? If they (5) (send) food, that (6) (help) to save lives, wouldn't it?
- H Our government refuses to do anything. But we haven't got any time. It (7) (be) too late if they (8) (not do) something soon.
- I Well, it doesn't look as if Omagua is going to get any help for the moment. What (9) (happen) if the country (10) (not get) enough food.
- H Well, if our government (11) (not be) willing to help, we (12) (have) to ask people to send us money.
- I How much are you asking people to give?
- H We (13) (be) very grateful if people (14) (send) what they can afford. If everyone in the country (15) (give) just 10 pounds, we (16) (have) a lot of money, wouldn't we? I'm sure if people (17) (know) what things were like in Omagua, they (18) (want) to help.
- I And are you hopeful that people will send money?
- H Oh, yes. If people (19) (hear) about the problem, as they're doing now, they (20) (help).
- I Is there still time to get food and money to the people who need it?

- H Oh, yes. We'll put the money to good use. If people (21) (post) money to us tomorrow, the food (22) (be) in Omagua by the end of the week.
- I If your organization (23) (not exist), things (24) (be) much less hopeful. Can you tell us the address where people should send money?

207. (A, B, C) Kết hợp một câu ở cột A với một câu ở cột B.

A

1. If I hadn't stopped to help her,
2. If you haven't asked her out yet,
3. If we want to catch that train,
4. If you were thinking of applying for that job,
5. If you don't tell me the truth,
6. If we would like to have them over for dinner,
7. If you knew you couldn't come on that day,
8. If it's hard to get through on the phone,
9. If it's nine o'clock in the morning here,
10. If you practise the trumpet in your room,

B

- a. we'd better go now.
- b. why don't you fax them?
- c. we'd better get some more food.
- d. you never will.
- e. it must be three in the afternoon there.
- f. she'd never have come home by 6 o'clock.
- g. how can I help you?
- h. try to do it quietly.
- i. why didn't you say?
- j. don't bother - it's gone.

11. PASSIVE VOICE

TÓM TẮT

Động từ trong tiếng Anh có hai dạng:

Chủ động: Chủ ngữ thực hiện hành động.

They wash the car.

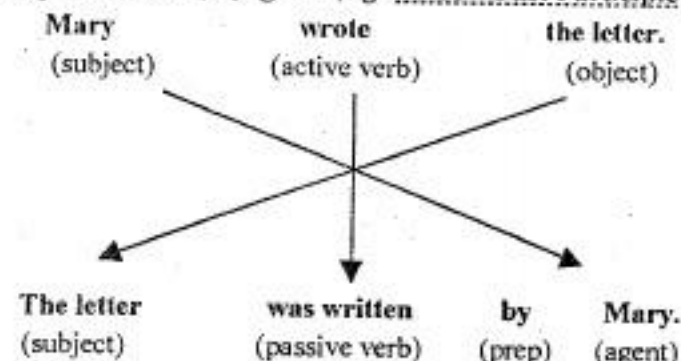
They built the house in 2001.

Bị động: Chủ ngữ chịu tác động của hành động.

The car is washed.

The house was built in 2001.

Hình thức động từ của câu bị động có dạng: To be + Past Participle



A. THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN VÀ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN

This company *employs* two hundred workers.

Two hundred workers *are employed* by this company.

My brother *does* his exercises every day.

My brother's exercises *are done* every day.

They *built* this house in 1998.

This house *was built* in 1998.

They *cancelled* all the flights because of thick fog.

All the flights *were cancelled* because of thick fog.

B. THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN VÀ QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN

Somebody *is cleaning* the room at the moment.

The room *is being cleaned* at the moment.
 Two strange people *are following* us.
 We *are being followed* by two strange people.
 Somebody *was cleaning* the room when I came.
 The room *was being cleaned* when I came.
 Someone *was following* us when we were at the shop.
 We *were being followed* when we were at the shop.

C. THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH VÀ QUÁ KHIỨ HOÀN THÀNH

They *have cleaned* the room.
 The room *has been cleaned*.
 The president *has invited* twenty people to the party.
 Twenty people *have been invited* to the party by the president.
 The food didn't taste very good. They *had cooked* it for too long.
 The food didn't taste very good. It *had been cooked* for too long.
 People *had built* two new schools in this city before I came.
 Two new schools *had been built* in this city before I came.

D. MODAL VERBS VÀ BE GOING TO

We *will give* you plenty of time to decide.
 You *will be given* plenty of time to decide.
 I wish they *would buy* me a nice present.
 I wish I *would be bought* a nice present.
 My younger brother *can do* this difficult exercise.
 This difficult exercise *can be done* by my younger brother.
 We *should listen* to our teachers' advice.
 Our teachers' advice *should be listened to*.
 We *ought to learn* our lessons before coming to school.
 Our lessons *ought to be learned* before we come to school.
 We *must do* something to help poor people.
 Something *must be done* to help poor people.
 I *am going to buy* him a surprising gift for his birthday.
 He *is going to be bought* a surprising gift for his birthday.

Lưu ý:

- a) Đôi khi *get* được dùng thay cho *be*.
 Lots of postmen *get bitten* by dogs.
 How did the painting *get damaged*?
 b) Thêm *to* vào sau động từ chỉ giác quan ở câu bị động.
 We *heard him come in*.
 He *was heard to come in*.
 I *saw her cross the street*.
 She *was seen to cross the street*.
 c) Đối với câu có chủ ngữ mờ hồ: *people, someone, somebody, và các đại từ nhân xưng*, không chuyển chủ ngữ của câu chủ động sang tân ngữ của câu bị động, do vậy giới từ *by* cũng không dùng.
 People *built* this church in 1793.
 This church *was built* in 1793.
 Someone *broke* the window last night.
 The window *was broken* last night.
 d) Câu có cấu trúc *They/People say/think/hope/feel...* được chuyển thành hai dạng:
 They *think he is* a good doctor.
 1) It *is thought that* he is a good doctor.
 2) He *is thought to be* a good doctor.
 People *said that* he had gone.
 1) It *was said that* he had gone.
 2) He *was said to have* gone.
 e) Câu có cấu trúc *would like/love...* không được chuyển theo cách thông thường.
 I *would like to give* Mary a present.
 I *would like Mary to be given* a present.
 I *would love to invite* you to the party.
 I *would love you to be invited* to the party.
 f) Câu có cấu trúc *It's one's duty to ...* được chuyển sang *to be supposed to ...*
 It's your duty to do this work.
 You *are supposed to do* this work.
 g) Các động từ thường có hai tân ngữ *give, send, show, lend, promise, tell, offer* có thể chuyển thành hai câu bị động. Thông thường, câu có tân ngữ chỉ người (tân ngữ gián tiếp) được chọn.

My father gave *me this watch*.

1) *I was given this watch by my father.*

2) *This watch was given (to) me by my father.*

h) Sau một số động từ, tân ngữ trực tiếp có theo sau bởi một bổ ngữ (object complement).

Queen Victory considered *him a genius*.

He was considered a genius.

The other children called *him stupid*.

He was called stupid.

i) Câu có cấu trúc let someone do something được chuyển sang to be allowed/permitted to do sth ...

He let me go.

I was allowed/permitted to go.

j) Câu có cấu trúc với nghĩa bị động have/get something + past participle.

We must *have/get* another key *made*.

John *is having/getting* his photos *developed*.

k) Sau There be có thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu dạng bị động hoặc chủ động.

There is a lot of work *to do/to be done*.

There are some letters *to write/to be written* today.

l) Câu có động từ need với nghĩa bị động.

The windows need *cleaning/to be cleaned*.

The room needs *re-decorating/to be re-decorated*.

m) Một số động từ theo sau bởi một tân ngữ và động từ nguyên mẫu thường không thể chuyển sang bị động.

Everybody wanted *Daisy to be* the manager.

~~*Daisy was wanted to be the manager.*~~

We like *our staff to say* what they think.

~~*Our staff are liked to say what they think.*~~

Tuy nhiên, một số động từ ask, allow, expect, order, request, require, teach được chuyển sang câu bị động.

She *asked me to send* a stamped addressed envelope.

I was asked to send a stamped addressed envelope.

They *allowed us to enter* the room.

We were allowed to enter the room.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

208. (A) Chuyển các câu sau sang dạng bị động.

1. They gave the job to Amy and Bob.
2. They started the work last week.
3. They finished the kitchen on Saturday.
4. Somebody calls the president every day.
5. Last Thursday we appointed a new marketing manager.
6. William the Conqueror built the castle in the 11th century.
7. People believe that someone murdered Mr Stone.
8. We put up a notice about the trip on the notice board yesterday.
9. People think that an apple a day is good for you.
10. The cold weather damaged the plants.

209. (A, B) Sửa lỗi sai trong các câu sau đây.

1. Romeo and Juliet were written from Shakespeare.
2. I can't give you a ride because my car is repairing.
3. I were told that, after been repaired, it will be as good as new.
4. It thought that many diseases caused by smoking cigarettes.
5. We were telling to arrive by noon, but we were delay.
6. It was announce for the company president that large profits had be made.

210. (A, C) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng bị động.

1. The escaped convict (arrest) two days later.
2. The police (instruct) to take firm action against hooligans.
3. He (think) to have attacked a young boy in the park.
4. The car (rev) up ready for the thieves to get away quickly.
5. Checks (carry) out before anyone (allow) to leave the factory yesterday.
6. Sometimes printing errors (discover) after the newspaper has been published.
7. Two players (send) off the field during last Saturday's match.
8. The hotel, which (complete) last month, ... (equip) with modern facilities.
9. As my car (repair) last Friday, I (give) a lift to work by a colleague.
10. Eleven strikers who (imprison) for disturbing the peace (release) yesterday.

211. (B, D) Chuyển các câu sau sang dạng bị động.

1. They were doing the bedroom on Friday.

2. They're painting the living room now.
3. They're going to paint the ceiling pink.
4. John is calling the other members.
5. Martha was delivering the documents to the department.
6. The police were following the suspects.
7. The major is going to open the new airport.
8. If you can't drive, who is going to drive your car?
9. The police are interviewing all the witnesses.
10. We're going to give David a big surprise.

212. (A, C) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở thì và dạng bị động.

The old building in East Street is Bradford Hall. It (1) (build) in 1827 and today it (2) (regard) as the finest Georgian building in the country.

A number of changes (3) (make) since it (4) (build), but the front of the building (5) (not change). Today the Hall (6) (own) by the City Council, and for the last ten years it (7) (use) as a home for City Arts Centre. At the moment a small art gallery (8) (build) behind the Hall.

213. (A, B, C) Chọn hình thức đúng của dạng động từ trong ngoặc.

Millions of pounds worth of damage (1) (has caused/has been caused) by a storm which (2) (passed/was passed) across the north of England last night. The River Ribble (3) (burst/was burst) its banks after heavy rain.

People (4) (rescued/were rescued) from the floods by firemen, who (5) (received/were received) numerous calls for help. Wind speeds (6) (reached/were reached) ninety miles an hour in some places.

Roads (7) (blocked/were blocked) by fallen trees and electricity lines (8) (brought/were brought) down, leaving thousands of homes without electricity. "Everything possible (9) (is doing/is being done) to get the situation back to normal," a spokesman (10) (said/was said).

214. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. I still can't believe it! My bicycle last night.
A. was stolen B. was stealing C. stolen D. stole
2. Today, many serious childhood diseases by early immunization.
A. are preventing B. prevent C. can prevent D. can be prevented
3. "When?" - "In 1928"
A. penicillin was discovered B. did penicillin discovered
C. was penicillin discovered D. did penicillin discover
4. "When can I have my car back?"
"I think it'll late this afternoon."

- A. finish B. be finished C. have finished D. be finish
5. Ed was new on the job, but he quickly fit himself into the routine of the office.
A. established B. establishing C. establishes D. establish
6. "Can't we do something about the situation?"
"Something right now."
A. is doing B. is done C. is being done D. has been doing
7. "Ms Jones, please type those letters before noon."
"They've already typed, sir. They're on your desk."
A. ✓ B. been C. being D. been being
8. Renoir's paintings masterpieces all over the world.
A. had considered B. are considered C. are considering D. consider
9. "Has about the eight o'clock flight to Chicago?" - "Not yet."
A. been an announcement made B. an announcement been made
C. an announcement made D. been made an announcement
10. On Friday afternoons, the highways people on their way out of the city.
A. are crowding by B. are crowded with
C. are being crowd with D. crowd by

215. (C, D) Chuyển các câu sau sang dạng bị động.

1. They have painted the walls green.
2. They will finish the work next week.
3. The other members have repealed the amendment.
4. The delegates had received the information before the recess.
5. The teacher should buy the supplies for this class.
6. Somebody will call Mr Watson tonight.
7. The fire has caused considerable damage.
8. John will have received the papers by tomorrow.
9. They haven't decided anything yet.
10. Your hair is long, you ought to get it cut.

216. (C, D) Hoàn thành câu, dùng dạng bị động của động từ HAVE.

1. He (fit burglar alarm) since his house was broken into.
2. They (check statements) before the case comes up next week.
3. Someone (clean room) when the police arrived.
4. The house looks different. She (repaint it).
5. I am not certain but I think she (steal wallet) at the airport.
6. She oughtn't to (mend ladder) before the police had examined it.
7. Look at that woman's red hair! She (dye it).

8. The car is filthy so he (*not wash it*) today.
9. I (*vaccinate my baby*) against smallpox when he was six months old.
10. His employers (*arrest him*) if he tries to leave the country.

217. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. The current constitutional problem is by the top leaders in the country.
A. studying B. being studying C. being studied D. been studied
2. I with you on that subject.
A. am agree B. am agreed C. agreeing D. agree
3. Both domestic and imported automobiles must anti-pollution devices.
A. equip with B. be equipped with C. equip by D. be equipped by
4. Despite all my anxiety, I for the job I wanted.
A. was hiring B. hired C. got hiring D. got hired
5. The Mayan Indians developed an accurate calendar more than seven centuries ago.
A. were B. ✓ C. are D. have been
6. "Are you interested in scuba diving?"
"Very. Undersea life is"
A. fascinated B. fascinating C. being fascinating D. being fascinated
7. "Has the committee made its decision yet?"
"Not yet. They are still the proposal."
A. considering B. been considered C. being considered D. considered
8. As the fairy tale goes, the prince into a frog by an evil magician.
A. turned B. was turned C. was turning D. had been turning
9. Last night a tornado swept through the village. It destroyed everything in its path.
A. ✓ B. was C. was being D. had been
10. The hospital's air-conditioning system when the first heat of the summer arrived.
A. had installed B. had been installed
C. installed D. had been installing

218. (A, B, C, D) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng bị động.

1. Very few criminals (*catch*) by the police if informers didn't offer information.
2. Could violence (*control*) more effectively if the police carried guns?
3. Foreign coins (*not put*) in parking meters.
4. That man in the dock (*let*) off as it's his first offence.
5. Flexitime (*introduce*) by the management next month.

6. The team (*give*) two weeks to move into their new office.
7. New equipment (*order*) for the office when the budget is approved.
8. Applications (*invite*) for the post of Senior Lecturer. Preference (*give*) to applicants with teaching experience.
9. As soon as your order (*receive*), it (*process*) and an acknowledgement (*send*).
10. A number of political prisoners (*release*) within the next few days.

219. (A, B, C, D) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng bị động.

1. Has the search for the murderer (*give*) up yet?
2. I was surprised to hear that you (*burgle*) twice in the same month.
3. The collapse of the company (*cause*) by one irresponsible member of staff.
4. You should (*have*) your hair cut before you go for the interview.
5. Decisions (*make*) by the senior management team to prevent similar disputes from happening again.
6. To save time, the applicants (*select*) by a recruitment agency.
7. As the main issues (*settle*), the report will be ready for the meeting.
8. You'll hardly recognize our flat. It (*redesign*) since your last visit.
9. The theatre company (*give*) a grant of 6,000 pounds and a further 2,000 pounds (*now seek*) from elsewhere.
10. The ancient language of Aramaic (*speak*) in only three villages in Syria and (*overtake*) gradually by Arabic nowadays.

220. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. Something funny in my class yesterday.
A. happened B. was happened C. happens D. is happened
2. Many US automobiles in Detroit, Michigan.
A. manufacture B. have manufactured
C. are manufactured D. are manufacturing
3. In some areas, water from the ground faster than nature can replenish the supply.
A. is being taken B. has been taking C. is taking D. has taken
4. My country is the pursuit of world peace.
A. dedicating to B. dedicated to C. dedicating by D. dedicated by
5. George is Lisa.
A. marry with B. marry to C. married with D. married to
6. The university by private funds as well as by tuition income and grants.
A. is supported B. supports C. is supporting D. has supported

7. In some rural areas, health care by a small number of doctors and nurses.
A. is providing B. is being provided C. provides D. provided
8. When I woke up and looked outside, the ground had been lightly with a dusting of snow.
A. covering B. cover C. covered D. covers
9. A lot of pesticide residue can on unwashed produce.
A. find B. found C. be finding D. be found
10. It's hard to believe that my application for a scholarship
A. denied B. was denied C. was denying D. had denied

221. (A) Dùng động từ trong ngoặc ở dạng chủ động hoặc bị động.

The warship Mary Rose (1) (*build*) in the years 1509 -1510. In 1544, England (2) (*start*) a war against France, and in 1545 French ships (3) (*send*) across the Channel towards England. Some English ships (4) (*go*) out from Portsmouth to meet them. One of these ships was the Mary Rose. It was carrying 91 guns and 700 men - twice as many as normal. It (5) (*sink*) quickly to the bottom of the sea even before it (6) (*attack*) by the French. About 650 men (7) (*die*). This terrible accident (8) (*see*) by the King of England himself. The next month an attempt (9) (*make*) to raise the Mary Rose, but it (10) (*fail*). The ship (11) (*forget*) for hundreds of years.

In the 1970s new plans (12) (*make*) to raise the ship. Thousands of objects (13) (*bring*) up from the ship by divers. Then, on 1st October 1982, the Mary Rose (14) (*lift*) out of the sea. Many people (15) (*see*) the raising of the ship on television. Finally the Mary Rose (16) (*take*) into Portsmouth dock, 437 years after she had sunk.

222. (A) Chuyển các câu sau sang dạng bị động.

- The medical profession borrowed the technology from other fields.
- The surgeons arranged for the installation of a TV screen in the operating theatre.
- They drew up emergency plans, later abandoned, to build new cities.
- They had to make plans for extra places in schools in the 1990s.
- We gave the first scheme our approval.
- I think Alfred Nobel invented dynamite.
- People thought at first that the Crown Prince had been attacked.
- It is considered that his speech was one of the best.
- Police reported that a man had been helping them with their investigation.
- The accused was alleged to have committed fraud.

223. (A, B, C, D) Chuyển các câu sau sang dạng bị động.

- Technicians no longer have to take engine interiors apart to check them.
- In future, patients might be able to get surgeons to perform their operations by remote control.
- Those at work must pay for the welfare benefits in this country.
- Unexpected demographic changes have often proved population forecasts wrong.
- I'd say it was impossible that Marconi invented television.
- One day it's quite possible that robots will do all our housework for us.
- Technology has not yet found a universally acceptable substitute for the petrol engine, in my view.
- It seems that the experts are finding new uses for computers all the time.
- Surely someone will have patented a 3-D TV by the end of the century.
- We can't deny that we made certain mistakes early on.

224. (A, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- The child's arm was swollen because he stung by a bee.
A. ✓ B. had C. had been D. had being
- Let's go ahead and do it now. Nothing by waiting.
A. accomplishes B. accomplished
C. has accomplished D. will be accomplished
- Vitamin C by the human body. It gets into the blood stream quickly.
A. absorbs easily B. is easily absorbed
C. is easily absorbing D. absorbed easily
- About 15,000 years ago, northern Wisconsin under ice a mile deep.
A. was buried B. was burying C. buried D. had buried
- The rescuers for their bravery and fortitude in locating the lost mountain climbers.
A. praised B. praising C. were praised D. were praising
- My car didn't start again. Fortunately, the mechanic the source of the problem.
A. was discover B. discovered
C. was discovered D. has been discovered
- "How did that window?"
A. get broken B. broke C. got broken D. broken
- Let's wait in the hallway where we'll be the strong winds.
A. protected by B. protecting from
C. protecting by D. protected from
- The bridge constructed finally, and now many hours of driving have been saved for commuters.

10. The man died because medical help was not summoned. A doctor should called.
- A. ✓ B. gets C. was D. has
- A. ✓ B. have C. been D. have been

225. (A, C, D) Dùng thì thích hợp và dạng bị động của động từ trong ngoặc.

The world's first computer (1) (build) at the University of Pennsylvania in 1946, although computer-like machines (2) (build) in the 19th century. Computers (3) (sell) commercially for the first time in the 1950s, and a lot of progress (4) (make) since then. Computers are now much smaller and more powerful, and they can (5) (buy) much more cheaply.

Computers (6) (use) in many fields - in business, science, medicine and education. They can (7) (use) to forecast the weather or to control robots which make cars. The computer's memory is the place where information (8) (keep) and calculations (9) (do). A computer can not think for itself. It must (10) (tell) exactly what to do. A lot of difficult calculations can (11) (do) very quickly on a computer.

Computers don't make mistakes. Stories (12) (hear) sometimes about computers paying people too much money or sending them bills for things they didn't buy. These mistakes (13) (make) by the programmers. Some years ago, an American computer-controlled rocket went out of control and had (14) (destroy). The accident (15) (cause) by a small mistake in one line of the program, which cost the USA 18 million dollars. Criminals have found that "computer crimes" are a lot easier than robbing banks. Hundreds of millions of dollars (16) (steal) from businesses every year by people changing the information in computers.

Large numbers of home computers (17) (sell) recently. People know more about computers than they used to, and computers are playing a bigger part in our lives. Progress (18) (make) all the time. Many people believe we can look forward to the day when even our household jobs like cleaning and decorating (19) (do) by computer-controlled robots.

12. INDIRECT SPEECH

TÓM TẮT

Lời nói gián tiếp là câu tường thuật từ lời nói trực tiếp dưới một dạng khác, bao gồm một số thay đổi về thì của động từ, tính từ và trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn và thời gian. Tuy nhiên, ý nghĩa của câu nói vẫn được giữ nguyên. Có 3 loại câu cần chú ý khi chuyển sang lời nói gián tiếp: commands, questions, và statements.

A. COMMANDS (Câu mệnh lệnh, đề nghị)

Câu mệnh lệnh hoặc đề nghị là câu người nói yêu cầu người nghe hãy làm hoặc đừng làm một việc nào đó.

1. Affirmative command: (Đề nghị khẳng định)

The teacher said, "Come at 8 o'clock."

The teacher asked/told the pupils to come at 8 o'clock.

2. Negative command: (Đề nghị phủ định)

She said, "Don't wear boots in the house."

She asked us not to wear boots in the house.

Lưu ý:

a) said hoặc said to được chuyển thành asked/told.

b) phải luôn có tân ngữ trong câu gián tiếp.

Tom said, "Wait for me at the school gate."

Tom told me to wait for him at the school gate.

c) không dùng lại please trong câu gián tiếp.

Daisy said to us, "Please don't make noise in the library."

Daisy asked us not to make noise in the library.

d) Cấu trúc với should/ ought to và If I were... được xem như lời khuyên.

He said, "You should/ ought to see a doctor."

He advised me to see a doctor.

She said, "If I were you, I would take the exam."

She encouraged me to take the exam.

e) Cấu trúc bắt đầu bằng Could you please ...? hoặc Would you like ...? được xem như câu đề nghị hoặc câu mời.

"Could you please show me the way to the post office?" the man said.
(Làm ơn chỉ giúp tôi đường đến bưu điện.)

The man asked me to show him the way to the post office.

"Would you like to have a cup of coffee with me?" Mary said.
(Bạn uống cà phê với tôi nhé.)

Mary invited me to have a cup of coffee with her.

B. QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi)

1. Yes-No question:

They said; "Are you tired, Tom?"

They asked Tom if/whether he was tired.

Lưu ý:

a) **said** hoặc **said to** được chuyển thành **asked**.

b) thêm **if** hoặc **whether** trong mệnh đề giới thiệu.

c) trật tự câu hỏi được chuyển thành câu trần thuật.

d) động từ trong câu trực tiếp được chuyển về quá khứ một bậc.

2. Wh-question:

He said, "Why didn't you tell me about that?"

He asked why I hadn't told him about that.

Lưu ý:

a) Các thay đổi về cơ bản giống phần **Yes-No question**, chú ý giữ lại các từ **WH**.

b) Cấu trúc **Shall I ...?** có thể có hai nghĩa:

+ Nó có thể dùng để hỏi thông tin:

"Shall I be in London in time if I catch the 10.30 train?" he said.

+ Nó có thể dùng để bày tỏ sự giúp đỡ:

"Shall I carry the bag for you?" he said.

Câu hỏi về thông tin dùng **would** và câu bày tỏ sự giúp đỡ dùng **should** trong câu tường thuật.

He asked if he **would** be in London in time.

He asked if he **should** carry my bag.

C. STATEMENTS (Câu trần thuật)

He said, "I am tired today."

He said (that) he was tired that day.

Lưu ý:

a) **said** được giữ lại, **said to** được thay bằng **told** hoặc giữ lại.

b) có thể thêm liên từ **that**.

c) các thay đổi khác giống như phần **Questions**.

NHỮNG THAY ĐỔI CỤ THỂ:

1. Đại từ và tính từ sở hữu:

Tùy theo từng trường hợp cụ thể để có cách thay đổi phù hợp.

The teacher said, "You must do your exercise by yourself, Tom."

a) Tom nhắc lại lời thầy giáo:

The teacher said (that) I must do my exercise by myself.

b) Dick nhắc lại lời thầy giáo với Tom:

The teacher said (that) you must do your exercise by yourself.

c) Dick nhắc lại lời thầy giáo với các bạn khác:

The teacher said (that) Tom must do his exercise by himself.

2. Thì của động từ:

a) Simple present → Simple past

He said, "I write home every week."

He said (that) he wrote home every week.

b) Present continuous → Past continuous

He said, "I am learning English."

He said (that) he was learning English.

c) Present perfect → Past perfect

He said, "I have learned English."

He said (that) he had learned English.

d) Present perfect continuous → Past perfect continuous

He said, "I have been playing football."

He said (that) he had been playing football.

e) Simple past → Simple past/Past perfect

He said, "I wrote a letter to my brother."

He said (that) he wrote/had written a letter to his brother.

f) Past continuous → Past continuous/Past perfect continuous

He said, "I was waiting at 8 o'clock."

He said (that) he was waiting/had been waiting at 8 o'clock.

g) Past perfect → Past perfect

He said, "I had written the letter by 8 o'clock."

He said (that) he had written the letter by 8 o'clock.

h) Past perfect continuous → Past perfect continuous

He said, "I had been waiting for an hour by 8 o'clock."

He said (that) he had been waiting for an hour by 8 o'clock."

i) Simple future → Future in the past

He said, "I will write a letter."

He said (that) he would write a letter.

j) Future continuous → Future continuous in the past

He said, "I'll be writing at 3 o'clock in the afternoon."

He said (that) he would be writing at 3 o'clock in the afternoon.

Lưu ý:

a) Nếu động từ ở mệnh đề giới thiệu được dùng ở thì hiện tại đơn, hiện tại tiếp diễn, hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc tương lai đơn, thì của động từ trong câu gián tiếp vẫn không thay đổi.

He says/is saying/has said/will say, "The text is difficult."

He says/is saying/has said/will say (that) the text is difficult.

b) Khi câu nói trực tiếp thể hiện một chân lý hoặc một hành động lặp lại thường xuyên, thì của động từ trong câu gián tiếp vẫn không thay đổi.

Yesterday the teacher said, "The earth goes round the sun."

Yesterday the teacher said (that) the earth goes round the sun.

He said, "My father always drinks coffee after dinner."

He said (that) his father always drinks coffee after dinner.

c) Nếu lúc tường thuật, điểm thời gian được đưa ra trong lời nói gián tiếp vẫn chưa qua, thì của động từ và trạng từ chỉ thời gian vẫn được giữ nguyên.

He said, "I will come to your house tomorrow."

He said (that) he will come to my house tomorrow.

d) Must vẫn được giữ lại sau khi tường thuật hoặc chuyển sang had to.

He said, "I have to go. I've got an appointment in half an hour."

He said he must/ had to go because he had an appointment in half an hour.

e) Các Modal verb: would, could, might, ought, should thường không thay đổi trong câu tường thuật và do vậy không đổi sang Modal perfect (could/would have + past participle).

He said "I might come."

He said that he might come. (Không dùng ... he-might-have-come.)

Tuy nhiên, nếu câu nói diễn tả một điều kiện không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại (điều kiện 2), khi tường thuật ta chuyển sang could/would have + past participle.

He said, "If I had enough money, I could buy that dictionary."

He said if he had had enough money he could have bought that dictionary.

f) Liên từ **that** thông thường có thể lược bỏ khi tường thuật.

I said (that) I wanted to buy the book.

Daisy thought (that) it was time to go to school.

I suppose (that) we ought to go.

Tom told me (that) his father was leaving for London.

Tuy nhiên, trong những ngữ cảnh trang trọng hoặc sau động từ reply, telegraph, liên từ **that** cần thiết phải được dùng.

He replied that we ought to invest half the profits.

g) Trong câu tường thuật, ta có thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu sau các từ để hỏi (who, where, what...).

She asked me how to do the work.

I told the boy where to go.

His father told him what to buy at the supermarket.

h) Phân biệt cách dùng của các động từ say, talk, speak và tell.

The doctor says there's nothing wrong with me.

She didn't understand what they were talking about.

Mr Brown can speak English and French very well.

Did you tell Daisy how to get here?

3. Tính từ chỉ định và trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn và thời gian. (here-and-now words)

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
this, these	that, those
here, now, ago	there, then, before
today, tonight	that day, that night
tomorrow	the next/following day/ the day after
yesterday	the previous day/ the day before
last night	the previous night/ the night before
next week	the following week/ the week after
the day before yesterday	two days before
the day after tomorrow	two days after

Lưu ý:

a) Nếu người tường thuật vẫn ở cùng một địa điểm và thời gian, chúng ta không thay đổi thì của động từ, tính từ chỉ định, trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn.

He said, "I *will* come *here* to take *this* book *tonight*."

An hour ago he said (that) he *will* come *here* to take *this* book *tonight*.

b) Thêm liên từ vào lời nói gián tiếp để chỉ nguyên nhân.

She said, "I'm very tired. I've been writing for four hours."

She said (that) she was very tired *as/because* she had been writing for four hours.

c) So và such được đổi thành very.

He said, "She *plays* the piano *so* well."

He said (that) she *played* the piano *very* well.

They said, "Mr Brown *is* *such* a famous doctor."

They said (that) Mr Brown *was* a *very* famous doctor.

4. Một số thay đổi ở câu cảm thán.

She said, "How pleasant! Daisy comes to dinner with us."

She *cried joyfully/delightedly/with joy* that Daisy came to dinner with them.

He said, "I am sorry! I have no money."

He *said sadly/sorrowfully/with deep sadness* that he had no money.

She said to him, "Excuse me for my rudeness."

She *apologized* to him for her rudeness.

She said to them, "Thank you for your help."

She *thanked* them for their help.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

226. (A, B, C) Hoàn thành câu, dùng SAY, TALK, SPEAK hoặc TELL.

- When the child was in bed, his mother him a story.
- When Mary left she, "I'll call again next week."
- I've left my watch at home. Could you me the time?
- What is the word for someone who can two languages fluently?
- I saw Peter yesterday, and he he was going to buy a new motorbike.
- Can you the difference between butter and margarine?
- What exactly did Jenny to you when you asked her about the party?
- Sorry, could you up? I can't hear very well.
- Don't be silly. I wasn't angry. I don't know what you are about.
- Excuse me, could you me the way to the station?

227. (A) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

- Steve said to Mike, "Don't touch the electric wires." (warned)
- "Please don't tell anyone the news," Janet said to her sister. (asked)
- "Don't drive so fast!" Henry said to his wife. (told)
- "Please remove your shoes before entering," (asked)
- "Mary, don't interrupt me when I'm meditating," (told)
- "First switch on, then wait for two minutes," (instructed)
- "Sergeant, take the man to the cells," (ordered)
- "Don't forget to write me a letter every week," my mother said. (told)
- Carol said, "Don't make so much noise, Peter." (told)
- "Don't tell anyone or you'll be sorry," Mary warned her friend. (warned)

228. (A) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

- Peter said to Nick, "Would you like to stay for lunch?" (invited)
- Tim said to Martin, "You ought to see a doctor." (advised)
- Pat said to Jane, "You're going to post the letter, don't forget." (reminded)
- "Could you put the plates in the dishwasher, please?" Mrs Robinson asked Justin. (asked)
- "You'll have to send the documents to the embassy, Mrs Brown," (told)
- "Would you please sign the certificate for me?" (asked)
- "Please would you shut the door?" she asked me. (asked)
- Sue said, "If I were you, Richard, I'd go by train." (advised)
- "Would you like to have a cup of coffee with me?" Tom said to me. (invited)
- The teacher said, "You should study harder for the final exam." (advised)

229. (C) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

1. "I'm going to the town with my father," he said. (said)
2. "If you're late tomorrow, I'm going to sack you." (warned)
3. "I'm telling you that I didn't break that window," the boy said (protested)
4. "I'm going to change the wheel on my car myself," said Julia. (insisted)
5. "They always meet for lunch on Fridays," she said. (said)
6. "You are suffering from stress," the doctor said to Mr Brown. (told)
7. "I want to become a psychologist," Tracy said to her friend. (confined to)
8. "It is certainly essential to take a long-term view of the situation." (agreed)
9. "I'm taking the 5.30 train tomorrow evening." (said)
10. "I like this hotel very much." (told)

230. (C) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

1. "I've given smoking up and haven't had a cigarette for a month." Tom said. (said)
2. "We've got an amazing new computer in our office," he said. (boasted)
3. "The canoe has sprung a leak and needs to be repaired," said Jim to his parents. (told)
4. "Flight 203, from Brisbane to Sydney, has been cancelled," announced the voice over the loudspeaker. (announced)
5. "It's true that food aid has not been getting through." (confirmed)
6. "Over 40 million pounds has been received over the last ten days." (reported)
7. "There has been no lack of co-operation with relief workers on the spots." (denied)
8. "A rapid increase in the birth rate has turned a crisis into a disaster." (insisted)
9. "I have been learning English for seven years now." he said to me. (told)
10. "A lot of houses have been built here since 2000." the man said. (said)

231. (C) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

1. "It's the first time I've flown." (said)
2. "I passed my driving test first time!" said Sam. (boasted)
3. "The company spent a fortune on it and it's always breaking down," she said. (grumbled)
4. "The engineer was called three times last week," she said to them. (told)
5. "I saw him yesterday morning." she said (said)
6. "I bumped into my next-door neighbour when I was in Rome." Alice said. (said)
7. "Donations were received from individuals and organizations." (received)
8. "I left my umbrella here two days ago." (told)

9. "I saw her when I was crossing the street yesterday." Tom said to me. (told)
10. "We moved here three years ago." my neighbours said. (said)

232. (C) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

1. "I'd do the same myself if I were in your place." he said. (said)
2. Robin said, "Why doesn't Sarah buy them this picture as a wedding present?" (suggested)
3. "You will win if you practise every day," he told her. (told)
4. The producer said, "We won't be able to record this afternoon." (said)
5. "I can't work at all! My typewriter isn't working properly," she said. (complained)
6. "The plane will be taking off in a few minutes." (announced)
7. "I think you should try to be more punctual," she said to Peter. (suggested)
8. "You can't park here." (told)
9. "I'll see you in the morning, Helen." (told)
10. "The trousers have to be ready this afternoon." (told)

233. (B) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng ASKED.

1. "Have you worked before?" she said to him.
2. "Can you work on Saturday?" she said to him.
3. "May I open the window?" the boy asked.
4. "Would it be all right if I had the day off?" Laura said her boss.
5. "May I borrow your tennis racket?" I asked John.
6. "Are you coming to the party tonight, Joanna?"
7. "Can I borrow your pen please, Sam?"
8. "Do you know where my tennis racquet is, Mum?"
9. "Was Ronald at work yesterday?" Miss Payne asked her secretary.
10. "Did you read the article about Prince Diana?" Tom asked Paul.

234. (B) Viết câu sang lời nói gián tiếp, dùng ASKED.

1. "Where do you live?" she said to him.
2. "Why do you want the job?" she said to him.
3. "How did you hear about it?" she said to him.
4. "How much do you expect to earn?" she said to him.
5. "When can you start?" she said to him.
6. "What time is it, Francis?"
7. "How long have you worked for this company?" she asked him.
8. "Why has he been working so hard?" she said to me.
9. "Why did you do it when I told you not to?"
10. "Why didn't you come at ten o'clock?" she said.

235. (A, B, C) Tưởng thuật đoạn đối thoại thành 9 câu hoàn chỉnh.

- Sam Mum! What are you doing with the tool box?
 Mary Don't touch that electric cord!
 Sam I wish you shouldn't shout at me.
 Mary Sorry! I just didn't want you to hurt yourself.
 Sam What's it for, anyway?
 Mary I'm trying to mend the CD player.
 Sam What happened to it?
 Mary Well, somebody knocked it off the shelf two days ago and it won't work.
 Sam Look! I didn't do it! Honestly!

236. (C) Đọc đoạn văn và điền vào ô trống với dạng đúng của động từ.
 "My name's Vera and I came over from East Berlin just after the fall of the Wall, and I've been living in London since then. In Berlin I was a journalist, but now I am working for the BBC and I really enjoy it. I'm not sure if I will go back to live in Germany. I was thinking about going back to visit my family in May, because I haven't seen them for a long time but they have said they would quite like to come to London instead."

I met an interesting woman the other day. She said her name was Vera, and that she (1) over from East Berlin just after the fall of the Wall, and she (2) in London since then. In Berlin she (3) a journalist, but now she (4) for the BBC and she really (5) it. She said she (6) sure if she (7) back to live in Germany. She told me that she (8) about going back to visit her family in May, because she (9) them for a long time but they (10) they would quite like to come to London instead.

237. (A, B, C) Chuyển câu sang gián tiếp, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

- "If you type this letter out for me, I'll buy you a drink, OK? Thanks!" (persuade)
- "Sure, I don't mind at all if you use my typewriter. Go ahead." (allow)
- "All right, it's true, I was nervous." (confess)
- "I don't think Liverpool will win." (doubt)
- "Don't forget: you've got to hand in your work this evening." (remind)
- "It's a shame you couldn't make it to the party last night." (regret)
- "Don't worry, as long as you keep your head, you'll manage all right." (assure)
- "You really must come and visit us next weekend." (insist)
- "If I had more time, I'd help you with your work." (claim)
- "Might it be a good idea if we all organized our time more effectively?" (suggest)

13. INFINITIVES & GERUNDS

TÓM TẮT

A. VERBS + TO DO SOMETHING

want	refuse	learn	threaten	offer	decide	deserve
fail	hope	expect	manage	plan	promise	arrange
agree	tend	aim	attempt	care	afford	

What do you want to do?

I hope to go to university next year.

We have decided to leave tomorrow.

My brother is learning to drive.

I waved to Tom but failed to attract his attention.

He agreed to lend me some money.

B. VERBS + DOING SOMETHING

suggest	postpone	involve	mind	fancy
practise	consider	imagine	delay	admit
risk	miss	deny	finish	avoid

I enjoy dancing.

Mary suggested going to the cinema.

I don't mind helping you with your exercises.

He tried to avoid answering my questions.

Have you ever considered going to another country?

I'll do the shopping when I've finished cleaning the floor.

Lưu ý:

Cấu trúc would like/love/hate/prefer + to do sth.

Jane would like to meet you.

I would love to go to Australia one day.

Would you like to have a cup of coffee with me?

C. VERBS + TO DO/DOING SOMETHING: (Khác nhau về nghĩa)

- a) stop to do something: dừng lại để làm gì

- He *stopped to have* a rest because he felt tired.
- b) stop doing something: *chấm dứt một việc gì*
Tom *stopped smoking* when his doctor told him how dangerous it was.
2. a) remember to do something: *nhớ làm gì*
Please *remember to post* the letters when you get to the post office.
b) remember doing something: *nhớ đã làm điều gì*
I'm sure I locked the door. I clearly *remember locking* it.
3. a) regret to do something: *tiếc phải làm gì*
I *regret to tell* you that your application has been turned down.
b) regret doing something: *tiếc đã làm gì*
He *regretted going* to America for his summer holiday.
4. a) forget to do something: *quên làm điều gì*
She's always *forgetting to give* me my letters.
b) forget doing something: *quên đã làm điều gì*
I will never *forget seeing* the Queen.
5. a) try to do something: *cố gắng làm điều gì*
He *tried to learn* well for the final exam.
b) try doing something: *thử làm điều gì xem kết quả như thế nào*
Try *putting* some more vinegar. That might make it taste a bit better.
6. a) like to do something: *muốn, quen làm điều gì*
I *like to get* up early so that I can get plenty of work done before lunch.
b) like doing something: *thích làm điều gì*
I *like walking* in the rain.
7. a) need to do something: *cần phải làm gì*
He *needs to work* harder if he wants to make progress.
b) need doing something: *cần phải được làm gì*
Do you think my jacket *needs cleaning*?

D. VERBS + TO DO/DOING SOMETHING: (Không/ít khác nhau về nghĩa)

- a) Sau động từ start/begin có thể dùng to-infinitive hoặc verb-ing.

How old were you when you first *started/began to play/playing* the piano?

Tuy nhiên, phải dùng to-infinitive trong hai trường hợp sau đây:

1. Khi động từ start/begin đã được dùng ở hình thức tiếp diễn.

When I got off the train it was *beginning/starting to rain*.

2. Theo sau động từ start/begin là hai động từ understand và realize.

She *began to understand/to realize* what he really wanted.

- b) Sau các động từ propose, attempt, intend, continue, can't bear, có thể dùng cả hai cấu trúc mà ý nghĩa không khác. Nhưng thông thường, to-infinitive được dùng hơn.

I *can't bear getting/to get* my hands dirty.

He *intends doubling/to double* the advertising budget.

- c) Sau các động từ allow, advise, forbid, permit và recommend, verb-ing được dùng khi không có tân ngữ.

Sorry, we don't *allow smoking* in this room.

We don't *allow people to smoke* in this room.

I wouldn't *advise taking* the car.

I wouldn't *advise you to take* the car.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

238. (A) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- The government agreed (allow) the refugees over the border.
- The customs officer refused (let) him into the country.
- The tourist offered (hide) her in the boot of his car.
- She decided (sit) at the rear of the boat.
- They promised (return) the equipment they had borrowed.
- He didn't care (pay) more than 2 pounds for the ticket.
- He pretended not (understand) the regulations.
- Immigration officials tend (be) suspicious.
- They threatened (deport) her on the next flight.
- We've arranged (meet) outside the school at 4.30.
- Martin failed (pay) the rent on time again.
- I like (go) to the dentist every three months for a check-up.
- I'm sorry. I meant (write) to you, but I've been busy.

239. (B) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- Have you finished (fill) in that form?
- Have you ever considered (buy) a new house?
- Would you mind (show) me your passport, sir?
- They denied (enter) the country illegally.
- He avoided (cross) the bridge by swimming across the river.
- I like (cook), but I also enjoy meals out at restaurants.
- If we keep (give) aid to a country, it can become dependent on it.
- I can't imagine not (have) a car.
- We suggested (go) together to visit the museum.
- I really miss (play) tennis.

240. (A, B) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- R: Roy C: Claire
- R Are you going to be busy this evening?
- C Well, I've got a few things (1) (do). This room ought (2) (clean) up. And we've got some clothes (3) (take) to the launderette.
- R Yes, my trousers need (4) (wash). I'll put them in the bag.
- C Those trousers have (5) (dry-clean), don't they?
- R Oh yes, of course.
- C I've got too much (6) (carry). I'll take it in the car.
- R Well, if this mess in here needs (7) (clear) up, I can do that.

241. (C, D) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- Remember (phone) me tomorrow.
- As you're so tired, I don't think you need (come) tonight.
- Oh, no! It's starting (rain).
- Have you ever stopped (wonder) why she behaves like that?
- Do try (make) less noise. I'm learning.
- On his way home, he stopped at the newsagent (buy) a paper.
- I regret (say) that I won't be able to come to the party.
- I began (understand) what she wanted to say when she looked at me.
- Do you remember (phone) him last week?
- After two months without work, he regretted (leave) his job at the bank.
- I'll stop (lend) you money if you waste it on cigarettes.
- I shall never forget (see) her for the first time.
- If you've got a headache, why don't you try (take) an aspirin?
- Most people don't need (support) financially once they have found reasonable jobs.

242. (A, B, C) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- Instead of about the good news, Tom seemed to be indifferent.
A. exciting B. to excite C. being excited D. to be excited
- Jack got into trouble when he refused his briefcase for the customs officer.
A. opening B. being opened C. to open D. to be opened
- We can't count on by our parents every time we get into financial difficulty.
A. rescuing B. being rescued C. to rescue D. to be rescued
- Ms Brown expects about any revisions to her manuscript before it is printed.
A. consulting B. being consulted C. to consult D. to be consulted
- If we want to develop inner tranquility, we have to stop by every little thing.
A. being bothered B. bothering C. to bother D. to be bothered
- Alice didn't expect to Bill's party.
A. asking B. being asked C. to ask D. to be asked
- The nurse suggested two aspirins.
A. to take B. taking C. to be taken D. being taken
- The mouse avoided by coming out only when the two cats were outside.
A. catching B. to be caught C. being caught D. to catch

9. We were shocked to hear the news of your fired.
A. having been B. having C. to be D. to have been
10. Mary's children are used to up after school every day.
A. picking B. pick C. be picked D. being picked

243. (A, B, C) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- P: Peter S: Sue
- P Have you done all the shopping now?
S Yes, I think so. I must remember (1) (post) this letter.
P I remember (2) (pass) a postbox somewhere.
S Just a minute, where's my purse? It isn't in my handbag.
P Did you forget (3) (bring) it?
S No, I had it not long ago. And my credit card is in there. Oh, my God, what are we going to do?
P Just stop (4) (worry) and think. You must have put it down somewhere and forgotten (5) (pick) it up. Try (6) (remember) when you had it last.
S I remember (7) (have) it in the shoe shop.
P Then you stopped (8) (buy) a newspaper.
S Oh, it's all right. It's here in the shopping bag. Sorry. I can't remember (9) (put) it there.
P You could try (10) (chain) it to your hand next time.

244. (A, B, C) Kết hợp các cặp câu, dùng hình thức động từ thích hợp.

- Polly didn't do her homework. She forgot.
- The boys had been playing cards for hours. But they went on with the game.
- The driver wanted to buy some cigarettes. So he stopped.
- Laura didn't think she could move the piano. She didn't even try.
- I once met Mrs Thatcher. I'll always remember it.
- What about painting the shelves? They need it.
- Graham was rude to Louise. But he didn't mean it.
- Kevin missed his chance of a prize. He regrets that.

245. (A, B, C) Viết lại mỗi (cặp) câu, dùng hình thức động từ thích hợp.

Everyone has to be in the office at nine o'clock. The boss insists on it. And we can't make personal phone calls because he doesn't allow it. We don't have coffee breaks because he's stopped that.

We have to work hard - that's why he's always telling us. People can't work at their own speed; he doesn't agree with that. I have to work late because he quite often wants me to. If he asked me occasionally, I wouldn't mind. But I have to

spend my life at the office. He seems to expect it. And he watches me all the time, which I don't like. People can't be friendly with him - he hates that.

246. (A, B) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- The new students hope in many of the school's social activities.
A. including B. being included C. to include D. to be included
- Barbara didn't mention about her progress at work, but I'm sure she is.
A. concerning B. being concerned C. to concern D. to be concerned
- Please forgive me. I didn't mean you.
A. upsetting B. being upset C. to upset D. to be upset
- Sally gave such a good speech that I couldn't resist loudly when she finished.
A. applauding B. being applauded C. to applaud D. to be applauded
- Paul didn't mind by his fortieth birthday party held by his friends.
A. surprising B. being surprised C. to surprise D. to be surprised
- I finally finished at 7.00 p.m. and served dinner.
A. to cook B. to be cooked C. cooking D. being cooked
- Would you mind not on the radio until I've finished with this phone call?
A. turning B. being turned C. to turn D. to be turned
- The baby continued even after she was picked up.
A. being crying B. having cried C. have been crying D. to cry
- Although younger than the other children, Daisy demanded in the game.
A. to include B. to be included C. including D. being including
- The driver was so tired of the same route every day that he asked for a transfer.
A. to drive B. being driven C. driving D. drive

247. (A, B) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- Elaine Are you going to have a holiday this year?
Gary We decided (1) (spend) our holidays on a Spanish beach.
Paula Oh, good. I enjoy (2) (lie) on the beach. I might manage (3) (get) a suntan.
Elaine But I dislike (4) (stay) in one place all the time. I refuse (5) (sit) on the beach all day.
Martin I don't mind (6) (tour) around in the car.
Elaine You promised (7) (go) to Scandinavia with me. We could take the car.
Gary I do too much driving. I can't face (8) (drive) all holiday.
Martin I wasn't planning (9) (go) abroad. I can't afford (10) (spend) too much money.

248. (A) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

Racing driver Chuck Loder, who had a bad accident in last year's Grand Prix, is likely (1) (come) out of hospital soon. He agreed (2) (interview) by our reporter, although he has refused (3) (photograph), as his face still shows the marks of the accident. His health now seems (4) (improve) slowly. He expects (5) (sit) at the wheel once again.

Many people think that last year's race at Bruckheim ought never (6) (take) place. It was the last race on the old track, which is going (7) (rebuild) soon. The owners of the track expect (8) (complete) the work in time for the next season. Chuck hopes (9) (drive) in next year's Grand Prix.

249. (A, B, C) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- Mr Brown doesn't mind his customers discounts when they buy in large quantities.
A. giving B. being given C. to give D. to be given
- They are putting in several miles of new trials because so many people have said that they enjoy on them.
A. to walk B. to be walked C. walking D. being walked
- I don't remember of the decision to change the company policy on vacations.
A. telling B. being told C. to tell D. to be told
- Tom admitted the rock through the window.
A. to throw B. to be thrown C. being thrown D. throwing
- Ann hopes to join the club. She could make business contacts there.
A. inviting B. being invited C. to invite D. to be invited
- Sam always remembers in the garage so that the driveway is free for other cars.
A. parking B. being parked C. to park D. to be parked
- They were fortunate from the fire before the building collapsed.
A. to have rescued B. to have been rescued C. rescuing D. to rescue
- Arthur pretended not hurt when his younger sister bit him.
A. to have been B. to have C. having D. be
- Our mechanic said that he expects fixed the brakes on the car before we pick it up.
A. ✓ B. being C. to have D. to have been
- It's not my fault that Peter found out what we were planning. I don't remember anyone about it.
A. to tell B. to be told C. being told D. having told

250. (A, B, C) Dùng dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- My father (remember/spend) long happy hours on the beach when he was a child.
- We (regret/say) that you have not won a prize in our competition.
- Your football boots (need/clean) before the next match.
- You (not need/explain) the situation to me because I understand perfectly.
- John (try/remember) his aunt's address, but it had completely gone out of his mind.
- (Try/not make) elementary grammar mistakes when you are writing a composition.
- Please (remember/phone) home and tell them I'll be late.
- He (regret/not work) harder when he started university.
- The technician (try/fiddle) with knobs, but the machine still wouldn't work.
- The matter (need/look) into.

251. (A, B, C) Dùng với dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

Last year I stopped (1) (smoke). I'd been trying (2) (give) up for ages. I needed (3) (stop) because it was costing me a lot of money. And of course if I went on (4) (smoke), I would be putting my health at risk. I wasn't having much success until one day a friend said, "Why don't you try (5) (eat) sweets instead of smoking? That might break the habit." And it worked. I don't smoke now. But there's one problem.

I like (6) (go) to the dentist for a check-up now and again. Last time he said, "I regret (7) (tell) you this, but your teeth don't look very healthy," he went on (8) (say) that three of my teeth needed (9) (pull) out. This was all because of the sweets. "Eating sweets means (10) (do) a lot of damage to your teeth," he said. I don't regret (11) (give) up smoking. I'd hate (12) (become) addicted to tobacco again. But I'd love (13) (have) healthy lungs and healthy teeth.

252. (A, B) Sửa các lỗi sai trong những câu sau đây.

- To take regular exercise is becoming quite a trend these days.
- I don't mind to be interviewed in the street by market researchers.
- You can go to sightsee in London from the top of a double-decker bus.
- In addition to lose all my money, I realized my credit card had been stolen.
- Most cats enjoy be stroked.
- They didn't ask that I leave early.
- The army made him to complete his training course.

8. Try to don't keep interrupting the speaker this time.
9. He enrolled at a language school in Pisa for learn basic Italian.
10. She didn't want that you go to all this trouble for her.

253. (A, B, C) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. I enjoy to the park on summer evenings.
A. to go B. going C. being gone D. go
2. much television is not a healthy habit for a growing child.
A. To be watched B. Being watched C. Watching D. Watch
3. His handwriting is very bad, so he had me his paper for him last night.
A. type B. to type C. typed D. to have typed
4. I can't recall that old movie, but maybe I did many years ago.
A. to see B. to have seen
C. having been seen D. having seen
5. You can't blame Tom for tempted to eat that dessert. It looked delicious.
A. ✓ B. be C. to be D. having been
6. We considered after work.
A. to go shop B. going shopping C. going to shop D. to go to shop
7. The painting was beautiful. I stood there it for a long time.
A. for admiring B. being admired C. admire D. admiring
8. Children have trouble fact from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.
A. to separate B. to be separated C. separating D. for separating
9. I'll never forget that race. What a thrill!
A. winning B. being won C. win D. to win
10. Mark proved that the accident wasn't his fault by two witnesses who testified in his favour.
A. produce B. produced C. producing D. to produce

254. (A, B) Kết hợp 1 dòng ở cột A với 1 dòng ở cột B.

A

1. She's never been to Hanoi but she hopes
2. After following the first paragraph I gave up
3. The first chapter was so exciting that I kept on
4. There was a heavy rain but we carried on
5. After a hard day working I feel like
6. After an enjoyable English class I don't mind
7. After feeling ill for five days, on the sixth day I began
8. I've tried to call her several times but I've failed
9. I'd love to buy a new dictionary, but I can't afford

10. They started shouting at him but he pretended

B

- a. to feel a little better.
- b. going swimming in the sea.
- c. to go there some day.
- d. to get through.
- e. walking in the hope that it might stop.
- f. trying to read the book.
- g. not to hear.
- h. doing some extra homework.
- i. reading the book to the end.
- j. to buy one.

255. (A, B, C, D) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. Don't forget home as soon as you arrive at your destination.
A. to call B. calling C. having called D. to be called
2. After their children had grown up, they decided to the city centre.
A. to have moved B. moving C. move D. to move
3. The authorities advised all drinking water during the emergency.
A. to boil B. to be boiled C. boiling D. boil
4. Our team won the championship game by two points in the last five seconds.
A. score B. scoring C. to score D. being scored
5. Let's leave early. We can't risk up in heavy traffic during rush hour.
A. holding B. being held C. having held D. to hold
6. I think I hear someone open the back window. Do you hear it, too?
A. try B. trying C. trying to D. try to
7. Jack offered care of my garden while I was out of town.
A. take B. taking C. to have taken D. to take
8. Jim should have asked for help instead to do it himself.
A. of trying B. to try C. try D. from trying
9. Do you have an excuse late to class two days in a row?
A. for to be B. for being C. to be D. being
10. No one has better qualifications. Carol is certain chosen for the job.
A. ✓ B. having C. to be D. being

256. (A, B, C) Viết lại câu, dùng động từ trong ngoặc.

1. "Yes, I did drive too fast through the town," she said. (admitted)
2. "I'll lend you some money, if you like," he said to me. (offered)
3. "I haven't smoked for three years," she said. (stopped)



4. We needed petrol, so we went to a service station. (*stopped*)
5. I didn't buy food for dinner so we had to go out. (*forgot*)
6. But I fed the cat. (*remembered*)
7. I had piano lessons for years, but I was never very good. (*tried*)
8. Jack said that he hadn't cheated in the exam. (*denied*)
9. It was difficult for me not to laugh at Wendy's letter. (*help*)
10. I'm sorry but you have not been appointed to the post. (*regret*)
11. Luckily Peter didn't pay a fine. (*avoided*)
12. I think it would be a good idea to take the train. (*suggest*)
13. I think Derek has forgotten the meeting. (*appears*)
14. My neighbour said he would call the police. (*threatened*)

257. (A, B, C) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. When I kept getting unwanted calls, I had my phone number
A. change B. changed C. to change D. changing
2. I truly appreciated to give a speech in front of my school.
A. asking B. to have asked C. to ask D. having been asked
3. If we leave now, we can drive half the distance before we stop lunch.
A. to have B. having C. having had D. for having
4. The flight attendants made all the passengers their seat belts during the turbulence.
A. to buckle B. to have buckled C. buckle D. buckling
5. It is always interesting people in airports while you're waiting for a flight.
A. being observed B. observe C. to have observed D. to observe
6. He admitted knowing about the embezzlement of funds from his company, but denied in any way.
A. involving B. being involved C. having involved D. to be involved
7. Could you please come over? I need you the refrigerator.
A. help me moving B. helping me to move
C. to help me move D. help me to move
8. A plane with an engine on fire approached the runway. was frightening.
A. Watch it landing B. Watching it land
C. To watch it land D. Watching to land it
9. Jack made me him next week.
A. promise to call B. promise calling
C. to promise to call D. to promise calling
10. I was enjoying my book, but I stopped a program on TV.
A. to read to watch B. to read for watching
C. reading for to watch D. reading to watch

14. COMPARISONS

TÓM TẮT

A. POSITIVE FORM (So sánh bằng nhau)

1. Affirmative: As + Adj/Adv + As

My house is *as big as* yours.
(Căn nhà tôi lớn bằng căn nhà bạn.)
This watch is *as expensive as* mine.
He runs *as fast as* I do.

2. Negative: As/So + Adj/Adv + As

Tom isn't *as/so old as* he looks.
(Tom không lớn tuổi như vẻ bề ngoài.)
This machine isn't *as/so modern as* that one.
He doesn't work *as/so hard as* he used to.

Lưu ý:

a) Less... than cũng tương tự như not as/so...as.

This film is *less interesting than* the one we saw last week.
(Cuốn phim này không hay như cuốn phim chúng ta xem tuần trước.)
The centre was *less crowded than* usual.

b) Khi nói gấp bao nhiêu lần, ta dùng cấu trúc **twice/three times as ... as.**

Petrol is *twice as expensive as* it was a few years ago.
(Giá xăng dầu bây giờ đắt gấp đôi cách đây vài năm.)
Their house is about *three times as big as* ours.

c) Khi muốn nói tương tự như, ta dùng cấu trúc **the same as.**

Ann's salary is *the same as* Jane's.
(Lương của Ann bằng lương của Jane.)
Tom is *the same age as* Dick.

B. COMPARATIVE FORM (So sánh hơn)

1. Short adjectives/adverbs: những từ có 1 âm tiết và 2 âm tiết tận cùng bằng -y.

Adjective/Adverb + ER + (Than)

cheap → cheaper safe → safer

big	→	bigger	lucky	→	luckier
cold	→	colder	fine	→	finer
hot	→	hotter	pretty	→	prettier

The exam paper is *easier than* we expected.

(Đề thi dễ hơn chúng ta nghĩ.)

His house is *bigger than* hers.

London is *older than* New York.

The cassette is *cheaper than* the record.

2. Long adjectives/adverbs: những từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên

More + Adjective/Adverb + (Than)

modern → *more modern*

patient → *more patient*

comfortable → *more comfortable*

difficult → *more difficult*

You're *more patient than* me.

(Bạn kiên nhẫn hơn tôi.)

The exam was *more difficult than* we expected.

Lưu ý:

a) Đối với một số từ sau đây có thể xem như là tính từ ngắn hoặc dài, nhưng thường được dùng như tính từ dài: quiet, clever, narrow, shallow, simple, gentle, common, hollow, polite, handsome, wicked, pleasant, cruel, stupid, tired.

b) Trước các tính từ so sánh hơn, có thể dùng các (cụm) từ sau đây để chỉ mức độ so sánh: much, a lot, far, a bit, (một chút) slightly (hơi).

Let's go by bus. It's *much/a lot/far* cheaper.

(Chúng ta hãy đi xe buýt. Nó rẻ hơn nhiều.)

Don't go by train. It's *a lot/much* more expensive.

This bag is *slightly* heavier than the other one.

c) Sau *than* hoặc *as* có thể dùng đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ hoặc chủ ngữ.

You're taller than *me/I* am.

Her husband isn't as clever as *her/she* is.

d) Có thể dùng hình thức so sánh hơn trong một trường hợp đặc biệt để diễn tả hai thay đổi cùng xảy ra. Chú ý không tách *more* khỏi tính từ, trạng từ hoặc danh từ.

The older I get, the happier I am.

(Tôi càng lớn, tôi càng cảm thấy hạnh phúc.)

The sooner you start, the more quickly your work will be finished.

The more money we earn, the better we live.

The more people you know, the less time you have to see them.

e) Để diễn tả sự thay đổi tiếp tục, có thể dùng hình thức so sánh kép. Trong trường hợp này, không dùng cụm từ *than*.

I am getting fatter and fatter.

(Càng ngày tôi càng mập ra.)

We're more and more concerned about the protection of our environment.

f) Trong câu hỏi và câu phủ định, *any* có thể được dùng với hình thức so sánh hơn.

Is she any better?

(Cô ấy có khỏe hơn chút nào không?)

I can't go any further.

If I were any younger, I'd fall in love with her.

g) Có thể dùng *ever* sau hình thức so sánh hơn.

You're looking lovelier than ever.

(Bạn trông dễ thương hơn trước đây nhiều.)

h) Có thể dùng *even* để nhấn mạnh hình thức so sánh hơn.

You're even more beautiful than before.

(Bạn thậm chí còn đẹp hơn trước đây nữa.)

Harry's nice, but his brother's even nicer.

i) Có thể dùng *no* với nghĩa *not at all* trước hình thức so sánh hơn.

Are you really forty-five? You look no older than thirty-eight.

(Bạn trông không già hơn ba mươi tám tuổi chút nào.)

Some people can eat what they like and get no fatter.

j) Cụm từ *of* được đặt ở đầu câu để nhấn mạnh hình thức so sánh bậc hơn và nhất.

Of the two boys, John behaves the more politely.

(Trong hai đứa con trai, John cư xử lịch sự hơn.)

Of all the capitals in the world, Bangkok is the one I would most like to visit.

k) Cụm từ *other than* (khác với) và *rather than* (hơn là) dùng để so sánh hơn.

Here is a book other than yours.

(Đây là cuốn sách khác với cuốn sách của bạn.)

I have no other lesson than this one to learn.

I will go to meet him *rather than* wait for him.

(Tôi sẽ đi gặp anh ấy hơn là phải ngồi đợi.)

She left *rather than* stay as an unwelcome guest.

l) Cụm từ **no other... than** (không có gì/ai khác trừ) và **none other than** (không phải cái gì/ai khác mà chính là).

I have *no other* friend here *than* you.

(Tôi không có người bạn nào ở đây ngoài bạn cả.)

We can think of *no other* example *than* this.

It was *none other than* Peter.

(Người đó không ai khác hơn là Peter.)

The tall man that I saw was *none other than* Mr Brown.

m) Có thể dùng các cấu trúc sau đây với danh từ để so sánh: *more of a*, *as much of a*, *less of a* và *enough of a*.

He's *more of a* sportsman *than* his brother.

(Anh ấy có tư chất của một vận động viên hơn anh của mình.)

It was *as much of a* success as I expected (it would be).

He's *less of a* fool *than* I thought (you were).

(Tôi đã nghĩ anh ta dại dột hơn nhiều.)

He's *enough of a* man to tell the truth.

He's *too much of a* coward to tell the truth.

C. SUPERLATIVE FORM (So sánh bậc nhất)

1. Short adjectives/adverbs: The + Adjective/ adverb + EST

cheap → *the cheapest* thin → *the thinnest*

fine → *the finest* lovely → *the loveliest*

old → *the oldest* big → *the biggest*

brave → *the bravest* happy → *the happiest*

What is *the longest* river in the world?

(Con sông nào dài nhất trên thế giới?)

Yesterday was *the hottest* day of the year.

What is *the happiest* day of your life?

2. Long adjectives/adverbs: The most + Adjective/ adverb

delicious → *the most delicious*

famous → *the most famous*

enjoyable → *the most enjoyable*

boring → *the most boring*

What was *the most enjoyable* holiday you've ever had?

(Kì nghỉ nào thú vị nhất mà bạn đã từng đi?)

This is *the most delicious* meal I've had for a long time.

Lưu ý:

a) Một số tính từ và trạng từ so sánh bất quy tắc:

good/well → *better* → *the best*

bad/badly → *worse* → *the worst*

far → *farther/further* → *the farthest/furthest*

little → *less* → *the least*

many/much → *more* → *the most*

b) Most + adj được dùng với nghĩa very.

The book I bought is *most interesting*.

(Cuốn sách tôi mua thì rất hay.)

Thank you for the money. It was *most generous* of you.

c) Tính từ so sánh bậc nhất có thể dùng mà không có danh từ

He's *the greatest* athlete.

(Anh ta là vận động viên khỏe nhất.)

This one is *the fastest*.

Their house is *the most expensive*.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

258. (B) Chọn hình thức đúng của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Pat's car is (*faster/fastest*) than Ban's.
2. This poster is (*colourful/more colourful*) than the one in the hall.
3. Does Fred feel (*well/better*) today than he did yesterday?
4. My cat is the (*prettier/prettiest*) of the two.
5. This summary is (*the better/the best*) of the pair.
6. This painting is (*less impressive/least impressive*) than that one.
7. That recipe calls for (*many/much*) more sugar than mine does.
8. George Washington is (*famous/more famous*) than John Jay.
9. My sister's much (*taller/tallest*) than me.
10. My mother's 45, and my father's two years (*older/oldest*) than her.
11. English is (*easier/easiest*) to learn than German.
12. (*More/Most*) people speak Chinese than any other language.
13. I think my English is getting (*better/best*).
14. But I'm afraid my pronunciation is getting (*worse/worst*).
15. You are (*more/most*) beautiful every day.

259. (C) Chọn hình thức đúng của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Phil is the (*happier/happiest*) person that we know.
2. Of the four dresses, I like the red one (*better/best*).
3. The museum is the (*farther/farthest*) away of the three buildings.
4. Jane is the (*less/least*) athletic of all the women.
5. She's the (*taller/tallest*) in our family.
6. This is the (*creamier/creamiest*) ice cream I have ever had.
7. Anne is the (*more/most*) intelligent person I've known.
8. China is the country with the (*larger/largest*) population.

260. (A, B) Điền vào ô trống với THAN, AS, LESS hoặc MORE.

1. John and Peter left soon as the professor had finished his lecture.
2. His job is important than his friend's.
3. He plays the guitar well as my brother.
4. A new house is much expensive than an older one.
5. Last week was hot as this week.
6. Martha is talented than her cousin.
7. Bill's books are colourful than his friends'.
8. Nobody is happier Maria Elena.
9. The boys felt worse the girls about losing the game.
10. They have money than we do.

11. The Empire State Building is taller the Statue of Liberty.
12. California is farther from New York Pennsylvania.
13. Tom reads quickly than his sister.
14. No animal is so big King Kong.
15. I'm afraid that this report is impressive than the government's.
16. Sam wears the same shirt his teammates.
17. Dave paints much more realistically his professor.
18. A greyhound runs faster a Chihuahua.

261. (B) Hoàn thành câu với hình thức so sánh hơn, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. New York is a busy city. (*Tokyo*)
Yes, but Tokyo is busier.
2. I think dogs are very clever animals. (*cats*)
3. Italy is a hot country. (*Thailand*)
4. I think English is a difficult language. (*Chinese*)
5. Leeds United is a good team. (*Manchester United*)
6. I think *Yesterday* is a beautiful song. (*Bright Eyes*)
7. Crocodiles are really ugly. (*frogs*)
8. There are a lot of people in Russia. (*India*)

262. (A, B) Sửa các lỗi sai trong những câu sau đây.

1. She's nothing like so good at tennis like her friend.
2. Have as many potatoes that you like.
3. His hand is so steady as a rock.
4. The dictionary wasn't nearly as helpful than I had hoped.
5. Laurie drank half as much beer like Hugo.
6. Their offer is every bit as acceptable than yours.
7. This book is more better than that one.
8. This year's prices will certainly be much higher as last year's.
9. Her letter was more friendlier than his.
10. She was happier than anyone in her family.

263. (B) Hoàn thành câu, dùng hình thức so sánh hơn của từ trong bảng. Chú ý dùng THAN nếu cần thiết.

<i>crowded</i>	<i>early</i>	<i>high</i>	<i>reliable</i>	<i>wide</i>	<i>important</i>
<i>peaceful</i>	<i>easily</i>	<i>thin</i>	<i>serious</i>	<i>interested</i>	<i>confident</i>

1. You look *thinner*. Have you *lost* weight? *early* than
2. My brother was feeling tired last night, so he went to bed usual.
3. Health and happiness are money.

4. His new car is his old one, but still fits easily into the garage.
5. In some parts of my country, prices are in others.
6. He wants to have a car. The car he's got keeps breaking down.
7. There were a lot of people in the cinema. It was usual.
8. We'll find our way around the city if we have a good map.
9. My little brother doesn't study hard. He's in playing computer games.
10. His grandfather's illness was we thought at first.
11. I like living in the countryside. It's living in a city.
12. The last exam was quite easy and I began to feel about my results.

264. (A, B, C) Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng các từ trong ngoặc.

1. No one I know is taller than he is. (*He's*)
2. No one has ever said such a nice thing to me. (*That's the*)
3. A Boeing 747 holds more passengers than a 727. (*A Boeing 727*)
4. I prefer coffee to tea. (*I think coffee*)
5. It isn't as warm in Canada as it is in Mexico. (*Mexico is*)
6. There are fewer people in Taiwan than in Korea. (*The population of Korea*)
7. There is less rain in Tokyo than in Athens in January. (*More rain*)
8. In July New York is warmer than Buenos Aires, but wetter. (*Buenos Aires*)
9. The amount of rainfall is similar in London and New York. (*About the*)
10. Summer nights in Cairo are much warmer than in London. (*In London*)
11. No one can imagine a more frightening illness than AIDS. (*AIDS is*)
12. Fewer people die from flu than 50 years ago. (*Not as*)

265. (B, C) Dùng hình thức so sánh thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.

W: Wendy M: Mike

- W I think we should go to London to look for a job. You'll get a (1) (high) salary than you do now, and we'll have a (2) (good) standard of living.
- M London is the (3) (expensive) place. For example, house prices are the (4) (high) in the country. A house will be (5) (difficult) to find there than in Manchester.
- W But it's probably the (6) (big) chance you'll ever get. That's the (7) (important) thing. And it'll be (8) (easy) for me to find a good job than it was here.
- M London is a (9) (big) place than Manchester.
- W Well, I'd like a (10) (exciting) life. It is boring here sometimes. And it'll be much (11) (convenient) for shops and theatres, living in London. You've never liked your job here. And things have got (12) (bad) recently.

M Yes, they have. And Multitech is certainly one of the (13) (good) companies in the business. But I don't want to go unless you really want to.

266. (A, B) Sửa các lỗi sai trong những câu sau đây.

1. More you work, more money you earn.
2. The more it is difficult, more harder he tries.
3. He's been working longer that you.
4. This meat's tougher as yesterday's.
5. You're the more infuriating person I've ever met.
6. He's a great deal the best boxer in the world.
7. My cousin is very taller than me.
8. I would like to go to a school as the one my sister goes to.
9. Your apartment is the same size to mine.
10. That garden is as beautiful like the one in the park.
11. She looks as her mother.
12. This blouse is the same expensive as that one.
13. He is as intelligent than his brother.
14. Tom's suit is the same style that Bob's.
15. Your shoes are the same colour like mine.

267. (A, B, C) Dùng hình thức đúng của từ trong ngoặc.

1. Angela is (young) person in the class.
2. Mary speaks good French but Lucia speaks it (good).
3. The bill isn't (expensive) as I thought it would be.
4. He bought (cheap) petrol he could find.
5. Her teacher speaks (slow) than ours.
6. They live (far) from school than I do.
7. Your son's behaviour is (bad) in the whole school.
8. It was (boring) film I had ever seen.
9. She sings (beautiful) than anyone else in the choir.
10. He sounded (angry) than he did yesterday.
11. There isn't a room (comfortable) than this one.
12. She works (quick) than Julian but not (fast) than Alison.

268. (C) Viết lại câu, dùng hình thức so sánh nhất của từ trong ngoặc.

1. The Queen Elizabeth II carries 1,800 passengers. (*large*)
It is the largest passenger ship in the world.
2. Egypt has only 55.8 millimetres of rain a year. (*dry*)
3. Concorde flies at a speed of 2,150 kilometers an hour. (*fast*)
4. The Toronto Tower is 553 meters tall. (*tall*)

5. Antarctica has an average temperature of -60°C . (*cold*)
6. The Sahara Desert covers an area of 8,400,000 square kilometres. (*big*)
7. Mount Everest is 8,848 metres high. (*high*)
8. Mexico City has a population of about 20 million people. (*large*)
9. Columbia has 4,099 millimetres of rain a year. (*wet*)
10. At Chicago International Airport a plane takes off or lands every 45 seconds. (*busy*)

269. (A) **Viết lại câu, bắt đầu bằng các từ trong ngoặc.**

1. Our children behave much better than theirs. (*Their children*)
2. Their house has a larger garden than ours. (*Our garden*)
3. What I earn in a month, he earns in a week. (*He earns*)
4. I expected the food they served to be nicer than it was. (*The food*)
5. Henry had more champagne than me. (*I didn't*)
6. The party ended earlier than I thought it would. (*The party didn't*)
7. Fewer people came to the party than he anticipated. (*There weren't*)
8. Sheila usually behaves dreadfully, but she didn't this time. (*Sheila didn't*)
9. She usually wears a lot of jewelry, but she didn't tonight. (*She didn't*)
10. I see less of her than I used to. (*I don't see*)
11. We enjoyed the evening more than the children. (*The children*)
12. Cairo is much hotter than London in July. (*London isn't*)
13. There are fewer rainy days in Paris than in New York. (*There aren't*)
14. A broken leg is more serious than a sprained wrist. (*A sprained wrist*)
15. Fewer people die from flu than 50 years ago. (*Not as*)

270. (B, C) **Sửa các lỗi sai trong những câu sau đây.**

1. I think the driver is a bit the tireder than me.
2. The more, the merry.
3. It was the dearest hotel I'd never had the misfortune to stay in.
4. That one's the slowiest train.
5. Your work's more impressive then anyone else's.
6. They were the most poorest people I had ever seen.
7. August is hottest and most humid month of the year.
8. It was the most biggest building I had ever seen.
9. Dr. Henderson was the most thorough doctor than Jane had ever known.
10. Paula, Susie and Jill bought new homes, but Paula's was more elegant.
11. Peking is most densely populated city in the world.
12. Mary is the fastest runner than the other team members.
13. That place serves the gooddest ice cream in town.
14. He got the baddest grade he had ever received on an exam.

15. RELATIVE CLAUSES

TÓM TẮT

Who, whom, which, that và whose là những đại từ quan hệ. **Where, when và why** là những trạng từ quan hệ. Tất cả những từ này mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ (mệnh đề tính từ) dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước nó.

A. WHO:

thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người và làm chủ ngữ cho động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

The woman *who* is standing over there is my sister.

(Người phụ nữ đang đứng đằng kia là chị tôi.)

I saw the girl *who* helped us last week.

B. WHOM:

thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người và làm tân ngữ cho động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

The man *whom* you met yesterday is my father.

(Người đàn ông bạn gặp hôm qua là ba tôi.)

I know the boy *whom* Tom spoke to.

C. WHICH:

1. thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật và làm chủ ngữ cho động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

She works for a company *which* makes cars.

(Cô ấy làm việc cho một công ty sản xuất xe hơi.)

There is one thing *which* is not explained.

2. thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật và làm tân ngữ cho động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

The book *which* I bought yesterday is very interesting.

(Cuốn sách tôi mua hôm qua là rất hay.)

This is the house *which* I wrote to you about.

D. THAT:

có thể thay cho vị trí của *who, whom và which* (trừ những trường hợp ngoại lệ).

Mrs Brown is the woman *who/that* owns the bigger house.

(Bà Brown là người sở hữu căn nhà lớn hơn.)

The woman *whom/that* you saw last week is my secretary.
We saw the actual spaceship *which/that* landed on the moon.

E. WHOSE:

là đại từ quan hệ sở hữu, nói lên mối quan hệ của danh từ thứ hai đối với danh từ thứ nhất.

The girl *whose* photo was in the paper lives in our street.
(Cô gái có bức ảnh được đăng báo sống cùng đường với chúng tôi.)
Mary was looking after a dog *whose* leg had been broken in an accident.

F. WHERE:

mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ để nói đến một nơi chốn.

The hotel *where* we stayed wasn't very clean.
(Khách sạn nơi chúng tôi ở lại không sạch sẽ lắm.)

I would like to live in a country *where* there is plenty of sunshine.

G. WHEN:

mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ để chỉ thời gian. (Có thể thay bằng *that*)

Do you still remember the day *when/that* we first met?
(Bạn có còn nhớ cái ngày chúng ta gặp nhau lần đầu chứ?)
She was very happy on the day *when/that* I came to see her.

H. WHY:

mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ để nói đến lí do. (Có thể thay bằng *that*)

I don't know the reason *why/that* you didn't go to school yesterday.
(Tôi không biết lí do tại sao hôm qua bạn không đi học.)
One of the reasons *why/that* I couldn't go on holiday last month was that I didn't have enough money.

CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ.

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ hạn định (Restrictive Relative Clause) dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước, là bộ phận quan trọng của câu. Nếu bỏ đi, mệnh đề chính không có ý nghĩa rõ ràng.

The book *which* I borrowed from you is very interesting.

This is the picture *that* I bought yesterday.

We will never forget the day *when* we came to London.

This is the place *where* I was born.

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ giải thích (Non-restrictive Relative Clause) dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước, là phần giải thích thêm. Nếu bỏ đi, mệnh đề chính vẫn còn ý nghĩa rõ ràng. Mệnh đề này thường được tách khỏi mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy hoặc dấu gạch ngang. Đại từ *that* không được dùng trong loại mệnh đề này và không được lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ.

My father, *who* is fifty years old, is a doctor.

Miss Brown, *whom* we studied English with, is a very nice teacher.

I want to help Peter, *whose* father is a very good farmer.

He often comes to visit Oxford, *where* he grew up.

3. Mệnh đề quan hệ nối tiếp (Sentence Relative Clause) dùng để giải thích cả một câu, trường hợp này chỉ dùng đại từ *which* và dùng dấu phẩy để tách hai mệnh đề. Mệnh đề này luôn đứng cuối câu.

He admires Mr Brown, *which* surprises me.

(Anh ấy thần phục ông Brown, mà điều đó làm tôi ngạc nhiên.)

She didn't come to my party, *which* I found strange.

It rained very heavily, *which* prevented my going out.

(Trời mưa rất lớn đã làm tôi không thể đi chơi được.)

Mary tore Tom's letter, *which* made him sad.

Lưu ý:

a) Các đại từ quan hệ cổ chức năng tân ngữ đều có thể lược bỏ.

Do you know the boy (*whom*) we met yesterday?

That's the house (*which*) I have bought.

b) Khi danh từ được nói đến là tân ngữ của giới từ, có thể đưa giới từ đó đứng trước đại từ quan hệ. Trường hợp này chỉ được dùng *whom* và *which*.

Miss Brown, *with whom* we studied last year, is a very nice teacher.

Mr Cater, *to whom* I spoke on the phone last night, is very interested in our plan.

Fortunately we had a map, *without which* we would have got lost.

c) Chú ý cách dùng của các cấu trúc mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ: all, most, none, neither, any, either, some, (a) few, both, half, each, one, two, several, many, much + of which/ whom.

Daisy has three brothers, *all of whom* are teachers.
 I tried on three pairs of shoes, *none of which* fitted me.
 He asked me a lot of questions, *most of which* I couldn't answer.
 Two boys, *neither of whom* I had seen before, came into my class.
 They have got two cars, *one of which* they seldom use.
 There were a lot of people at the meeting, *few of whom* I had met before.

d) Các trường hợp sau đây thường phải dùng **that**.

+ khi cụm từ đứng trước vừa là danh từ chỉ người và chỉ vật.

He told me about the *places and people that* he had seen in London.

+ sau các tính từ so sánh nhất, first và last.

This is *the most interesting film that* I've ever seen.

Moscow is *the finest city that* she's ever visited.

That is *the last letter that* he wrote.

She was *the first person that* broke the silence.

+ sau các từ all, only (duy nhất) và very (chính là).

All that he can say is this.

I bought *the only book that* they had.

You're *the very man that* I would like to see.

+ sau các đại từ bất định.

He never says *anything that* is worth listening to.

I'll tell you *something that* is very interesting.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

271. (A, C, D) Điền vào ô trống với WHO, WHICH hoặc THAT.

A Shall we have something to eat?

B Yes, but not here. I don't like cafes (1) don't have tables. I'm not one of those people (2) can eat standing up.

A There's another restaurant over there.

B It looks expensive, one of those places (3) charge very high prices. The only customers (4) can afford to eat there are businessmen (5) get their expenses paid. Anyway, I can't see a menu. I'm not going into a restaurant (6) doesn't display a menu.

A We just passed a cafe (7) does snacks.

B Oh, I don't like the look of that.

A You're one of those people (8) are never satisfied, aren't you?

272. (A, C, E) Điền vào ô trống với WHO, WHICH hoặc WHOSE.

1. Whales and dolphins both make sounds in some ways are similar to a language.

2. People work with dolphins are often surprised at how intelligent they are.

3. One scientist has studied dolphins carefully is John Lilly.

4. Lilly was the director of an institute became famous for its research.

5. Another person work has become well known is Roger Fouts.

6. Fouts, ... has studied the behaviour of other animals, taught a chimpanzee sign-language.

7. This is the kind of language is used by deaf and dumb people.

8. "Dumb" is the word used in English for someone is unable to speak.

9. The chimpanzee, ... name was Washoe, learned about 160 signs.

10. My father, ... is a doctor, is fifty years old now.

273. (A, B, C, E) Điền vào ô trống với WHO, WHOM, WHICH hoặc WHOSE.

Keswick, (1) lies at the heart of the Lake District, is the perfect place for a holiday, and the Derwent Hotel, (2) overlooks the town, is the perfect place to stay. Peter and Debbie Jackson, (3) bought this small hotel three years ago, have already won a reputation for excellence. Peter, (4) cooking attracts people from far and wide, was once Young Chef of the Year. The comfort of the guests, (5) the owners treat almost as members of the family, always comes first. Omar Sharif, (6) once stayed at the hotel, described it as "marvelous". And the Lake District, (7) has so much wonderful scenery, will not disappoint you.

274. (A, C, D, E, F) Điền vào ô trống với một đại từ hoặc trạng từ quan hệ.

- The place I went to school is a quiet town.
- My brother, ... has a moustache, is studying architecture.
- The man I saw on TV is a famous writer.
- The day we left on our trip was Friday 13th.
- The time I broke my leg is one of my worst memories.
- My car, ... I've had since 1998, is a white Honda.
- The Hotel Tyrol, ... I stayed when I was in Italy, was a really nice hotel.
- I'm working for a firm main office is in London.
- The firm employs five hundred people makes video recorders.
- The work increases a lot when the boss is away is always interesting.

275. (A, C, E) Hoàn thành các câu bằng dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

- Islamabad which I visited recently has grown into a very large city over the past ten years.
- Everyone who knew him said that he was hard-working and trustworthy.
- Professor Dupont who is an expert on economics came to give us a lecture on the national economy.
- The book I'm thinking of is the one which David gave you.
- The Mrs Smith who's coming to tea is the Mrs Smith whose son you know.
- Mr Smith whose son you know is coming to tea.
- My boss whose work takes him to a lot of countries has decided he needs an assistant in London.
- My grandmother who was an extraordinary woman lived to the age of a hundred and fifteen.

276. (B, C, D, E) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- Anyone scholastic record is above average can apply for the scholarship.
A. who has a B. has a C. who's a D. whose
- Florida, ... the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.
A. is B. known as C. is known as D. that is known as
- Is this the address to you want the package sent?
A. where B. that C. which D. whom
- They expect that the new book will be bought by people interested in English history.
A. ✓ B. are C. who D. they are
- "Do you have the book the teacher?"
A. that it belongs to B. to which belongs to
C. to which belongs D. that belongs to

6. "Were you able to locate the person wallet you found?"

- A. which B. that his C. whose D. that's
- The movie last night was terrific.
A. I went B. I went to C. I went to it D. that I went
- I read a book about Picasso, ... Spanish painter.
A. a B. is a C. who a D. that is a
- I have seventeen students, most of speak English very well.
A. who B. those C. whom D. which
- "Is Dr Brown the person you wish to speak?"
A. that B. whom C. to that D. to whom

277. (A, C, D, E, F, G, H) Điền vào ô trống bằng đại từ quan hệ thích hợp, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

- I don't like people are big-headed.
- Have you seen the awful hat Mary's bought for the wedding?
- She wanted to know the reason I had turned down her invitation.
- We were unable to get tickets for Madonna's Wembley concert was a sell-out.
- We went back to look at the house we used to live.
- It was returned to the person name was inside.
- What's the name of the girl got married to Chris Small?
- Can you think of any reason he might have done it?
- I prefer to go to Spain in winter there are fewer tourists about.
- What's the name of the singer record is number one just now?

278. (A, C, D) Điền đại từ quan hệ thích hợp.

People (1) tell the truth about the properties they are selling should be given prizes for honesty. A house (2) is described as "spacious" will be found to be too large. Words like "enchanted", "delightful", "convenient", "attractive", (3) are commonly used, all mean "small". The words "small" and "picturesque" (4) are not so frequently used, both mean "too small". A "picturesque house" is one with a bedroom (5) is too small to put a bed in and a kitchen (6) is too small to boil an egg in.

My prize for honesty goes to someone (7) recently described a house (8) he was selling in the following way: This house, (9) is situated in a very rough area of London, is really in need of repair. The house, (10) has a terrible lounge and a tiny dining room, also has three miserable bedrooms and a bathroom (11) is fitted with a leaky shower. The central heating, (12) is expensive to run, is unreliable. There is a handkerchief-sized garden (13) is overgrown with weeds. The neighbours, (14) are generally

unfriendly, are not likely to welcome you. This property, (15) is definitely not recommended, is ridiculously overpriced at 150,000 pounds.

279. (A, D) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

1. I called to Luis. He saw me. He waved at me.
2. The detective knew all the answers. He solved the mystery.
3. I met an old friend. He told me all about a book he'd just read.
4. Len is giving a big party. Len has finally found a new job.
5. An old school friend gave me a job.
6. My cousin Pete helped me study for my history exam.
7. The girls were hungry and decided to have a meal.
8. This is Brenda. She lives upstairs.
9. Someone found the money and was given a reward.
10. Jane is the woman. Jane is going to China next year.

280. (B) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

1. Craig is hoping that Donna will be at the party. Len has invited Craig.
2. The new manager at the plastics factory wants Donna to work late. No-one likes the new manager.
3. The woman at number 35 is behaving rather strangely. Donna spoke to the woman yesterday.
4. Brenda is a friend. I went on holiday with her.
5. I told you about a person. She is at the door.
6. I bought my car from that man.
7. Frank is the man. We are going to nominate Frank for the office of treasurer.
8. That is the boy. I lent him my bicycle.
9. Sheila Brown is giving a concert at Webley Hall. I have long admired her.
10. The Earls of Euston were landowners in London. Euston Station is named after them.

281. (A, B, C, E, F) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. Dr Sales is a person don't have much confidence.
A. in whom I B. whom I C. in that I D. I
2. The new shopping mall is advertised as a place you can find anything you want to buy.
A. which B. where C. in where D. in that
3. Ann quit her job at the advertising agency, ... surprised everyone.
A. who B. that C. which D. that it
4. I have always wanted to visit Paris, ... capital of France.

5. The voters were against the candidate proposals called for higher taxes.
A. who his B. whose C. whom he had D. that his
6. Some fish is frozen, but is best.
A. fish is fresh B. fish fresh C. fresh fish D. fresh fish is caught
7. The government needs to establish more shelters to care for those have homes.
A. who don't B. who doesn't C. which don't D. which doesn't
8. The people the acrobat turn circles in the air were horrified when he missed the hands of his partner.
A. watched B. watch C. watching D. were watching
9. "Will everyone like the book?"
"No. Only people interested in anthropology."
A. are B. that is C. in whom are D. who are
10. In the movie, a teenager to pursue a singing career meets resistance from his father.
A. wanting B. wants C. wanted D. who want

282. (A, B, C, E) Viết lại đoạn văn, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ từ các câu đã cho.
Mary was woken suddenly by a strange noise. She sat up, startled. Then she froze, as she saw that the window was wide open. With a shock, she remembered that the servants had all left, and that she was all alone in the house. A floor-board creaked behind her. Turning, she saw an old woman. Suddenly, she realized who it was. It was her grandmother.

1. She had died exactly a year before.
2. She had laughed at them only that afternoon for being superstitious.
3. It seemed to come from outside her window.
4. She had been in a deep sleep.
5. Her mouth was twisted into a toothless grin.
6. She had locked it securely the night before.
7. She was dressed entirely in black.

283. (C, D) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

1. A car was stolen. It was found at the airport.
2. A simplified edition is easier to read than the original. It's shorter.
3. A disco kept people awake half the night. The disco took place at the club last weekend.
4. He has arranged a staff meeting. The meeting starts at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
5. My favourite film is Casablanca, made in 1942.

6. Her book was published last year. It became a best seller.
7. I live in Croydon, it's near London.
8. The car was in good condition and wasn't expensive.
9. Tom bought a camera. The camera has three lenses.
10. Janet wants a typewriter. The typewriter self-corrects.

284. (C, D) **Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.**

1. I'm going to the mountains for my vacation. I'm really looking forward to this.
2. You'd better rewrite this letter. You wrote it too quickly and carelessly.
3. New York is a wonderful city. I'd love to visit it one day.
4. Science fiction books are about the future and space travel. Some people love them, others hate them.
5. You recommended that book to me. It was very good.
6. The new club in Jubilee Road is very popular with young people. Everyone is talking about the new club.
7. She was wearing old and dirty clothes.
8. I bought a computer on sale and it doesn't work.

285. (E) **Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.**

1. Ms Fortune was a writer. Her body was found in the cellar.
2. Craig also wants to borrow some money from Gordon. Gordon's cycle repair business is doing very well.
3. Robin is explaining his problems to Harriet. Robin's wife has left him.
4. You were rude to that woman's husband, and she's upset now.
5. This is Mr Smith. His son Bill plays in our team.
6. Jack's car had broken down. He had to take a bus.
7. That boy's sister sits behind me at school.
8. Bill's typewriter had broken and he had to use a pencil.

286. (B, C) **Kết hợp các cặp câu sau thành một câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ.**

1. She had invited a hundred guests. I didn't know any of them.
2. Growling in the corner were two big dogs. They both looked extremely dangerous.
3. The manager called in my new colleagues. I had met one or two of them already.
4. There were several large holes in the road. Three of them had to be repaired urgently.
5. There were some vegetables left over. I was able to use a few of them in some soup for supper.

6. The lectures were attended by over two hundred students. Few of them completed the assignments set by the professor.
7. He comes from a large family. All of them now live in Australia.
8. We have many rooms in our house. Several of them have not been used for ages.
9. I have two sisters. I like them both very much.
10. I have several horses. None of them is more than two years old.

287. (A, B, C) **Thêm dấu phẩy vào câu nếu cần thiết. Đôi khi cùng một mệnh đề có thể dùng hai loại (hạn định và giải thích), nhưng với ý nghĩa khác nhau.**

1. My wife who works as a journalist is an excellent cook.
2. My daughter who works in New York is getting married soon.
3. The engagement which was announced last week came as a bit of a shock.
4. The man she's getting married to is an artist.
5. It doesn't seem to me that artists are the kind of people who can be relied on to provide an income.
6. Artists who are unproductive are not much use to anyone.
7. My daughter has been married once before which means she should know what she's doing.
8. Her previous marriage which ended in divorce was to a Spaniard.
9. Her mother and father-in-law who were always exceptionally kind were very upset when the marriage broke down.
10. The children who spoke Spanish went to live with their father after the divorce.

288. (A, B, C, G) **Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.**

1. "Is April twenty-first the day?"
 A. you'll arrive then B. when you'll arrive
 C. on that you'll arrive D. when you'll arrive on
2. Lora's marriage has been arranged by her family. She is marrying a man
 A. that she hardly knows him B. whom she hardly knows him
 C. she hardly knows D. she hardly knows him
3. That book is by a famous writer. It's about the people in Samoa for two years.
 A. that he lived B. that he lived among them
 C. where he lived among them D. among whom he lived
4. The chemistry book was a little expensive.
 A. I bought B. that I bought it
 C. I bought that D. what I bought

5. "Do you remember Mrs White, ... taught us English composition?"
A. that B. which C. who D. whom
6. "Why do you get up at 4 a.m.?"
"Because it's the only time without being interrupted."
A. when I can work on my book B. when I can work on my book then
C. I can work on my book D. at when I can work on my book
7. The problem never occurred.
A. I had expected it B. who I had expected
C. that I had expected it D. I had expected
8. "My writing has improved a lot in this class."
"Mine has, too. All the students do well in writing."
A. whom Mr Davis teaches them B. Mr Davis teaches
C. which Mr Davis teaches D. Mr Davis teaches them
9. "How did you enjoy your dinner with Mr Brown?"
"It was boring. He talked only about himself, ... almost put us to sleep."
A. which B. that C. who D. that he
10. "Excuse me, but there is something about immediately."
A. that I must speak to you B. that I must speak to you about
C. which I must speak to you D. which I must speak to you about it

289. (A, D) Giảm lược mệnh đề quan hệ trong các câu sau đây.

1. George is the man who was chosen to represent the committee at the convention.
2. All of the money that was accepted has already been released.
3. The papers that are on the table belong to Peter.
4. The man who was brought to the police station confessed to the crime.
5. The girl who is drinking coffee is Mary Allen.
6. John's wife, who is a professor, has written several papers on this subject.
7. The man who is talking to the policeman is my uncle.
8. The book that is on the top shelf is the one that I need.
9. The number of students who have been counted is quite high.
10. Leo Evans, who is a doctor, eats in this restaurant every day.

290. (A, C, D) Giải thích sự khác nhau về nghĩa giữa các cặp câu sau đây.

1. a. She decided to take the first train that stopped in Strasbourg.
b. She decided to take the first train, which stopped in Strasbourg.
2. a. The people, who hadn't seen the weather forecast, were caught unawares by the hurricane.
b. The people who hadn't seen the weather forecast were caught unawares by the hurricane.

3. a. We couldn't eat the food, which was bad.
b. We couldn't eat the food that was bad.
4. a. I was hoping to visit my cousin, who lives in New Zealand.
b. I was hoping to visit my cousin who lives in New Zealand.
5. a. They picked all the fruit that had ripened.
b. They picked all the fruit, which had ripened.

291. (A, D) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

1. That is the new doctor. He has come to live in our town.
2. That is Peter. He is the head boy of the school.
3. Someone made the arrangements. It was Karen.
4. Mr Perkins is a bit deaf. He couldn't hear the phone.
5. Our teacher lives ten miles away. She stayed at home during the bus strike.
6. Someone got everything ready. It was Kevin.
7. Someone knows all about it. It's the secretary.
8. I went to stay with the Watson family. They were friends of my mother's.
9. I lent you a book. It was written by a friend of mine. She lives in France.
10. Carol is a vegetarian. I cooked a meal for her last week. She enjoyed it.

292. (C, D) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

1. James wrote an article. The article indicated that he disliked the president.
2. Toledo is a very fine city to visit. It gets extremely hot in summer.
3. The price of petrol is going up again. It rose only last month.
4. I asked you to type some letters for me. The letters are full of careless errors.
5. I told you about a record. The record will be released next week. It has been produced by a completely new method.
6. The bus goes up Edward Avenue. It doesn't stop at the railway station.
7. The tree had died. They cut it down.
8. Crossford has only two hundred inhabitants. It's miles from anywhere.
9. St Michael's Church dates from the 14th century. It's a fine building.
10. A road leads to the farm. It isn't suitable for cars.

293. (A, B, D, E, F) Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. The severe drought occurred last summer ruined the corn crop.
A. that it B. which it C. it D. that
2. People who exercise frequently have greater physical endurance than those
A. who doesn't B. who don't C. that doesn't D. which don't

3. The missing man's family is desperately seeking anyone information about his activities.
A. having B. has C. who have D. have
4. "Have you ever met the man over there?"
A. stands B. is standing C. standing D. who he stands
5. I have three brothers, ... are businessmen.
A. that all of them B. who they are C. all of whom D. who all of them
6. "You seem so happy today."
"I am. You are looking at a person has just been accepted into a college."
A. who B. who she C. whom she D. whom
7. I had to drive to the factory to pick up my brother, ... car wouldn't start.
A. who his B. who C. who's D. whose
8. "Have you seen the place the graduation ceremony will be held?"
A. in that B. where C. is where that D. which
9. My grandfather, ... a wise man, has greatly influenced my life.
A. who is B. is C. that is D. who he is
10. *Little Women*, ... published in 1868, is my sister's favourite book.
A. is a novel B. a novel was C. a novel D. was a novel

294. (C, D) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

- This is the bank. We borrowed money from it.
- Did you borrow this book?
- You gave me a very useful present.
- This is the book. I have been looking for this book all year.
- You lent me a tent. It was damaged in a storm. You heard about the storm on the news.
- It was her dream cottage. She had always wanted one like that.
- I picked up the paper. Richard had written his address on it.
- Gail led the way to the office. It had windows on three sides.

295. (E) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ, thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần thiết.

- The doctor is with a patient. The patient's leg was broken in an accident.
- The zoo's most famous giant panda has died. Its name was Chi Chi.
- Someone's suitcase got lost. It was Colin.
- Mandy's name was missed off the list. She wasn't very pleased.
- My grandfather is the fittest person I know. His house is at the top of a steep hill.
- The choir is touring Norway next month. Its members are all over 60.

- Alderson wrote a number of books about British coal miners. He specialized in their history.
- A woman's jewels were stolen. A police officer was staying in the same hotel. The woman was interviewed by him.

296. (A, C, F) Điền vào ô trống với mệnh đề quan hệ thích hợp đã cho.

Glamis Castle, (1) about ten miles north of Dundee, is the oldest inhabited and most striking of all the castles in Scotland. The tower was built in the 14th century, but most of the present building dates from the 17th century. The castle was well-known to many kings and queens including Mary Queen of Scots and Queen Elizabeth II, (2)

The magnificent castle is also famous for its mysterious legends. There's a famous secret room (3), and there's a permanent bloodstain on the floor (4), and there's a permanent bloodstain on the floor (4), even though they are locked. There are stories of a family monster, a vampire, and half a dozen ghosts.

Among the ghosts, there is the terrifying apparition of the huge bearded Lord Crawford, (6), The Queen Mother's sister said that while she was living at Glamis, children often woke up screaming at night because they had seen a huge man with a beard. There is a room called the Hangman's Chamber, which is haunted by the ghost of a servant (7), and there is the Haunted Chamber, (8) and left to die. They had come to the castle to ask for shelter. The ghost most often seen these days is the Grey Lady, (9), There is also a ghost known as the White Lady, (10) by three different people at the same time. As one visitor said: "If you stay here, any one of these ghosts may open your bedroom door."

- A who died soon after gambling with the devil
- B where several men and women were locked up
- C which no one has been able to find
- D who visits the quiet little chapel
- E which stands in the Valley of Strathmore
- F who hanged himself there
- G who was once seen
- H which open by themselves
- I whose mother and sister were born there
- J where King Duncan was murdered

297. (A, B, C, D, E) Viết lại câu, dùng mệnh đề quan hệ.

- The postman realized I was on holiday. You sent me a parcel. The postman left it next door.

2. My friend Albert has decided to buy a motor-bike. His car was stolen last week.
3. The agreement ended six months of negotiation. It was signed yesterday.
4. I was sitting next to a boy in the exam. He told me the answers.
5. Diamond is a very hard substance. It is used for cutting.
6. She's recently bought the motorbike. She took me for a ride on it.
7. I lost my wallet last week. It was found by a workman. He was digging a hole in the street outside our house.
8. The ship hit an iceberg and sank. Warning messages had been sent to it. The ship ignored these.
9. My neighbours have three small children. The children make a lot of noise. My neighbours never apologize.
10. He set about cleaning off the dirt. It was covering the floor and walls.

16. ADVERB CLAUSES

TÓM TẮT

A. CLAUSE OF CONTRAST (Mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản)

1. Mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản thường bắt đầu bằng các từ nối như **although, though, even though, as, much as** (mặc dù) **while, whereas** (trong khi đó), hoặc **yet, however, nevertheless** (tuy nhiên).

Although he worked hard, he didn't receive any praise.

While she worked hard, she didn't achieve much.

Cold *as* it was, we went out. (Lưu ý vị trí của từ **as** trong câu)

(Mặc dù trời lạnh, chúng tôi vẫn đi chơi.)

John didn't study hard, *yet* he succeeded.

Tom rarely speaks in class. *However*, he is an intelligent pupil.

(Tom ít phát biểu trong lớp. Tuy nhiên, bạn ấy là một học sinh thông minh.)

2. Các từ nối **nevertheless, however, on the other hand, in spite of this, still** đều có nghĩa "tuy nhiên, mặc dù vậy" nhưng cách chấm câu khác với những ví dụ trên. Lưu ý cách chấm câu ở các ví dụ dưới đây.

Mary wanted it; *nevertheless*, Stephen gave it away.

Mary wanted it. *Nevertheless*, Stephen gave it away.

B. CLAUSE OF REASON (Mệnh đề chỉ lý do)

1. Mệnh đề chỉ lý do bắt đầu bằng những từ nối như **because, as, since, seeing that, now that** (bởi vì).

Tom took the train to Auckland *because* he hated flying.

(Tom đón tàu đến Auckland bởi vì anh ấy ghét đi máy bay.)

As it was getting late, we decided to come home.

Since he was late, I decided to go without him.

Seeing that I have no money, I can't buy the book.

(Vì không có tiền, tôi không thể mua cuốn sách ấy.)

Now that you're grown up, you must stop this childish behaviour.

2. Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng **because** thường được đặt sau mệnh đề chính để nhấn mạnh mệnh đề trạng từ chỉ lý do. Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng **as, since, seeing that** và **now that** thường được đặt ở đầu câu để nhấn mạnh mệnh đề chính.

3. So sánh because với because of.

I came to school late *because* it rained heavily. (*Because* + mệnh đề.)

I came to school late *because of* the heavy rain. (*Because of* + danh từ.)

He couldn't go to work *because* he was ill.

He couldn't go to work *because of* his illness.

C. CLAUSE OF TIME (Mệnh đề chỉ thời gian)

1. Mệnh đề chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng các từ nối như *when/ as (khi)*, *before (trước khi)*, *after (sau khi)*, *since (từ khi)*, *until/till (cho đến khi)*, *as soon as (ngay sau khi)*, *while (trong khi)*, *once (một khi)*, *whenever (bất cứ khi nào)*, *as long as (bao lâu)*, *just as (ngay khi)*.

When I lived in Darwin, I experienced hot weather.

After he had done his homework, he watched TV.

(*Sau khi làm bài tập xong, anh ấy xem TV.*)

I will lend you some money *whenever* you need.

He phoned me *as soon as* he came back from his holiday.

(*Anh ấy điện thoại cho tôi ngay khi anh đi nghỉ mát về.*)

2. Khi dùng mệnh đề chỉ thời gian, thì của động từ trong các mệnh đề phải phù hợp với nhau và phù hợp với nghĩa của từ nối.

Until I lived in Vietnam, I *had never known* hot weather.

(*Cho đến khi tôi sống ở Việt Nam, tôi chưa hề biết đến thời tiết nóng nực.*)

While I was walking down the street I saw Joe driving a Toyota.

(*Trong khi tôi đang đi bộ trên phố, tôi thấy Joe lái một chiếc Toyota*)

Câu thứ nhất nói đến một sự việc trong quá khứ, vì vậy động từ đều ở thì quá khứ (lived/ had known) Động từ know ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành (Past perfect) do nói đến một sự việc trước khi tôi sống ở Việt Nam. Nghĩa của từ *until* nói rõ điều này.

Câu thứ hai do nghĩa của *while* là trong khi, động từ trong mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng *while* thường ở thì tiếp diễn (continuous tense) (I was walking...).

3. Trong mệnh đề chỉ thời gian, không dùng thì tương lai.

I'll remember that day *as long as* I live. (*Không dùng as long as I'll live*)

I'll tell you about that *when* I come. (*Không dùng I'll come*)

D. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE (Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích)

1. Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích thường bắt đầu bằng các từ nối *so that*, *in order that (để mà)*, *lest (kẻo)*. Trong mệnh đề chỉ mục đích thường có Modal verb như *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *should* hoặc *will*.

She wants to stay here *so that* she *can* perfect her English.

(*Cô ấy muốn sống ở đây để cô có thể hoàn thiện vốn tiếng Anh.*)

We wore warm clothes *in order that* we *might not* get cold.

We will start early, *lest* we *should* be late.

(*Chúng tôi khởi hành sớm kẻo chúng tôi sẽ bị trễ.*)

2. So sánh với mệnh đề chỉ lý do:

He worked hard *because* he wanted to pass the exam. (*because* + lý do)

(*Anh ấy học chăm chỉ bởi vì anh muốn thi đậu.*)

He worked hard *so that* he could pass the exam. (*so that* + mục đích)

(*Anh ấy học chăm chỉ để anh có thể thi đậu.*)

She's staying here for six months *because* she wants to perfect her English.

She's staying here for six months *so that* she can perfect her English.

E. CLAUSE OF RESULT (Mệnh đề chỉ kết quả)

1. Mệnh đề chỉ kết quả thường bắt đầu bằng các từ nối *so*, *therefore*, *so ... that*, *such ... that*.

I felt hungry, *so* I ate two cakes.

(*Tôi cảm thấy đói bụng, vì vậy tôi ăn hai cái bánh.*)

He was *such* a kind person *that* everyone likes him.

(*Anh ấy là một người tốt bụng đến nỗi mọi người đều thích anh.*)

2. Trong mệnh đề *so ... that* và *such ... that*, *so* đi với tính từ, trạng từ, *few*, *much* hoặc *many*, *such* đi với danh từ.

It was *so* cold *that* we stopped playing.

It was *such* a cold day *that* we stopped playing.

There are *so few* people at the meeting *that* they decided to postpone it.

I have *so much* homework today *that* I can't play badminton.

3. So sánh với mệnh đề chỉ lý do:

I felt hungry, *so* I ate two cakes. (*so* + kết quả)

I ate two cakes *because* I felt hungry. (*because* + lý do)

(*Tôi ăn hai cái bánh bởi vì tôi cảm thấy đói bụng.*)

F. CLAUSE OF MANNER (Mệnh đề chỉ cách thức)

1. Mệnh đề chỉ cách thức thường nối với mệnh đề chính bằng liên từ *as* (như là).

We should do *as* our teacher tells us.

(Chúng ta nên làm theo lời thầy giáo dặn.)

Peter left the house *as* he had entered it.

(Peter rời nhà cũng như cách anh ta vào.)

Leave it *as* it is.

(Hãy để nguyên như thế, đừng có đụng vào.)

2. Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng *as* có thể dùng trong cấu trúc đảo ngữ.

He was a Catholic, *as* were most of his friends.

(Anh ấy là người Công giáo, cũng như hầu hết bạn bè của anh.)

He believed, *as did* all his family, that the King was their supreme lord.

3. Mệnh đề chỉ cách thức cũng thường nối với mệnh đề chính bằng *how*, *as if* hoặc *as though* (đường như thế).

The woman told me *how* the thief ran to her and grabbed her handbag.

It looks *as if/though* it's going to rain.

(Trời trông dường như sẽ sắp mưa.)

She looks *as if/though* she's going to cry.

4. Chúng ta có thể dùng thì quá khứ sau *as if/though* để nói đến một sự so sánh không có thật.

He looked at me *as if* I were mad.

(Anh ta nhìn tôi dường như thể là tôi bị điên vậy.)

You look *as if* you'd seen a ghost.

G. CLAUSE OF PLACE (Mệnh đề chỉ địa điểm)

Mệnh đề chỉ địa điểm nối với mệnh đề chính bằng *where* hoặc *wherever*

I looked *where* he pointed.

(Tôi nhìn vào chỗ anh ấy chỉ.)

He told me *where* he had seen the money.

(Anh ấy nói cho tôi nơi anh nhìn thấy số tiền đó.)

Sit *wherever* you want.

(Ngồi bất cứ chỗ nào bạn muốn.)

I will go *wherever* you go.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

298. (A, B) Chọn từ nối thích hợp cho câu.

- the jury believed in the burglar's innocence, the general public did not.
A. While B. Because C. In spite of
- I didn't understand a word, I kept smiling.
A. As B. Even though C. Because
- To lend money to friends may sometimes succeed., it often leads to disaster.
A. Though B. While C. However
- Bravely they fought, they had no chance of winning.
A. although B. as C. since
- Much I respect your point of view, I can't agree.
A. whereas B. on the other hand C. as
- I don't like the job much., the money is OK.
A. Although B. Still C. Because
- We can't come and see you this weekend, much we'd like to.
A. as B. yet C. so
- Strange it may seem, I don't like watching cricket.
A. though B. however C. still
- Arranged marriages are common in many Middle Eastern countries. In the West, ..., they are unusual.
A. on the other hand B. in spite of C. though
- The train was an hour late., I managed to get to the meeting in time.
A. While B. In spite of this C. Although
- I like spending my holidays in the mountains, ... my wife prefers the seaside.
A. while B. whereas C. A & B
- some languages have thirty or more different vowel sounds, others have five or less.
A. Because B. Since C. Whereas

299. (A, B) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

- He was a hard worker. He was not praised. (*though*)
- He worked diligently. He was not promoted. (*even though*)
- Sid was a vegetarian. He avoided eating meat. (*since*)
- It's raining again. We'll have to stay at home. (*as*)
- He had not paid his bill. His electricity was cut off. (*since*)
- Samantha lent \$1,000 to him. He was a good friend. (*because*)
- John didn't study hard. Mary studied conscientiously. (*whereas*)
- I was ill for six months. I lost my job. (*because*)

9. I was ill. I couldn't go to the football match. (*because of*)
10. He hated coffee. He accepted a cup from Mrs Jones out of politeness. (*although*)
11. I enjoyed his latest novel. I don't usually read novels. (*however*)
12. He was not the ideal person, but we gave him the job. (*although*)

300. (C) Gạch chân mệnh đề chỉ thời gian trong các câu sau.

1. While I was living in Darwin, I endured dozens of cyclones.
2. Once I lived in Darwin, I knew what a real cyclone was.
3. I'll wait here till the bus arrives.
4. Until I see that your work is finished, I won't let you out to play.
5. Whenever I see Evelyn I feel envious.
6. As long as Tamate was motivated, he continued to enjoy success.

301. (C) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. I left school. Then I went to America. (*after*)
2. He did military service. Then he went to university. (*after*)
3. You were reading a newspaper. I was writing a letter. (*while*)
4. I get older. I get more optimistic. (*as*)
5. I start work. Mary always arrives soon after that. (*just as*)
6. Don't forget to signal. You are turning right. (*when*)
7. You've passed your test. I'll let you drive my car. (*once*)
8. I've known her. We were at school together. (*since*)
9. You're not going home. You've finished that report. (*till*)
10. I left home. I began to understand how important my family was. (*not until*)

302. (C) Chọn hình thức thì thích hợp.

1. I'd like to go for a walk once the rain
A. has stopped B. stopped C. will stop
2. Once you how to ride a bike you never forget it.
A. know B. knew C. will know
3. We my parents every week since we bought the car.
A. had visited B. will C. visit
4. You five glasses of beer since you came.
A. drank B. will drink C. have drunk
5. I until the rain had stopped.
A. waited B. was waiting C. had wait
6. It will be ages until we again.
A. will meet B. are meeting C. meet
7. I'll telephone you after I

- A. had arrived B. will arrive C. arrive
8. I'll telephone you after I Jake.
A. will see B. had seen C. have seen
9. After I school, I went to America.
A. had finished B. have finished C. would finish
10. While he in Germany, he got to know a family of musicians.
A. was being B. had been C. was

303. (D) Gạch chân mệnh đề chỉ mục đích trong các câu dưới đây.

1. I'm putting it in the oven now so that it'll be ready by 7 o'clock.
2. We send them monthly reports in order that they may have full information about progress.
3. Send the letters express so that she can get it before Tuesday.
4. They held the meeting on a Saturday in order that everybody should be free to attend.

304. (B, D) Kết hợp một câu ở cột A với một câu chỉ mục đích và một câu chỉ lý do ở cột B, dùng từ nối SO THAT và BECAUSE.

A

1. Dave is driving fast
2. Louise wore a pink dress
3. Antoine has bought a computer
4. Ben has put nets on the window
5. Daisy eats green vegetables

B

- a. the mosquitoes can't come in.
- b. he can play games on it.
- c. he's late.
- d. he needs it for his work.
- e. Ann would recognize her at the airport.
- f. he'll arrive on time.
- g. she can get enough vitamins.
- h. there are so many insects.
- i. it was her favourite colour.
- j. they're good for her teeth.

305. (E) Điền vào ô trống với SO hoặc SUCH (A).

1. He spoke fast that no one could understand.
2. It was good book that I couldn't put it down.

3. It was boring film that I felt asleep.
4. It was bad weather that the flight was cancelled.
5. I was tired that I fell asleep.
6. The book was good that I couldn't put it down.
7. They've got much money that they don't know what to do with it.
8. John is kind boy that everyone likes him.
9. He was tired that he couldn't go to the meeting.
10. They were difficult exercises that I couldn't do them.

306. (A, B, E) Điền vào ô trống với **ALTHOUGH, BECAUSE, SUCH** hoặc **SO**.

1. The test was easy that all the students got a high score.
2. Daisy received a scholarship she is a good student.
3. it was raining, we went for a walk in the park.
4. It was a hot day that they cancelled their tennis game.
5. The letter was delivered it didn't have enough postage.
6. I usually play badminton in the morning I enjoy it.
7. She talked fast that I couldn't understand her.
8. it was a formal dinner party, Tom wore his blue jeans.
9. I didn't go to school yesterday I didn't feel well.
10. It was an expensive car that he couldn't afford to buy it.

307. (B, E, F, G) Chọn từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.

1. She was dismissed (*because/so*) she was lazy.
2. She was lazy (*because/so*) she was dismissed.
3. (*Since/So*) everyone is here, we can begin the meeting.
4. Everyone is here, (*since/so*) we can begin the meeting.
5. Johnny has a dentist's appointment, (*because/so*) please allow him to leave school 15 minutes early.
6. I love you (*because/so*) you understand me.
7. I didn't have time to study (*because/so*) I failed in the exam.
8. Stay (*as/where*) you are.
9. We should do the exercises (*as/so*) we have been told.
10. In Bali, you will see these ceremonies (*sine/wherever*) you go.

308. (A, B, C, E, F, G) Hoàn thành câu với từ nối trong bảng.

<i>as</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>until</i>	<i>where</i>	<i>because</i>
<i>so</i>	<i>since</i>	<i>once</i>	<i>although</i>	<i>because of</i>

1. *Crux* is the technical name given to the Southern Cross it means "cross" in Latin.

2. its cross-like shape, the Southern Cross is easy to find.
3. They travelled for many days they found the river.
4. it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
5. They've known each other they were at school.
6. They first met they were at school.
7. The water is fine you are in !
8. It was still painful I went to a doctor.
9. John didn't know he could begin the story.
10. He looked over his shoulders Jack had done.

309. (A, B, C, D, E) Nối một dòng ở cột A và một (cụm) từ trong bảng với một dòng ở cột B.

<i>although</i>	<i>whereas</i>	<i>while</i>	<i>since</i>	<i>nevertheless</i>
<i>because</i>	<i>so that</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>so</i>	<i>as soon as</i>

- | A | B |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. His house is big | a. he left. |
| 2. The play was very boring | b. he hated heights. |
| 3. I couldn't unlock the door | c. mine is small. |
| 4. He agreed to go climbing | d. I lived in India. |
| 5. He got a new alarm clock | e. they walked out. |
| 6. He hasn't written to us | f. I had the wrong key. |
| 7. Please tell me | g. she arrives. |
| 8. I experienced hot weather | h. he'd get up on time. |
| 9. The food was awful; | i. you're cooking dinner. |
| 10. I'll clean the house | j. , the wine was good. |

310. (A, B, D, E) Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. The film is very amusing. I couldn't stop laughing. (*such*).
2. Cars cause pollution but people still want them. (*although*).
3. Being the only child, I was often lonely. (*because*)
4. The driver stopped. The children could cross the road. (*so that*)
5. I couldn't stop laughing. I was very amused. (*so*)
6. Tom didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (*even though*)
7. It was a very cold day. I didn't want to go out. (*such*)
8. I told Peter to hurry. We had to reach the village before night. (*as*)
9. Mark repaired the roof. The rain wouldn't come in. (*so that*)
10. The play was disappointing. It was badly acted and too long. (*because*)

311. (A, B, C, D, E, F) Chọn từ thích hợp cho mỗi câu.

1. They left the room they had finished their exam.
A. while B. once C. before D. although
2. It was raining they cancelled the trip to the beach.
A. although B. because C. so D. when
3. he was sick, he still turned up for his guitar lesson.
A. Although B. Because C. Since D. However
4. Daisy didn't like to swim, she played on the beach with her sister.
A. When B. After C. However D. Since
5. He worked hard everything would be ready by 5 o'clock.
A. because B. so that C. when D. until
6. He was watching television the burglar alarm went off.
A. when B. because C. until D. after
7. Mary didn't like Tom, she agreed to work with him on the project.
A. Since B. However C. Although D. While
8. You look you know each other.
A. until B. yet C. as if D. while
9. She was happy a few of her friends sent her birthday cards.
A. although B. because C. when D. because
10. Don't get off a bus it is still moving.
A. whenever B. while C. until D. before
11. I haven't seen her she was a little girl.
A. since B. when C. as D. while
12. He looks almost he were drunk.
A. whenever B. because C. although D. as if

17. SENTENCE CONNECTORS

TÓM TẮT

A. HOWEVER, NEVERTHELESS, MOREOVER, THEREFORE

1. Các từ nối (Sentence connectors) như **however, nevertheless, therefore...** liên kết ý giữa hai câu. Vì vậy, dấu chấm câu trong các câu có từ nối thường theo các dạng sau:

Mệnh đề độc lập; từ nối, mệnh đề độc lập.

Mệnh đề độc lập. Từ nối, mệnh đề độc lập.

Lưu ý cách chấm câu ở những ví dụ dưới đây.

Mary wanted it; **nevertheless**, Stephen gave it away.

Mary wanted it. **Nevertheless**, Stephen gave it away.

I thought the plane would be delayed; **therefore**, I bought a book to read.

I thought the plane would be delayed. **Therefore**, I bought a book to read.

2. Đôi khi từ nối có thể nằm ở những vị trí khác nhau.

Mary was happy. **However**, Alice was very sad.

Mary was happy. Alice, **however**, was very sad.

Mary was happy. Alice was very sad, **however**.

3. **However** (tuy nhiên), dùng để liên kết hai câu có ý trái ngược nhau. Những từ nối cùng nhóm với **however** gồm: **yet, nevertheless, still, on the contrary, on the other hand, in (by) contrast, in spite of this**.

Tom is often rude; **yet** I am very fond of him.

I discovered I didn't have any cash with me. **Nevertheless**, I had my credit card.

He's treated you badly. **Still**, he's your brother and you should help him.

It doesn't seem ugly to me; **on the contrary**, I think it's rather beautiful.

It's not a very nice flat. **On the other hand**, it's cheap.

She failed the exam, but her sister, **by contrast**, did very well.

4. **Moreover** (hơn nữa), dùng để nói thêm một ý hỗ trợ. Những từ nối cùng nhóm với **moreover** gồm: **also, besides, furthermore, similarly, in addition**.

Old cars tend to use more petrol. **Also**, there is a greater risk of accidents.

I don't have time to see the film. **Besides**, it's had dreadful reviews.

5. **Therefore** (vì vậy), dùng để nói lên mối quan hệ nhân quả. Những từ nối cùng nhóm với **therefore** gồm: so, consequently, thus, as a result.

He failed the exam. So he had to do the job he didn't like.

The ship crashed into a huge iceberg; consequently it sank.

She felt tired; as a result she went to bed at once.

B. ALTERNATIVELY, OTHERWISE, INSTEAD

1. **Alternatively** (hoặc là) được dùng để nói lên một chọn lựa khác.

If the goods are faulty, we can replace them. *Alternatively*, we can give you a refund.

(Nếu hàng bị hỏng, chúng tôi sẽ thay hàng khác. Hoặc là, chúng tôi có thể trả lại tiền.)

Let's take the train. *Alternatively*, we could go by car.

2. **Otherwise** (nếu không). Sau **otherwise** có thể không dùng dấu phẩy.

You have to press the button. *Otherwise* the machine won't work.

(Anh phải ấn cái nút đó. Nếu không, máy sẽ không hoạt động.)

We must run, *otherwise* we'll be too late.

3. **Instead** (thay vào đó). Có thể được đặt đầu hoặc cuối mệnh đề.

She didn't go to Greece. *Instead*, she went to America.

(Cô ấy không đi Hy Lạp. Thay vào đó, cô ấy đi Mỹ.)

We have no coffee. Would you like tea *instead*?

C. IN OTHER WORDS, THE THING IS, FOR EXAMPLE, FOR INSTANCE, ALL IN ALL, IN SHORT

1. **In other words** (nói cách khác) dùng để giải thích điều đã nói trước đó một cách dễ hiểu hơn.

He didn't reach the required standard. *In other words*, he failed.

(Anh ấy không đạt tiêu chuẩn yêu cầu. Nói cách khác, anh ấy bị đánh hỏng.)

2. **The thing is** (vấn đề là do) dùng để giải thích bằng cách nêu lên lí do.

Our firm is doing badly. *The thing is*, there is no market for our goods.

(Công ti chúng tôi làm ăn rất tệ. Vấn đề là do không có thị trường cho các mặt hàng chúng tôi.)

I can't come on Thursday. *The thing is*, I've arranged to do something else.

3. **For example, for instance** (chẳng hạn như) dùng để nêu ví dụ.

A few mammals have characteristics of birds. *For example*, the duck-billed platypus lays eggs.

(Một vài động vật có vú có các đặc điểm của loài chim. Chẳng hạn như, con rái cá mỏ vịt đẻ trứng.)

4. **All in all, in short** (nói tóm lại) dùng để tóm tắt những ý vừa nói.

He was a kind husband, generous to friends, and considerate to other people.

All in all / In short, he was a good man.

(Anh ấy là một người chồng tốt, rộng rãi với bạn bè, và quan tâm đến người khác. Nói tóm lại, anh ấy là một người tốt.)

D. IN FACT, INDEED, ACTUALLY, AS A MATTER OF FACT

1. **In fact** dùng để nhấn mạnh thêm một ý đã nói.

I don't like him. *In fact*, I can't stand him.

(Tôi không thích anh ấy. Thực vậy, tôi không chịu được anh ta.)

2. **In fact** cũng có thể dùng để nói lên một ý trái ngược với ý trước và thường được dùng với **but**.

People think I don't like him, *but in fact*, he's a good friend.

(Người ta nghĩ tôi không thích anh ấy, nhưng thực ra, anh ấy là một người bạn tốt.)

You called him Pete. *In fact*, he is Peter.

3. **Indeed** cũng được dùng để nhấn mạnh thêm một ý đã nói.

Our results this year have been satisfactory. *Indeed*, they are the best results we have had for several years.

(Kết quả năm nay của chúng ta đáng phấn khởi. Thực vậy, đó là kết quả tốt nhất chúng ta có được trong vài năm nay.)

4. **Actually, as a matter of fact** được dùng khi người nói muốn đưa vào những chi tiết xác thực, hoặc tỏ ra không đồng ý một cách nhẹ nhàng.

I'm going to stay with someone I know in Paris. *Actually/ As a matter of fact*, he's my cousin.

[Người nói cho biết thêm người quen ở Paris là em họ của mình.]

A: I didn't like the singer very much.

B: *Actually*, I thought she was excellent.

[Người nói không đồng ý một cách nhẹ nhàng.]

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

312. (A) Chấm câu những câu dưới đây. Từ nối được in nghiêng.

- To lend money to friends may sometimes succeed *however* it often leads to disaster.
- I don't like the job much *still* the money is OK.
- Arranged marriages are common in many Middle Eastern countries in the West *on the other hand* they are unusual.
- The train was an hour late *in spite of this* I managed to get to the meeting in time.
- George studied until 3 o'clock last night *however* he is going to bed early tonight.
- The water in the lake was cold *therefore* we didn't go swimming.
- He has a cold *also* he has a cough.
- He had two loaves of bread for breakfast *besides* he drank two glasses of milk.
- You can go by plane *however* if that scares you, you can take the train.
- He worked very hard *nevertheless* he didn't get any reward.

313. (A) Chọn từ nối thích hợp.

- Tom has a good vocabulary., he pronounces well.
A. Therefore B. Besides C. However
- He is sick., he can't come.
A. Therefore B. Also C. Nevertheless
- He is already in bed., he can get up early tomorrow.
A. Thus B. Moreover C. However
- I don't have a driver's license., I won't drive.
A. Therefore B. Furthermore C. Still
- I can't come today., I'll come tomorrow.
A. As a result B. In addition C. However
- She knows how to play the piano., she can dance.
A. Consequently B. Besides C. In contrast
- I knew it was likely to rain. we decided to have a picnic.
A. However B. Therefore C. Besides
- Mary's eyes are weak;, she has to wear glasses.
A. besides B. nevertheless C. therefore
- Tom often invents stories., everyone likes him.
A. So B. Furthermore C. However
- Everything around him was blown to pieces, ... the boy escaped without a scratch.
A. yet B. also C. consequently

314. (A) Dùng những ý dưới đây để viết câu với từ nối trong ngoặc.

- my sister eats meat / my brother is a strict vegetarian (*however*)
- early computers took up whole rooms / modern computers occupy much less space (*however*)
- tennis players often behave badly without losing points / football players are immediately sent off the field (*by contrast*)
- tennis players often behave badly without losing points / they are sometimes fined for bad behaviour (*on the other hand*)
- I have never heard John say anything bad about you / he's always spoken well of you (*on the contrary*)
- working from home is comfortable / travelling every day to an office is tiring (*by contrast*)

315. (A) Viết lại câu với những từ trong ngoặc.

- The ship suffered damage in a storm, so it had to go into port for repairs. (*consequently*)
- I'll be out all day, so I'll leave your lunch in the oven. (*therefore*)
- He got US dollars for the journey. He also got travellers' cheques. (*in addition*)
- We shall provide hotel accommodation. We shall also cover travel expenses. (*in addition*)
- He is too old, and he isn't interested in the job. (*besides*)
- I didn't support his view. I disagree strongly. (*on the contrary*)

316. (B) Chọn từ nối thích hợp.

- My parents lent me the money., I couldn't have afforded the trip.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead
- We must improve our profits., we could go bankrupt.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead
- Cars will not run on petrol in future., they will run on hydrogen.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead
- We no longer post letters to Hong Kong., we send faxes.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead
- You can go by air., you can drive there.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead
- We will make travel arrangements for you., you can organize your own transport.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead
- Remember to take your passport., you won't be allowed to cross the border.

8. You must hurry., you'll miss the train.
A. Alternatively B. Otherwise C. Instead

317. (A, B) Chọn từ nối thích hợp.

1. Cars have become much more complicated., mechanics need more training than in the past.
A. However B. Therefore C. On the other hand
2. Daisy broke her leg in two places., she had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.
A. Nevertheless B. Otherwise C. Consequently
3. Tom works hard at everything he does. His brother, ..., seldom puts out much effort.
A. Therefore B. In addition C. On the other hand
4. I have to eat breakfast in the morning., I will get hungry before my lunch break.
A. However B. Otherwise C. Consequently
5. He talked to Anna throughout the evening. nothing he said changed her opinion.
A. yet B. otherwise C. indeed
6. I like to keep the windows open at night. My brother, ..., prefers a warm bedroom with all the windows tightly shut.
A. nevertheless B. consequently C. on the other hand
7. The Arabian camel has one hump. The Bactrian camel, ..., has two humps.
A. however B. therefore C. nevertheless
8. A fire must have a steady available supply of oxygen., it will stop burning.
A. Consequently B. Otherwise C. In addition
9. Mr Brown has had years of experience dealing with student problems., he is sometimes confronted by a problem that he can not handle by himself.
A. Therefore B. Furthermore C. Nevertheless
10. The professor told me that I was doing well, ... my final grade was awful.
A. yet B. therefore C. instead
11. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn antelope, ..., can run within minutes of birth.
A. otherwise B. nevertheless C. however
12. You must lend me the money for the trip., I won't be able to go.
A. Therefore B. Otherwise C. Furthermore

318. (A, B, C) Chọn A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu.

1. At Halloween, children dress up in witches' hats or goblin suits. In contrast,
A. Thanksgiving is a traditional holiday.
B. Thanksgiving is celebrated in November.
C. families dress more formally for Thanksgiving.
D. children enjoy Thanksgiving.
2. I'm worried about Mary. The thing is,
A. she hates her school. B. she likes her school.
C. I'm not very pleased with her. D. I don't like her much.
3. He is "allergic" to work. In other words,
A. he is too tired to work. B. he is a lazy boy.
C. I don't want him to work. D. he doesn't want me to work.
4. Typewriters are no longer used. Instead,
A. they are thrown away.
B. they have served us for quite a long time.
C. our writing has been improved.
D. most writing is done on word processor.
5. The books we borrowed are overdue. We therefore
A. should return them immediately. B. can keep them till next week.
C. borrowed them for too long. D. can't finish reading them.
6. The temperature in Saudi Arabia can reach 50°C; therefore,
A. a lot of business is done early in the day.
B. it is very cold at night.
C. it has high temperature.
D. the temperature in Iran is also hot.
7. Tom will have to work harder. Otherwise,
A. he is a lazy boy. B. he'll fail.
C. his brother is hard-working. D. he hasn't worked hard enough.
8. New technology can lead to a loss of job. For example,
A. it can make us lose our jobs.
B. we can't work efficiently.
C. a lot of jobs have disappeared through the use of computers.
D. we will have to find new jobs.

319. (A, B, C) Viết 3 câu với những ý cho sẵn. Chọn từ nối trong ngoặc.

1. Research on anti-viral drugs is making good progress.
a. We expect there will be a cure for many deadly diseases.
b. There have been a lot of achievements in this field.
c. There is little progress in research on cancer.

(Use: In contrast, Therefore, In other words)

2. The expedition hoped to climb the mountain by August.
 a. Bad weather could be a hindrance.
 b. September storms would make it impossible to climb to the top.
 c. They had to postpone the expedition until the next year.

(Use: *Alternatively, Otherwise, However*)

3. Cold weather is moving in from the North.
 a. Temperatures are likely to fall.
 b. Temperatures are still at 24 to 27°C for the next 24 hours.
 c. There'll be a lot of rain.

(Use: *Consequently, However, In addition*)

4. I didn't have time to study.
 a. I failed in the exam.
 b. I managed to pass the exam.
 c. I would pass the exam.

(Use: *Otherwise, As a result, Still*)

5. We were young and inexperienced.
 a. We were well-qualified for the work.
 b. We made a lot of mistakes.
 c. We have done this kind of work for only two months.

(Use: *Therefore, On the other hand, The thing is*)

6. He was rude to her and treated her badly.
 a. He was a bad guy.
 b. She ran away from him.
 c. Other people loved her very much.

(Use: *By contrast, In short, Therefore*)

320. (D) Sắp xếp các ý để viết thành câu với IN FACT hoặc BUT IN FACT.

Dynamo are the best team in the country. Dynamo are a very good team.
Dynamo are a very good team. In fact, they are the best team in the country.

- We thought we might arrive even earlier. We expected to reach our destination by midday.
- It rained all day. The weatherman had promised sunny weather.
- Linda was blamed for the accident. It wasn't her fault at all.
- His book did not sell well. The publishers considered dropping it from their list.
- We shall have to work with each other. We don't get on well.

321. (D) Kết hợp một dòng ở cột A với một dòng ở cột B, dùng từ nối INDEED hoặc BUT IN FACT. Chú ý dùng dấu chấm câu thích hợp.

A

- The disease is serious
- Muller has developed a vaccine for it
- At first Muller claimed to have found a cure
- Cases of the disease will increase throughout the 1990s
- Webb is a fine athlete

B

- he is the best athlete in these games
- his work gives some cause for hope
- further research showed such claims were exaggerated
- it is fatal in over 60% of cases
- it may become a world health problem in the 21st century

322. (A, C, D) Điền vào ô trống với từ nối trong bảng.

<i>in fact</i>	<i>although</i>	<i>moreover</i>	<i>on the other hand</i>
<i>besides</i>	<i>however</i>	<i>for example</i>	<i>as so</i>

Many people predict that education will change greatly over the next fifty years. First of all, students will be able to study at home by using a computer which will teach them anything they want to know. (1), the computer will keep them in touch with their teachers, and reward them when they do well. (2), when a student does well in a test, the computer will show half an hour of the student's favourite rock group as a reward. (3) learning at home, every student will also take part in sports in the local sports centre.

4), these are not the only kinds of changes which will take place. Education will continue for as long as the student wishes to learn. (5) there will be fewer jobs in the future, there will be a greater need for highly qualified experts. (6) everyone will be encouraged to study for as long as possible. (7), the actual subjects students will study in the future will be very different, and things which only university students study today will be easy subjects for seven-year-olds. Finally, some features of education (8) we know it today will remain the same. (9), there will still be exams, unfortunately. And there will be students who have to be punished by the computer.

18. INVERSIONS

TÓM TẮT

Đảo ngữ là hình thức đặt động từ trước chủ ngữ trong câu. Ngoài cách dùng thông thường trong các loại câu hỏi, chúng ta vẫn thường gặp một số trường hợp đảo ngữ sau đây dùng để nhấn mạnh.

A. NEVER, RARELY, SELDOM, LITTLE; UNDER, AT, IN, ON

Những từ được đặt đầu câu dùng trong đảo ngữ có nghĩa phủ định là: **Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little**, và các cụm từ bắt đầu bằng giới từ **Under, At, In, On**.

Rarely has the economic situation been worse.

(Hiếm khi nào tình hình kinh tế lại tệ hơn thế này.)

Never before had the race been won by a European athlete.

Seldom have I stayed in a worse hotel.

(Ít khi nào tôi lại ở trong một khách sạn tệ hơn thế này.)

Little did she think that I knew all about her.

Under no circumstances can we accept cheques.

At no time was Tom aware of what was happening.

(Không bao giờ Tom ý thức được điều gì đang xảy ra.)

In no way can Mr Brown be held responsible.

On no account are visitors allowed to smoke in the museum.

(Không bao giờ khách tham quan được hút thuốc trong viện bảo tàng.)

B. NOT ONLY... BUT ALSO, ONLY..., NOT...

1. Cấu trúc với **Not only... but also** (không những ... mà còn) và **Not** + danh từ hoặc trạng từ chỉ thời gian.

Not only is she intelligent but she is also kind.

(Không những cô ấy thông minh mà còn tốt bụng nữa.)

Not only did we lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.

Not until Ann spoke to the doctor did she understand how serious her illness was.

(Mãi đến khi Ann nói chuyện với bác sĩ thì cô mới hiểu căn bệnh của cô nguy hiểm đến chừng nào.)

2. Cấu trúc với **Only...** (Chỉ...)

Only after a year did I begin to see the results of my work.

(Chỉ sau một năm tôi mới bắt đầu nhận thấy kết quả công việc của mình.)

Only in a few countries does the whole population enjoy a reasonable standard of living.

Only by working harder will you pass your final exam.

(Chỉ bằng cách học hành chăm chỉ, bạn mới thi đậu kì thi tốt nghiệp.)

Only then did I realize that I had lost my keys.

Only if we operate immediately can/will/do we save your eyesight.

(Chỉ nếu chúng tôi giải phẫu ngay lập tức, chúng tôi mới cứu được thị lực của anh.)

Only when I have free time do I watch TV.

C. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN LƯỢC BỎ 'IF'

If anyone asks me, please tell them I will be away for a few days.

Should anyone ask me, please tell them I will be away for a few days.

(Nếu có ai hỏi tôi, xin bảo họ tôi sẽ đi vắng một vài ngày.)

If it weren't for special glass, advanced technology could not operate.

Were it not for special glass, advanced technology could not operate.

(Nếu không có loại kính đặc biệt, công nghệ tiên tiến không thể nào hoạt động được.)

If I had known what was going to happen, I would never have left him alone.

Had I known what was going to happen, I would never have left him alone.

(Nếu tôi biết điều gì sẽ xảy ra, tôi đã không bao giờ để anh ấy một mình.)

D. HARDLY, SCARCELY, BARELY ... WHEN; NO SOONER ... THAN

Hardly had I arrived home when I had a new problem to cope with.

(Tôi vừa về đến nhà thì phải giải quyết một khó khăn mới.)

Scarcely had we started lunch when the doorbell rang.

No sooner had she handed in her paper than she realized her careless mistakes.

(Cô ấy vừa nộp bài thi xong thì cô mới nhận ra những lỗi làm bất cẩn.)

Barely had he gone out of the house when his boss telephoned.

E. SO .. THAT, SUCH .. THAT

So hot was the day that we had to stay indoors.

(Ngày hôm đó trời nóng đến nỗi mà chúng tôi đã phải ở nhà.)

So vast were the natural resources that it seemed they could never be used up.

(Thoạt đầu, tài nguyên thiên nhiên quá phong phú đến nỗi dường như chúng không bao giờ cạn kiệt.)

Such was his hunger that he couldn't go on learning.

(Anh ta đói bụng đến nỗi không thể nào tiếp tục học được.)

F. NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP KHÁC:

1. Cụm trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn đặt ở đầu câu.

On the stairs was sitting a small girl.

(Ngay trên bậc thang một cô gái nhỏ đang ngồi.)

Round the corner came a milk-van.

2. Liên từ as mở đầu cho mệnh đề sau.

She travelled a great deal, as did most of her friends.

(Cô ấy du lịch nhiều, cũng như hầu hết các bạn bè của cô.)

3. Liên từ Neither, Nor và So.

I don't like him. - Nor/Neither do I.

(Tôi không thích anh ấy. - Tôi cũng không thích.)

My mother is ill this week. - So is my mother.

(Tuần này mẹ tôi bị đau. - Mẹ tôi cũng vậy.)

4. Cấu trúc với Here và There đặt ở đầu câu.

Here comes Freddy!

There goes the teacher!

There's a man at the door.

5. Động từ say, ask ... trong mệnh đề giới thiệu của lời nói trực tiếp. Lưu ý rằng đảo ngữ không được dùng nếu chủ ngữ là một đại từ.

"What do you mean?" asked Henry.

"What do you mean?" he asked.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

323. (A) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng NEVER.

1. She had never been so happy before.
2. I have never heard such nonsense!
3. I have never seen such a mess in my life.
4. Our profits this year are higher than they have ever been.
5. She would never again trust her own judgement when buying antiques.
6. The firm had never before laid on such a sumptuous celebration.
7. I've never come across such a horrifying film.
8. I have never been so moved by a Shakespeare production.
9. I never for one moment thought the consequences would be so far-reaching.
10. I had never tasted such a wonderful combination of flavours before.

324. (A) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng RARELY, SELDOM hoặc LITTLE.

1. One rarely finds good service these days.
2. She has rarely travelled more than fifty miles from her village.
3. It is very unusual for a military campaign to have been fought with so little loss of life.
4. It is unusual for the interior of the island to be visited by tourists.
5. Public borrowing has seldom been so high.
6. They had seldom participated in such a fascinating ceremony.
7. They little suspected that the musical was going to be a runaway success.
8. The embassy staff little realized that Ted was a secret agent.
9. She didn't realize what would happen to her next.
10. I didn't think that one day I'd be appearing in films rather than just watching them.

325. (A) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng IN, AT, UNDER hoặc ON.

1. Keith certainly can't be held responsible for the accident.
2. The children themselves are not in any way to blame for the disaster.
3. The existence of extraterrestrial is not confirmed by the report.
4. I was never shown how to operate the machinery.
5. He never suspected that she was a witch.
6. There has never been a time when the English language was not in a state of change.
7. Miss Weaver will not be offered the job under any circumstances.
8. You should not send money to us by post under any circumstances.
9. We can't exchange tickets in any circumstances.

10. I won't go all that way to visit him again on any account!
11. You must on no account lift heavy weights like that again.
12. This window must not be unlocked without prior permission.

326. (B) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng NOT...

1. He is my friend as well as yours.
2. He booked tickets for the afternoon performance and the evening performance as well.
3. Burglars stole a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, and left the flat in an awful mess.
4. Tony was not only late, but he had left all his books behind.
5. You will enhance your posture and improve your acting ability on this course.
6. It isn't worth considering his suggestion for a moment.
7. She didn't shed a tear when the story ended in tragedy.
8. The manager not once offered us an apology.
9. She made no sound as she crept upstairs.
10. He only thought about having a holiday abroad after he retired.

327. (B) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng ONLY...

1. I only realized how dangerous the situation had been when I got home.
2. It wasn't until last week that the Agriculture Minister admitted defeat.
3. I understood *Hamlet* only after seeing it on the stage.
4. They didn't get round to business until they had finished eating.
5. They had to wait for twelve hours before their flight left.
6. I didn't realize who he was until later.
7. The door could not be opened without using force.
8. I won't agree until Tom's apologized.
9. To get the 40% discount, you must buy all twelve books at the same time.
10. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day.

328. (C) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng SHOULD.

1. If the government were forced into another election, it would be the favourite to win.
2. If you should wish to make an appointment to see Dr Simons, she is available between 9.00 and 11.00.
3. If you should have further problems with your printer, contact your dealer for advice.
4. If you should decide to accept the post, you will be expected to start work on 1st April.

5. If we hear any further news, we will be in touch immediately.
6. If you wish to take advantage of the offer, kindly tick the box on your order form.
7. If the film should be a box-office success, they may be a sequel.
8. If you should change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.

329. (C) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng WERE hoặc HAD.

1. If the chemicals were to leak, a large area of the sea would be contaminated.
2. If Germany were to beat Romania, they would face Italy in the final.
3. If Mr Morgan were still head teacher, he would not permit such bad behaviour.
4. If you had given it in on time, you would have got a high mark.
5. If she had become a lawyer, as her parents wished, she would have earned a large salary.
6. If anything had gone wrong with my plan, I would have been held responsible.
7. If it hadn't been for Henry, I might not have met you.
8. The coast guards could have saved the vessels if they had been notified.
9. If only they had confirmed by phone, the airline could have warned them.
10. If his solicitor hadn't advised him, he would have made a serious mistake.

330. (D) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng NO SOONER hoặc BARELY.

1. We stepped outside the front door, and it began to rain.
2. We'd only just started the performance when there was a loud explosion.
3. As soon as she closed her eyes, she fell asleep.
4. Just as he had recovered from gastric flu, he went down with bronchitis.
5. I had no sooner gone to bed than someone rang my doorbell.
6. When Trevor planted the tree, it died.
7. Judith started asking me questions as soon as I had stepped through the door.
8. She just had time to put up her umbrella before the rain came down in torrents.
9. The telephone started ringing just after he had left the office.
10. He had only just walked into the house when the telephone rang.

331. (D) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng SCARCELY hoặc HARDLY.

1. Karen finished reading *Bleak House*, and started reading *The Pickwick Papers*.

2. The plane had only just taken off when smoke began to appear in the cabin.
3. Just as she put the phone down, it rang again.
4. I had just begun my solo when there was a noise of breaking glass off-stage.
5. As soon as we had finished dinner, the thunderstorm broke.
6. He had just started driving his new car when he had an accident.
7. As soon as they arrived on the beach, it started to rain.
8. He had hardly entered the house when the police arrested him.
9. I had only just watered the garden when it began to rain.

332. (E) Viết lại câu với hình thức đảo ngữ, dùng SO hoặc SUCH.

1. The child was so afraid that he hid behind the sofa.
2. It was such an appalling sight that we reeled back in horror.
3. He was so surprised to be addressed by the Queen that he didn't answer at once.
4. Julia wanted so much to move away from Newtown that she sold her house for much less than it was worth.
5. He was so disgusted at her behaviour that he severed all contact with her.
6. He was so furious that he threw the book across the room.
7. People were so ignorant of the disease at the time that sufferers were simply told to go to bed and rest.

333. (F) Viết lại câu, dùng hình thức đảo ngữ để nhấn mạnh.

1. A line of police officers was behind the protesters.
2. After forty years, the restaurant is still there and the man who first ran it is there, too.
3. A small stream ran at the end of the village.
4. The bus came round the corner of the street.
5. A white pillar was in front of the visitors.
6. She loved staying in the cottage and her friends loved it, too.
7. The Parthenon stands on top of the Acropolis.
8. The European Union is in economic difficulties, together with America and Japan.

334. (A, B) Hoàn thành câu với những từ thích hợp.

1. Never so many people working so hard.
2. In no way such a discreet man betray our secrets.
3. On no account be revealed to our competitors.
4. Only in Britain the notion of a gentleman's agreement be understood.
5. Not only the piano brilliantly but she also sings well.
6. Never in my life so humiliated!

7. Under no circumstances the fire doors be locked.
8. Not once during her entire life in trouble with the law.
9. Not only rather naive but he also seems to be very sensitive.
10. Seldom any assistance or advice.

335. (A, B, D, E) Hoàn thành câu với những từ thích hợp.

1. Little that she would win the competition.
2. Rarely about their bad working conditions.
3. Scarcely opened the letter when the phone started ringing.
4. No sooner the phone than I heard a knock at the door.
5. At no time about it outside this office.
6. So difficult the work that I was unable to finish it.
7. Not until everyone finished allowed to leave the room.
8. Not only his job, but his son also ran away from home.
9. Only after the police able to catch the thieves.
10. No sooner our picnic than it started to rain.

19. PHRASAL VERBS

TÓM TẮT

Cụm động từ (Phrasal Verbs) được dùng với một nghĩa đặc biệt, gồm có một động từ và một giới từ. Ví dụ: put off có nghĩa "hoãn lại". Đôi khi cụm động từ cũng được kết hợp bởi ba từ (một động từ, một phân từ và một giới từ). Ví dụ: put up with có nghĩa "chịu đựng". Cụm động từ cũng được gọi là động từ hai chữ hoặc động từ ba chữ.

Dưới đây là những cụm động từ thường gặp với nghĩa phổ thông và được liệt kê theo thứ tự A, B, C để giúp học sinh dễ dàng trong khi tra cứu. Những cụm động từ này cũng được dùng ở tất cả bài tập trong phần này với nghĩa tiếng Việt đã cho.

1. accuse of: tố cáo
The woman *accused* the boy of breaking her radio.
2. apply for: nộp đơn xin việc
My brother is thinking of *applying* for a job in the city bank.
3. back out from/of: không tiến hành nữa
If you *back out from/of* your contract, you will have to pay money to the company.
4. belong to: thuộc về
The blue coat *belongs* to Mary.
5. blame for: quy trách nhiệm
They *blamed* George for the failure of the discussion.
6. blow up: phá hủy
The soldiers *blew up* the enemy bridge.
7. break down: (máy) hư, hỏng
His car *broke down* on the way to the airport.
8. break out: bùng nổ, bùng phát
A fire *broke out* in the hospital last night.
9. break up: (trường học) nghỉ lễ
When does your school *break up*?
10. bring in: đưa ra, giới thiệu
They *bring in* a new law about wearing seat belts in cars.

11. bring up: nuôi nấng
My aunt *brought up* four children.
12. burst out: bật (khóc, cười)
Everyone suddenly *burst out* laughing.
13. call off: hủy bỏ
They'll have to *call off* the match as it's going to rain.
14. call on: viếng thăm
We'd better *call on* his father next Saturday.
15. call up: điện thoại
Please *call me up* tomorrow morning.
16. carry on: tiếp tục, tiến hành
The baker has *carried on* business here for many years.
17. catch on: hiểu
Would you mind repeating that? I didn't quite *catch on*.
18. catch up with: theo kịp
He spent six months *catching up with* his studies.
19. check in: đăng kí lúc đến
Has Mr Brown *checked in* at the hotel yet?
20. check out: lập thủ tục rời khỏi
Has Mr Brown *checked out* yet?
21. cheer up: làm ai đó vui hơn
You need a holiday to *cheer you up*.
22. come about: xảy ra
How did the accident *come about*?
23. come across: tình cờ gặp
I *came across* this old picture in the back of the drawer.
24. come along: nhanh lên
Come along, children, or we'll be late.
25. come into: thừa hưởng
Tom *came into* a fortune when his father died.
26. come out: trở nên rõ ràng
The meaning of the passage *comes out* as you read further.
27. come over: ghé thăm
Why don't you *come over* to our house one evening?

28. come round: *ghé thăm, tỉnh lại*
Why don't you *come round* and see us next Saturday?
The girl fainted, but she *came round* when we threw some water on her face.
29. come up: *xảy ra, xuất hiện*
I'll let you know if anything *comes up*.
30. come up against: *đương đầu, gặp phải*
Sorry to be late, but we *came up against* some unexpected delays.
31. come up to: *đáp ứng được*
The play *came up to* our expectations.
32. come up with: *nghĩ ra, đề nghị*
I hope you can *come up with* a better plan than this.
33. cope with: *giải quyết*
I can't *cope with* such a pile of work today.
34. count on: *tin, dựa vào*
You can always *count on* Tom, he'll never fail you.
35. cut back/down on: *giảm bớt*
The doctor advised Peter to *cut back/down on* smoking.
36. die out: *biến mất*
That style of music *died out* ten years ago.
37. do with: *cần có*
I could *do with* a cup of coffee.
38. do without: *không cần*
If there's no sugar, we'll have to *do without*.
39. draw up: *đứng lại*
The driver *drew* the bus *up* just in time to avoid hitting the child.
40. dream of: *mơ đến*
Many people *dream of* living on an island in the Pacific Ocean.
41. dress up: *ăn mặc sang trọng*
Are you going to *dress up* for the party or is it informal?
42. drop in: *ghé thăm*
Drop in on us any time you're in town.
43. fall for: *say mê*
The whole family *fell for* the new house as soon as they saw it.
44. fall out: *cãi nhau*

- Jim and Mary *fall out* every few weeks, but their quarrels never last.
45. fall through: *thất bại*
The plan *fell through* when it proved too costly.
46. fill in: *điền thông tin*
Some people find it difficult to *fill in* a form.
47. get by: *sống qua*
We can't *get by* on such a small income.
48. get down: *làm thất vọng*
This difficult situation is *getting me down*.
49. get off: *(tàu, máy bay...) bước xuống*
Excuse me, I have to *get off* at the next stop.
50. get on: *(tàu, máy bay...) bước lên*
Did the man *get on* at the last stop?
51. get on with: *sống hòa thuận*
Does she *get on with* your aunt?
52. get over: *vượt qua*
It took him one month to *get over* his operation.
53. get up: *thức dậy*
My father is used to *getting up* early in the morning.
54. give up: *từ bỏ*
The doctor told Jim to *give up* sweets to lose weight.
55. go about: *bắt đầu*
I want to make a dress, but I don't know how to *go about* it.
56. go down with: *mắc bệnh*
Our holiday was fine until Tom *went down with* a bad cold.
57. go off: *(chuông) reo, (súng) nổ, (sữa) bị chua*
I'm sorry I'm late because my alarm clock didn't *go off*.
A gun *goes off* every day to mark exactly one o'clock.
Don't drink the milk, it's *gone off*.
58. go on: *tiếp tục*
We can't *go on* any further, the fall of snow has blocked the road.
59. go out: *đèn tắt*
Yesterday the lights *went out* when I was reading a book.
60. go over: *kiểm tra*

- We went over the house thoroughly before buying it.
61. grow up: *lớn lên*
Susan wants to be a doctor when she *grows up*.
 62. hang on: *chờ máy điện thoại*
I'm afraid the line is busy, would you like to *hang on*?
 63. hang up: *gác máy điện thoại*
Don't *hang up*, I haven't finished talking to you.
 64. have out: *giải quyết thấu đáo*
After our argument, I called her brother to *have it out* with him.
 65. hear from: *nhận tin*
We were worried when we didn't *hear from* her for three weeks.
 66. hold up: *làm chậm trễ*
We were *held up* on the road by a traffic accident.
 67. jot down: *ghi nhanh*
I must *jot down* this phone number in case I forget it.
 68. keep off: *(kiêng cử) không ăn, uống*
The doctor advised Tom to *keep off* fattening foods.
 69. keep on: *tiếp tục*
If you fail the exam, you should try to *keep on* until you pass.
 70. knock down: *làm ngã nhào, phá hủy*
Jim was *knocked down* by the bus and seriously hurt.
It's a pity that old theatre has to be *knocked down*.
 71. lay off: *cho nghỉ việc*
Five hundred men were *laid off* work when the factory closed.
 72. leave out: *bỏ sót, bỏ quên*
I *left the* washing out in the rain all night.
 73. let down: *làm thất vọng*
We should never *let* our friends down.
 74. let on: *tiết lộ bí mật*
Don't *let on* about the meeting. I want it kept private.
 75. live on: *sống dựa vào*
Animals with long necks *live on* the leaves of tall trees.
 76. live up to: *đáp ứng được*
Children will always *live up to* your expectations of them.

77. look after: *chăm sóc*
Who will *look after* the children while you go out to work?
78. look down on: *coi thường*
The whole school *looks down on* such behaviour.
79. look for: *tìm kiếm*
I'm *looking for* a suitable hotel. Can you suggest one?
80. look forward to: *mong đợi*
I'm *looking forward to* meeting you again.
81. look into: *điều tra*
The police are *looking into* the disappearance of an old man.
82. look up: *tra (từ điển)*
If you don't know the meaning of a word, *look it up* in a dictionary.
83. look up to: *kính trọng*
Every child needs someone to *look up to* and copy.
84. make for: *đi nhanh về hướng*
After the concert, the crowd *made for* the nearest door.
85. make out: *hiểu được, nhìn thấy*
I can't *make out* the meaning of this poem.
You can *make out* the farm in the distance.
86. make up: *bịa ra, trộn*
He *made up* a story to explain his coming home so late.
My grandmother used to *make up* her own medicines.
87. object to: *phản đối*
I *object to* being blamed for something I haven't done.
88. operate on: *giải phẫu*
This famous doctor has *operated on* many important people.
89. pass out: *ngất xỉu*
When the woman heard the news, she *passed out* with the shock.
90. patch up: *hòa thuận trở lại*
Have Jim and Mary *patched up* their quarrel yet?
91. pay off: *chi trả (số tiền lớn)*
One hundred workers will be *paid off* when the factory closes.
92. pay out: *chi trả (số tiền nhỏ)*
The bank *pays out* interest on its savings account every six months.

93. pick up: *đón bằng xe*
Don't stand at the road side hoping to be *picked up* by motorists.
94. pull down: *phá bỏ*
The old houses were *pulled down* to build an amusement centre.
95. pull off: *thành công*
After driving tests eight times, John at last *pulled it off*.
96. put aside: *để dành*
Would you like us to *put* the rest of the wool *aside* for you?
97. put by: *để dành tiền*
I have a little money *put by* for a rainy day.
98. put forward: *đề nghị*
We have *put forward* a better system for preventing a world war.
99. put in for: *tham gia*
Have you *put yourself in for* the competition?
100. put off: *hoãn lại*
Tonight's concert will be *put off* until next week.
101. put on: *mở thiết bị điện hoạt động, lên cân*
Please *put* the light *on*, it's getting dark.
I can't wear this dress because I have *put on* a lot of weight.
102. put through to: *nối dây điện thoại để liên lạc*
Can you *put me through to* this number?
103. put up: *xây dựng*
A new college will be *put up* in the centre of the city.
104. put up with: *chịu đựng*
I can't *put up with* her another day, she never stops complaining.
105. run across/into: *tình cờ gặp*
I *ran across/into* an old friend when I was going shopping yesterday.
106. run out of: *cạn, hết*
I've *run out of* coffee, will you have tea?
107. see into: *xem xét để giải quyết*
When are you going to *see into* the customers' complaints?
108. see to: *chăm lo, phụ trách*
Excuse me, I must go and *see to* the dinner.
109. see through: *nhận ra được*

- He's a poor liar; anyone can *see through* him.
110. sell out: *bán hết*
I'm sorry, all the coffee is *sold out*.
111. send for: *cho mời đến*
Leave this house now, or I will *send for* the police.
112. set off/out: *khởi hành*
He *set off/out* for work an hour ago.
113. set up: *thành lập*
We need a lot of money to *set up* a school for gifted children.
114. settle down: *ổn định cuộc sống*
How long did it take you to *settle down* in this city?
115. show up: *đến*
Three hundred people *showed up* for the meeting.
116. sort out: *sắp xếp, lựa chọn*
I'm *sorting out* suitable clothes to take on holiday.
117. stand by: *ủng hộ*
We'll *stand by* you in spite of difficulties.
118. stand for: *thay thế cho*
The letters UN *stand for* United Nations.
119. stand out: *nổi bật*
I don't like to *stand out* in a crowd.
120. take after: *(tính cách, diện mạo) giống*
The boy *takes after* his grandfather.
121. take off: *(máy bay) cất cánh, (áo quần, giày, mũ) cởi*
It's exciting to feel the plane *taking off*.
I can't *take off* my boots off, they're so tight.
122. take on: *thuê, mướn*
The factory has to *take on* 1,000 workers to complete the plan.
123. take over: *đảm nhận trách nhiệm*
My sister is old enough to *take over* some of the cooking.
124. take to: *thích*
Jane *took to* music as soon as she learned about it.
125. take up: *bắt đầu tham gia, chiếm chỗ*
When did Jim *take up* running in competitions?

The bed *takes up* too much space in the room.

126. think over: *suy nghĩ cẩn thận*

I've *thought* the plan *over* and decided not to join it after all.

127. touch down: (*máy bay, tàu thủy*) hạ cánh, cập bến

In spite of the damaged wheel, the plane *touched down* safely.

128. turn down: *bác bỏ, không chấp nhận*

Why was she *turned down* for the job?

129. turn into: *trở thành*

Jane is *turning into* a skilled musician.

130. turn off: (*thiết bị*) tắt

Please *turn off* all the lights as you leave the room.

131. turn on: (*thiết bị*) mở

Please *turn on* the light for me, it's getting dark.

132. turn up: *đến*

Daisy invited fifty people to her party, but only twenty *turned up*.

133. wear out: *mòn, cũ*

This is the third pair of shoes that you've *worn out* this year.

BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG

336. Hoàn thành câu với dạng đúng của COME hoặc GET và từ trong ngoặc.

1. Don't stay indoors all day. for a walk. (*out*)
2. the bus at the town hall. (*off*)
3. children, or you'll be late for school. (*along*)
4. He a lot of trouble for breaking the chair. (*into*)
5. She hurt her shoulder when she her bicycle. (*off*)
6. It took her two months to the operation. (*over*)
7. I Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland. (*from*)
8. He's still in bed. Why hasn't he yet? (*up*)
9. The water in the river only to our knees. (*up*)
10. How do you with your neighbours? (*on*)

337. Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. He drives so quickly that I am afraid that one day he will someone crossing the street.
A. crash down B. knock down C. turn over D. run across
2. Hello. Is that 956782? Please put me to the manager.
A. across B. up C. over D. through
3. The three friends all for the same job.
A. requested B. intended C. applied D. referred
4. I don't think he will ever get the shock of his father's death.
A. over B. through C. by D. off
5. The company is aiming to push its share of car sales to 25% over the next two years.
A. on B. up C. out D. through
6. The child hurt himself badly when he fell the bedroom window.
A. out from B. out of C. down D. over
7. Don't worry about trying to catch the last train home, as we can easily you up for the night.
A. take B. set C. put D. keep
8. I am late because my alarm clock didn't this morning.
A. come on B. ring out C. go off D. turn on
9. He's such a naughty child; it's amazing what his mother lets him away with.
A. go B. make C. do D. get
10. The factory paid nearly a million pounds to their employees injured in the explosion.
A. out B. in C. off D. back
11. My daughter often to see me at least once a week.

- A. calls up B. drops in C. goes up D. comes on
12. I think he is unwell; he was complaining a headache this morning.
A. of B. at C. from D. against
13. I saw a thief take Tom's wallet so I ran him, but I couldn't catch him.
A. into B. over C. near D. after
14. If it's raining tomorrow, we shall have to put the match till Sunday.
A. off B. away C. in D. on
15. There was a big hole in the road which the traffic.
A. kept down B. held up C. stood back D. sent back
16. She applied for training as a pilot, but they turned her because of her poor eyesight.
A. up B. back C. down D. over
17. These old houses are going to be soon.
A. laid out B. run down C. knocked out D. pulled down
18. I can't what he's doing; it's so dark down there.
A. see through B. make out C. look into D. show up
19. Having looked the place, the gang went away to make their plans.
A. over B. through C. down D. out
20. Take the number 7 bus and get at Forest Road.
A. up B. down C. off D. outside
21. If you want to join this club, you must this application form.
A. make up B. write down C. do up D. fill in
22. The water company will have to off water supplies while repairs to the pipes are carried out.
A. take B. cut C. set D. break
23. Come, children! Get your coats on or you'll be late for school.
A. along B. to C. across D. over
24. She tried to prevent the dog running into the road.
A. to B. for C. from D. against
25. The doctor told him to keep sweets and chocolate to lose weight.
A. at B. up C. back D. off

338. Hoàn thành câu với hình thức đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

keep on	come across	read through	catch up	grow up
give up	hear from	throw away	get up	find out

1. We never why Tom didn't get this job.
2. She in Liverpool and left when she was 20.
3. I late so I had no time for breakfast.
4. The interruption didn't stop him. He speaking.

5. I finally Henry last week. He phoned me from work.
6. She the clothes she didn't need any more.
7. He smoking when his doctor told him how dangerous it was.
8. Mr Brown the instructions very carefully.
9. I this letter while I was tidying up.
10. They soon with me although I left 20 minutes before they did.

339. Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. We don't have any milk left. (*run*)
2. It took me a long time to recover from my illness. (*get*)
3. Peter is just like his grandfather. (*takes*)
4. I think we've found an answer to the problem. (*come*)
5. Ann is someone I really respect. (*look*)
6. Please help me. I'm relying on you. (*counting*)
7. Quite by chance, Tom met Peter at the airport. (*ran*)
8. How can you bear so much traffic noise? (*put*)
9. I visited a few friends while I was in Manchester. (*called*)
10. I must go to the dentist, and get my teeth taken care of. (*seen*)

340. Hoàn thành câu với hình thức đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

go out	put off	wear out	see to	stand out
set out	run into	sell out	take off	think over

1. The plane at 9 o'clock, 3 hours late.
2. The bus stopped suddenly and the car the back of it.
3. It was raining so heavily that they the match until next week.
4. It was an offer he very carefully before he made his decision.
5. The lights and we couldn't see anything.
6. Because of her bright clothes she really from the others in the group.
7. They on the excursion at 7 o'clock.
8. The bookshop all the copies of his latest novel within two hours.
9. Peter the cooking while I prepared the table.
10. My shoes so quickly that I had to buy a new pair after two months.

341. Chọn nghĩa thích hợp (1-10) cho cụm động từ được gạch chân.

I have been a secretary in a small company for five years. I enjoy the work and my employer has no reason for complaint. The trouble is that I don't earn enough money. My employer has never given me a salary increase, although I put in for one every year. He hasn't exactly turned down my requests. Every time I

bring the matter up, he always has some excuse or says that he will see into it. But he never does.

I would like to have it out with him, but I'm not sure how to go about it. I once threatened to leave, but he persuaded me to stay. Would it be better to leave after all? I want to stay. All the other workers look up to me and I get on with them, but the boss simply doesn't take me seriously. The situation is getting me down and I feel I can't put up with it for much longer. Please advise me.

- | | |
|------------|------------------------------|
| 1. respect | 2. tolerate |
| 3. examine | 4. reject |
| 5. request | 6. depress |
| 7. start | 8. argue to the end |
| 9. mention | 10. have a good relationship |

342. Hoàn thành câu với hình thức đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

send for	hold up	blow up	bring up	hang up	do without
cut off	leave out	make up	carry on	fall for	break down

- I'm sure he that story. It can't be true.
- My car at the crossroads and I couldn't start it again.
- They the doctor and he came immediately.
- They the bridge with dynamite.
- She accidentally our talk when she pressed the wrong button.
- After a short break they with their work.
- She six children on her own.
- We tea and drank coffee instead.
- He an important thing. He didn't tell us where we would meet.
- Some thieves the national bank at lunchtime yesterday.
- She him because he was so amusing.
- He in the middle of our talk. Maybe I said something wrong.

343. Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- Tom was slow to catch, but gradually he began to understand.
A. in B. on C. away D. out
- I haven't time to speak to him now, you'll have to put him
A. off B. back C. aside D. away
- You know I'll always stand you if you are in trouble.
A. for B. up C. by D. with
- I disapprove people smoking in public places.
A. on B. at C. with D. of
- She found it hard to up to the fact that she would never be famous.

- A. come B. face C. get D. keep
- For the first few minutes she was leading the race, then she began to fall
A. out B. through C. back D. off
- The job offer was too good for him to turn
A. down B. out C. off D. away
- His son's death was a terrible shock and it took him a long time to it.
A. get round B. come through C. go over D. get over
- Please come and see us some time - you're always welcome.
A. to B. round C. about D. away
- She put speaking to him as long as possible.
A. over B. away C. off D. back
- He filled in the necessary forms and for the job.
A. appealed B. asked C. requested D. applied
- She went a bad cold just before Christmas.
A. down with B. in for C. over D. through
- They had never come such a beautiful little village before.
A. at B. across C. off D. along
- When the tenants failed to pay their bills, the authorities decided to cut the gas supply to the flats.
A. out B. down C. off D. across
- The doctor advised me not to take so much work in future.
A. to B. over C. after D. on
- The police have warned tourists to look for pickpockets in the town centre.
A. out B. up C. down D. forward
- I wouldn't of going to a party I hadn't been invited to.
A. intend B. dream C. rely D. depend
- If you want to be healthy, you should cut on your smoking.
A. up B. down C. out D. through
- Their aim is to up a new political party.
A. strike B. stand C. set D. show
- He was busy when I phoned but I hung until he was free.
A. back B. off C. to D. on
- I'm not sure how old he is but he must be for 70.
A. going by B. getting up C. getting on D. going off
- I absolutely with everything that has been said.
A. agree B. accept C. admit D. approve
- The man who lives opposite us sometimes comes for a cup of coffee.
A. on B. over C. off D. to
- The butcher cut some steak, ... it up and handed it to me.
A. closed B. wound C. strung D. wrapped

25. In order to with his studies he worked through the summer.
A. take on B. catch on C. catch up D. take up

344. Thay các từ gạch chân bằng hình thức đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

put down	come about	look after	count on	come up with
take after	fall through	break out	put up	put forward

- They're going to demolish this building soon and put up a supermarket.
- The puppy is covered in green paint. How did this happen?
- He is like his father in many ways. They're both gentle, soft-spoken men.
- Are you going to suggest a design for the stable?
- Don't worry about a hotel. I will give you a bed for the night.
- Can I depend on you to feed the rabbit? You forgot yesterday.
- Taking care of the children can be a demanding job.
- We called in the vet as a new disease suddenly started among our cattle.
- His plans to make a fortune didn't work because of his lack of experience.
- Jenny has thought of a wonderful name for her new goldfish.

345. Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

- There is no ice-cream left. (*run*)
- Although he overslept, Tom wasn't late for work. (*getting*)
- Somebody has to pick the visitors up from the airport. (*picked*)
- All the witnesses said the accident was my fault. (*blame*)
- Linda's plans for a picnic have been spoilt by the weather. (*fallen*)
- The staff in that office all have great respect for their boss. (*look*)
- "You broke my camera!" Susan said to Richard. (*accused*)
- You're going too fast for me. (*keep*)
- She didn't thank us for our help when she left. (*thanking*)
- He was offered a job in the bank but couldn't accept because he was ill. (*turn*)
- It will be nice to see you again at the party. (*looking*)
- When I was in the shop, someone thought I was a shop assistant. (*mistook*)
- They're going to demolish that old power station. (*pulled*)
- I have had enough of your untidiness. (*put*)
- Maria said I had caused the accident. (*blame*)

346. Kết hợp một dòng ở cột A với một dòng ở cột B.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> He can't introduce Mary to his mother. She never approves I'd rather borrow some new books | A |
|---|---|

- It's too noisy here. I can't concentrate
- Teacher, I'd like to apologize
- Tom is a bit mean. He doesn't believe
- Peter might go to work tomorrow. It depends
- The United Kingdom consists
- Put your money away. I insist
- Why are you laughing
- A "house-sitter" is someone who looks

B

- of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.
- on paying for everyone's drinks.
- of any of his girlfriends.
- in spending five pounds on dinner.
- at me? What's so funny about my new haircut?
- on my English homework.
- on what the doctor says.
- after someone else's house while they are away.
- from our school library.
- for my coming late.

347. Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- A good friend will stand you when you're having trouble.
A. by B. out C. against D. in
- The meeting had to be put until a later date.
A. away B. on C. off D. up
- The teachers at the school went with flu one after the other.
A. out B. down C. off D. under
- The smell was so bad that it completely us off our food.
A. set B. took C. got D. put
- We expected him at eight but he finally at midnight.
A. came to B. turned out C. turned in D. came off
- The hall was very crowded with over fifty people into it.
A. pushed B. packed C. stuck D. stuffed
- He took the trouble to write the complete list for us.
A. on B. through C. off D. out
- He had to go to the bank to some money for his holiday.
A. pay up B. pay back C. draw out D. draw in
- A new study group has been by the United Nations.
A. set up B. set on C. put up D. put on
- David always over to my house after he had done his homework.
A. passed B. gone C. went D. came

11. If you want to have a pet you must be ready to look it for several years.
A. at B. for C. after D. over
12. I can put with most things but I cannot stand noisy children.
A. on B. up C. off D. aside
13. Don't up yet, you will soon be able to play the trumpet well.
A. give B. catch C. break D. turn
14. Some drivers seem to expect everyone else to get their way.
A. off B. after C. away from D. out of
15. My uncle took golf when he retired from work.
A. on B. after C. up D. over
16. The deer for the shelter of the forest when there are people about.
A. get B. make C. go D. take
17. I'll call you at 6 o'clock.
A. for B. by C. up D. in
18. Everyone in the village about the plans for the new road.
A. contacted B. took care C. concerned D. was concerned
19. Mrs Brown always out in a crowd because she wore large hats.
A. found B. looked C. stood D. showed
20. After his mother died, he was up by his grandmother.
A. grown B. brought C. taken D. drawn
21. All the plans have been put for the time being.
A. aside B. down C. on D. up
22. He said he would contribute money, but later he backed of it.
A. down B. away C. off D. out
23. All their money is up in the new house they have bought.
A. connected B. limited C. tied D. trapped
24. The audience out laughing when the singer fell over.
A. called B. burst C. shouted D. broke
25. The general was always about his past campaigns.
A. boasting B. praising C. complimenting D. congratulating

348. Chọn nghĩa thích hợp (1-10) cho cụm động từ được gạch chân.

Laura, a university student, found it very difficult to get by on her grant and decided to look for a part-time job. When she saw an advertisement in the local newspaper for snack-bar waitresses, she sat down in front of her friend's computer to apply for a job. She wasn't sure how best to go about presenting herself on paper, so she just jotted down the details of her education and qualifications, and sent the application off immediately.

The owner of the snack-bar, Mr Edwards, rang a couple of days later to ask her to come for an interview the following Saturday. When she arrived, she was very nervous at first, but soon relaxed, and answered all Mr Edwards' questions.

She felt sure that he could see through her claims to have worked as a waitress before, and would turn her down. But when he shook hands with her and said "See you next week!", she realized she had pulled it off.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ask for | 2. approach, start |
| 3. write down quickly | 4. reject |
| 5. not to be deceived by | 6. manage with little money |
| 7. try to find | 8. manage to do |
| 9. post | 10. take a seat |

349. Hoàn thành câu với hình thức đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

<i>go along with</i>	<i>live up to</i>	<i>fall for</i>	<i>find out</i>	<i>turn down</i>	<i>put up with</i>
<i>look down on</i>	<i>look up to</i>	<i>turn up</i>	<i>look after</i>	<i>get on with</i>	<i>come across</i>

1. They finally at the party at twelve o'clock.
2. She did not her new boss so she got another job.
3. She was never able to her mother's high expectations of her.
4. I can't your childish behaviour any longer. I'm leaving.
5. As I was cleaning out the attic, I my mother's old school books.
6. I don't know why you that boy. You agree with everything he says.
7. While she was studying in England, she her landlady's son.
8. He was for the job because of his dirty appearance and long hair.
9. You can't expect me to that plan.
10. A babysitter the kids while their parents went to the cinema.
11. They went to the station to the time of the next train to London.
12. We should never poor people.

350. Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. The crowded bus was so hot that Daisy fainted. (*passed*)
2. Nobody is sure how the accident happened. (*came*)
3. The pilot discovered that the plane's fuel tanks were empty. (*run*)
4. "When did you stop smoking?" the doctor said to John. (*given*)
5. I don't believe a word you have told me. (*made*)
6. A lot of men asked her to marry them but she refused to. (*turned*)
7. The plans for the new car park are not very popular. (*object*)
8. The fire started in the early hours of the morning. (*broke*)
9. He is excited at the thought of seeing his grandparents again. (*looking*)
10. There are a lot of old people who need looking after. (*takes*)
11. I'm sure I'm getting a cold. (*going*)
12. This is the first time I've ever seen a job ad for a cat sitter. (*come*)
13. I'd like you to find the meaning of this word in the dictionary. (*look*)

14. The switchboard operator connected me to the manager. (*put*)
 15. Have the scientists ever investigated the ways animals communicate with humans? (*looked*)

351. Chọn nghĩa thích hợp (1-10) cho cụm động từ được gạch chân.

For her first evening at the snack-bar, Laura dressed up in a black skirt and white blouse, as she had been told to look smart. However, when she turned up there, she found out that the owner hadn't kept his promise. Not only did she have to serve the customers, but she also had to work in the kitchen. When she pointed out to him, he was not at all apologetic. Still, she decided to go on working there for the time being. After all, she was getting on well in the job. "I can really do with the money!" she told herself.

Three months later, she saw an advertisement in the paper for a Saturday shop assistant at a department store. She thought it over carefully, and decided to apply for it. "I won't let on to Mr Edwards until I'm sure I've got the new job," she thought. The prospect of doing something different cheered her up considerably.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. continue | 2. consider |
| 3. make someone feel happier | 4. reveal information |
| 5. discover | 6. indicate, draw attention to |
| 7. put on smart clothes | 8. make progress |
| 9. find useful | 10. arrive |

352. Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

- If we want to up with them we'd better hurry.
A. come B. arrive C. approach D. catch
- Unfortunately the company will have to cut on staff.
A. away B. back C. off D. through
- Their enthusiasm for the new plan has out.
A. gone B. failed C. died D. disappeared
- I don't see what my business has to with you.
A. do B. interest C. concern D. matter
- The taxi up by the kerb.
A. drew B. stopped C. came D. turned
- The doctor says I'll take a long time to get the shock.
A. past B. above C. through D. over
- Once the fire out we had to sit in the cold.
A. lit B. fell C. went D. came
- Do you think it's possible to on nothing but fruit and vegetables?
A. eat B. live C. enjoy D. make
- The bus only stops here to passengers.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|
| A. alight | B. get on | C. get off | D. pick up |
|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|
- The child was by a lorry on the safety crossing in the main street.
A. knocked down B. knocked out C. run across D. run out
 - Hurry! It's time to up and go to school.
A. stand B. get C. dress D. start
 - Mary is very up and thinks she is superior to her classmates.
A. turned B. looked C. stuck D. fed
 - The frightened horse began to away from the snake.
A. fear B. tip C. throw D. shy
 - All his plans for starting his business fell
A. in B. through C. down D. away
 - Tom and Ben have fallen again and do not speak to each other.
A. in B. back C. out D. through
 - The voters told John that he could on their support in the election.
A. count B. doubt C. decide D. expect
 - The completion of the tunnel has been held owing to a strike.
A. on B. off C. over D. up
 - Their teacher told them to up their quarrel and be friends again.
A. stitch B. mend C. sew D. patch
 - He wanted to off all his work before he came to the cinema with us.
A. finish B. stop C. end D. put
 - I remember Alice as a spotty girl but she's turned a beautiful woman.
A. to B. in C. into D. on
 - Stephen always wanted to be an actor when he up.
A. came B. grew C. brought D. settled
 - They've a new tower where that old building used to be.
A. put up B. put down C. pushed up D. pushed down
 - It's high time Bill got a steady job and He's almost thirty.
A. settled in B. settled down C. turned in D. turned down
 - The plane down ten minutes late because of bad weather.
A. put B. flew C. landed D. touched
 - He kept his marriage a secret for years, but eventually the truth
A. went in B. went off C. came out D. came through

353. Kết hợp một dòng ở cột A với một dòng ở cột B.

A

- It's my turn to pay
- The man prevented us
- That woman at the shop reminds me
- She's been searching everywhere

5. I knew she wasn't angry when she smiled
6. After six attempts, my brother succeeded
7. Lan can't come to school. She's suffering
8. It could take me some time to recover
9. If the book belonged
10. I've been waiting

B

- a. from a serious illness like this.
- b. in passing his driving test.
- c. for lunch. You paid last time.
- d. for you to arrive all morning.
- e. from an awful headache.
- f. at me so sweetly.
- g. to me, I'd lend it to you, but it doesn't.
- h. from entering the building.
- i. for her keys but she still can't find it.
- j. of someone I knew at college.

354. Chọn nghĩa thích hợp (1-12) cho cụm động từ được gạch chân.

The department store ruled Laura out, as she had no relevant experience. So she went on waitressing part-time at the snack-bar, until the day she arrived at work to find that the place had been closed down for reasons of hygiene.

When she had got over her surprise, she decided to look for another job. Eventually she was taken on at the local airport, where she worked at the check-out in the duty-free shop. The hours were long but Laura was determined to put up with the job. At least she was able to spend her coffee break watching the planes take off and land, and join in the general feeling of excitement at an international airport.

However, her university studies were beginning to suffer and so, when she was laid off at the end of the summer, she gave up any further ideas of trying to earn money, and went back to her books.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. cause to stop working | 2. try to find |
| 3. tolerate | 4. dismiss |
| 5. depart (a plane) | 6. recover from |
| 7. exclude | 8. take part in |
| 9. employ | 10. continue |
| 11. stop | 12. return |

355. Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. There isn't enough space in this room for a big cupboard. (take)

2. It has always been her ambition to write a successful novel. (dreamt)
3. She won the first match easily and then became the champion. (went)
4. If you don't take care of those shoes, they won't last for long. (look)
5. You're so lucky to have inherited all that money. (come)
6. He referred to his notes before answering the question. (took)
7. Tom frequently invents ridiculous stories like that! (make)
8. I offered to help her but she said, "No, thanks." (turned)
9. Please don't stop your work. (carry)
10. Was the film as good as you expected it to be or was it disappointing? (live)
11. No more staff are being recruited at the bank at the moment. (taking)
12. When are you going to come to a decision about learning French? (make)
13. It's difficult to see what Peter is doing because it's so dark. (make)
14. Jack has become confident as a result of his success. (turned)
15. The inventor found a solution to the problem in a dream. (came)

356. Hoàn thành đoạn văn với dạng đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

come round	take up	get over	run down	fall off
come across	get up	give up	go on	get on

I was sorry to hear about your accident and I hope you're beginning to (1) the shock. As soon as you're well, write and tell me all about it. Is it really true that you (2) a bus? How long was it before you (3) ? Did you wake up and find yourself on the operating table?

Daisy tells me you've broken one of your legs. Is it in plaster and how long will it be before they take the plaster off? Are you allowed to (4) and hobble about the ward, and how do you (5) with the nurses? I believe Mary Brown is training to be a nurse at the same hospital. Have you (6) her? I thought she'd (7) the idea of nursing.

I'll try to (8) and see you at the beginning of the month but my motorbike has broken down, so I'll have to come by train. I don't think you'll (9) going to work by bus after all this. Why don't you (10) cycling? It's probably safer.

357. Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. We're having terrible weather. I just can't put it for much longer.
A. up B. on C. away D. up with
2. Over the past 50 years, many illnesses have been brought control.
A. in B. under C. to D. over
3. When I break for the summer, I'm going to Spain for three weeks.
A. up B. in C. out D. down

4. Can you remember the first time you in love?
A. felt B. went C. fell D. found
5. She's gradually getting a bad cold, which kept her off work for a week.
A. over B. up C. on D. into
6. It's very cold in here. Do you mind if I put the heating?
A. down B. away C. off D. on
7. I told him I'd prefer to walk, but he insisted giving me a lift.
A. about B. on C. to D. for
8. There's a rumor that the National Bank is going to take the company I work for.
A. on B. off C. over D. after
9. There's a lot more traffic than usual. There must be something in the city centre.
A. going on B. going off C. getting on D. getting off
10. He wasn't sure if he'd be any good at tennis, but actually he took it immediately.
A. after B. on C. in D. to
11. I've always got well with old people.
A. off B. on C. in D. through
12. When they for the beach the sun was shining, but by the time they arrived it had clouded over.
A. went out B. went off C. set off D. left out
13. After standing in the sun for more than an hour, two of the people in the queue passed
A. out B. by C. up D. through
14. When the alarm clock went off, Tom just turned and went back to sleep.
A. down B. out C. up D. over
15. I'd love to get from this place for a few days. I really feel I need a break.
A. out B. away C. over D. down
16. The smell of floor polish still brings memories of my old school.
A. on B. up C. back D. over
17. In their latest attack, terrorists have attempted to blow the bridge.
A. up B. over C. through D. down
18. I've just spent two weeks looking an old aunt of mine who's been ill.
A. at B. for C. out for D. after
19. As soon as I got home from work, I changed casual clothes.
A. to B. into C. in D. for
20. The teacher carried his threat to suspend Tom for his repeated absence from class.
A. on with B. on C. out D. over
21. He all his money, then closed the account.

- A. took out B. took away C. paid in D. paid off
22. He was convicted of using the firm's money to pay his gambling debts.
A. in B. off C. back D. towards
23. At the meeting, someone brought the subject of pre-school education.
A. in B. on C. up D. out
24. I take everything I said about Paul. I realize now that it wasn't true.
A. on B. over C. in D. back
25. Although I'd never made a sandwich before, my first attempt turned quite well.
A. over B. up C. out D. into

358. Thay các từ gạch chân bằng hình thức đúng của cụm động từ trong bảng.

stop over	take off	go on	check out	keep on
go out	check in	join in	get together	wear out

1. The plane left on time.
 2. We intended to interrupt our trip in Honolulu.
 3. There was a thunderstorm but the plane continued flying.
 4. I finally arrived at the hotel I registered.
 5. The elevator was old and beyond repair.
 6. I called a friend of mine, and we arranged to meet for a meal.
 7. At the end of my stay I paid my bill and left the hotel.
 8. Whenever there are games at parties I like to participate.
 9. During the party all the lights stopped working.
 10. Then all the lights started working again.
359. Điền một động từ và giới từ. Mẫu tự đầu tiên của động từ ở trong ngoặc.
1. Our mother loves this song. It her her childhood. (r)
 2. This is a story about two young lovers whose families them marrying. (p)
 3. A day at the seaside is a real possibility, but it all the weather. (d)
 4. I'm confident about the listening and speaking exams but what I need to is my grammar. (c)
 5. Ed life after death. He thinks dying is a beginning, not an end. (b)
 6. The reason why I don't ... smoking is the harm it does to people's health. (a)
 7. Don't me. I'll see you at the cinema. (w)
 8. A park isn't private property. It everybody. (b)
 9. I always need lots of hand cream. I very dry skin. (s)
 10. It will take the company years to this financial problem. (r)
 11. The new driving test a written exam and a practical test. (c)

12. Much to my surprise, the football team winning promotion. (s)
13. Why does everyone me? Why can't anyone take me seriously? (l)
14. * I knew she liked me when she me across the room. (s)
15. Jane, I'd like to my behaviour last night. It was all my fault. (a)

360. Viết lại câu, dùng từ trong ngoặc.

1. He had a very traditional upbringing, didn't he? (*brought*)
2. John missed the ferry because his car stopped working. (*broke*)
3. It's Daisy's job to look after small children. (*taking*)
4. Mary eats very little so as not to gain weight. (*put*)
5. It was such bad news that Susan suddenly began to cry. (*burst*)
6. Whose suitcase is this? (*belong*)
7. Do you have a good relationship with your neighbours? (*get*)
8. I found this film quite disappointing. (*let*)
9. The book was not as good as he had hoped. (*come*)
10. He has had numerous operations. (*operated*)
11. I haven't decided yet whether to go to the party or not. (*made*)
12. A lot of pupils at school have got flu. (*gone*)
13. I don't think Jane's story about meeting the President was true. (*made*)
14. At the start of the fire, no one seemed very worried. (*broke*)
15. The computer system has caused quite a few problems for us. (*come*)

361. Chọn câu trả lời đúng để hoàn thành câu.

1. It's taking me longer to get the operation than I thought.
A. through B. by C. up from D. over
2. When the princess kissed the frog, it turned a handsome prince.
A. into B. up C. out D. over
3. I really like Joe's dad but I don't get with his mother at all.
A. out B. by C. on D. through
4. You shouldn't stay at home so much. Get and make new friends.
A. by B. out C. over D. away
5. I always run of money before the end of the month.
A. out B. back C. up D. down
6. It'll take me years to up enough money to travel round the country.
A. pay B. take C. put D. save
7. As soon as she came after the operation, she asked for a drink of water.
A. across B. up C. round D. under
8. Bary has come some good suggestions for raising the money we need.
A. on to B. up with C. round to D. across with

9. I everything in my bag three times but my keys were nowhere to be found.
A. went out B. went over C. looked for D. looked at
10. Can you remember what to do, or do you want me to go it again?
A. by B. into C. past D. over
11. It was the third time in six months that the bank had been held
A. over B. down C. up D. out
12. Having that accident has brought a complete change in his attitude to other people.
A. in B. about C. up D. out
13. The light from the car as it receded into the distance.
A. faded away B. seeped out C. rolled away D. shone out
14. It was so foggy that the climbers couldn't out the nearby shelter.
A. run B. take C. break D. make
15. They are thinking of bringing a law to make cyclists wear helmets.
A. on B. up C. in D. round
16. I came this earring as I was cleaning behind the sofa.
A. round B. across C. past D. on
17. The milk went because it hadn't been put back in the fridge.
A. off B. past C. out D. away
18. You really must your paper - they're in a real muddle.
A. send out B. draw up C. clean up D. sort out
19. We waited for ages but Tom never showed
A. out B. off C. up D. down
20. I like living here; neighbours often drop for a cup of tea.
A. out B. in C. off D. down
21. If I go out in the sun, I come in a rash.
A. out B. off C. over D. across
22. The company was so successful that it on 500 new employees in six months.
A. put B. laid C. caught D. took
23. If anything urgent comes, you can contact me at this number.
A. across B. by C. up D. round
24. Your daughter's just started work, hasn't she? How's she getting?
A. by B. on C. out D. in
25. We had to turn their invitation to lunch as we had a previous engagement.
A. over B. out C. up D. down

362. Chọn cụm động từ thích hợp trong bảng cho (cụm) từ được gạch chân.

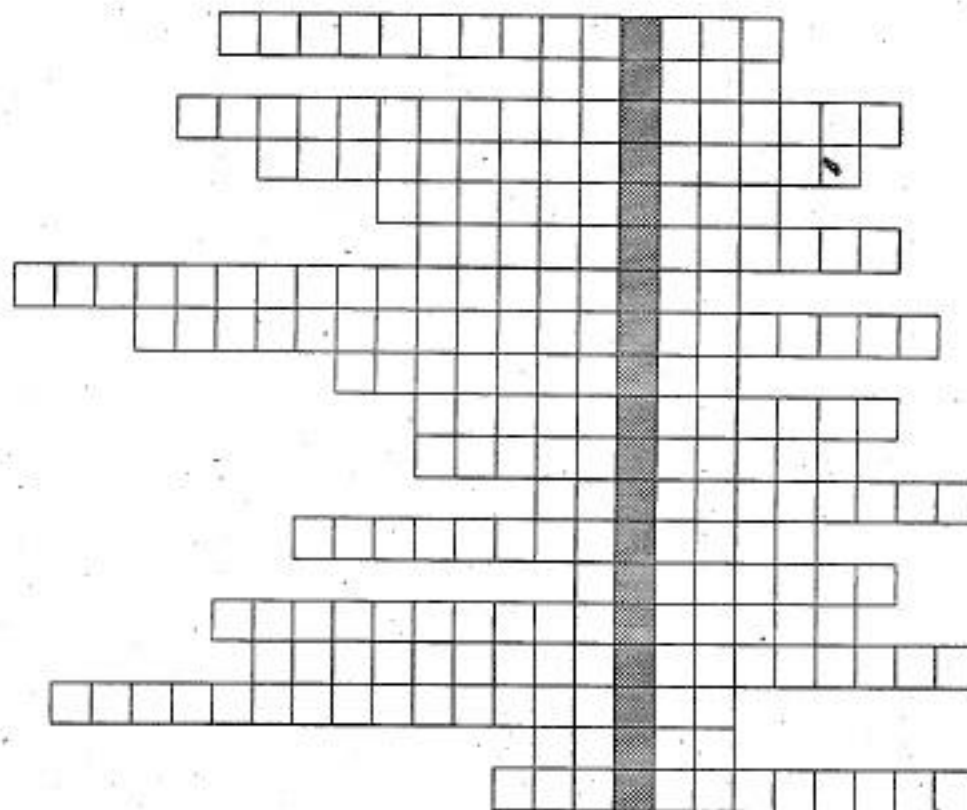
turned out	taking on	take on	put off	go through
make up	pulled out	went over	come up	making for
put up with	got away	put in	took to	didn't get on
given up	turned up	took off	put by	making it up

It is astonishing how easily we are (1) discouraged by little things. Two months ago I (2) applied for a job as dental receptionist. It sounded interesting and the salary would help me to (3) save a little towards my holiday. I had recently (4) stopped working as a shop assistant as the hours had (5) proved to be too long and I (6) wasn't on good terms with the manager.

I (7) arrived for my appointment with the dentist on time. He was a friendly man and I (8) liked him at first sight. He explained to me how to (9) mix the fillings he needed, and anything I didn't understand he (10) repeated in detail. He had an excellent set of dentures. He told me I was capable of (11) assuming responsibility for the job. He then suggested that he had a look at my teeth. I (12) removed my coat, sat down in the chair and opened my mouth. I had recently had my teeth examined, so I didn't think any problem would (13) arise.

"Good heavens!" He exclaimed, "I can't (14) bear this! These front teeth will have to be (15) extracted. I'll do it now." "Oh, no, you don't," I cried, jumping up from the chair and (16) running towards the door. He caught me by the arm and said, "I assure you I'm not (17) inventing it. I shall have to remove your front teeth. As a dentist, I cannot (18) employ a receptionist who looks like a horse." I only (19) escaped just in time as he already had the forceps in his hand. I hope I never have to (20) endure such an experience again.

Hoàn thành ô chữ dưới đây bằng cách điền vào các hàng ngang 19 chữ điểm ngữ pháp trong cuốn sách để có được một cụm từ chủ đề tổ đằm ở hàng dọc. Hi vọng rằng các em học sinh tìm được cho mình nhiều điều bổ ích và thú vị trong cuốn sách này.



ANSWER KEY

ARTICLES

1. ✓
1. ✓ 2. a 3. a 4. ✓ 5. ✓ 6. an 7. ✓ 8. ✓
9. ✓ 10. ✓ 11. a 12. ✓ 13. a 14. ✓ 15. a 16. a
17. ✓ 18. ✓ 19. ✓ 20. an

2.
1. a 2. a 3. the 4. the, the 5. ✓
6. ✓ 7. the 8. the 9. ✓ 10. The, the

3.
1. the, the 2. the 3. the, a 4. a, the 5. the
6. ✓ 7. ✓ 8. the 9. the 10. ✓, ✓, ✓

4.
1. a 2. the 3. the 4. a 5. a
6. the 7. the 8. the 9. the 10. the
11. the 12. the 13. the

5.
1. Language 2. experience 3. an iron 4. Play 5. a tin
6. work 7. Charity 8. a beauty 9. law 10. a speech

6.
1. The pen 2. The orange 3. The newspaper
4. John bought a knife and a book. What did he cut the orange with? The knife
5. Mrs Allen bought a chair and a key. What did she sit on? The chair
6. David bought a chair and a car. What did he drive? The car
7. Bob bought a pen and a spoon. What did he eat ice-cream with? The spoon
8. Paul bought a shirt and a cassette. What did he wear? The shirt
9. George bought a toothbrush and some milk. What did he drink? The milk

7.
1. John is studying *the* music of Mozart.
2. John is studying *philosophy*.
3. John is studying *the* philosophy of Aristotle.
4. John is studying history.
5. John is studying *the* history of Vietnam.
6. John is studying music.
7. John is studying *the* music of Mexico.

8. John is studying algebra.
9. John is studying art.
10. John is studying *the* art of the Netherlands.
11. John is studying architecture.
12. John is studying *the* architecture of Greece.

8.
1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. the 4. the 5. ✓
6. ✓ 7. ✓ 8. ✓ 9. the 10. ✓

9.
1. A 2. a 3. a 4. a 5. The
6. the 7. the 8. a 9. the 10. The
11. the 12. the 13. a 14. The 15. the
16. the 17. a 18. the 19. the 20. an
21. the 22. the 23. the 24. the

10.
1. a 2. ✓ 3. the 4. A 5. the 6. the
7. a 8. The 9. the 10. the 11. the 12. the

11.
1. a 2. ✓ 3. the 4. ✓ 5. a/the 6. the 7. the 8. ✓
9. ✓ 10. ✓ 11. ✓ 12. the 13. ✓ 14. ✓ 15. ✓ 16. the/✓
17. the 18. the 19. a 20. ✓ 21. ✓ 22. ✓ 23. ✓ 24. ✓
25. ✓ 26. ✓ 27. ✓ 28. ✓ 29. a 30. ✓ 31. a 32. ✓

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

12.
1. know 2. live 3. think 4. have, understand 5. like
6. has 7. have 8. were 9. transmit 10. develops
11. consists 12. writes 13. means 14. requires 15. pleases

13.
1. is/are 2. are 3. work 4. have 5. speaks 6. remembers
7. is 8. Is 9. is 10. is 11. is

14.
1. is 2. is 3. are 4. Are 5. is 6. isn't 7. are 8. are

15.
1. This 2. was 3. has 4. is 5. was 6. is 7. is 8. is 9. are

16.

1. phones 2. leaves 3. close 4. obeys 5. disregard 6. stay 7. are 8. leave
9. go 10. watch 11. hear 12. destroys 13. fly 14. see 15. sound 16. take

17.

1. have 2. They 3. were 4. were 5. They 6. were
7. were 8. Were 9. They 10. grows 11. they 12. They

18.

1. is 2. is 3. aren't 4. are 5. Is 6. is 7. seems 8. is 9. Is
10. were 11. has 12. has 13. is 14. is/are 15. is 16. makes 17. is

DETERMINERS

19.

1. of 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. of 5. ✓
6. of ✓ 7. of 8. of 9. of 10. of

20.

1. He got all of them right. 2. He got most of them right.
3. She got some of them right. 4. He got most of them right
5. He got all of them right. 6. She got none of them right.

21.

1. no 2. all/most of the 3. all 4. Most 5. most of the 6. All
7. Most 8. All the 9. all 10. All of 11. Half of 12. no

22.

1. Every/Each 2. each 3. every 4. every 5. every
6. Every/Each 7. every 8. every 9. each 10. every/each

23.

1. both of 2. neither of 3. either of 4. Both of 5. either 6. Neither of, both
7. Both (of) 8. Both of the 9. both of 10. Both (of) 11. both 12. both of

24.

1. many 2. a little 3. a lot of 4. much 5. a few 6. a little 7. much 8. many

25.

1. Do you need any bananas? Yes, just a few, please.
2. Do you need any help? Yes, just a little, please.
3. Do you need any butter? Yes, just a little, please.
4. Do you need any money? Yes, just a little, please.
5. Do you need any bread? Yes, just a little, please.

6. Do you need any information?

Yes, just a little, please.

7. Do you need any advice?

Yes, just a little, please.

8. Do you need any petrol?

Yes, just a little, please.

9. Do you need any stamps?

Yes, just a few, please.

10. Do you need any envelopes?

Yes, just a few, please.

26.

1. few 2. A few 3. little 4. a few 5. a few 6. little
7. a little 8. few 9. few 10. a few 11. a few 12. a few

27.

1. much/ ✓ 2. many/ mice 3. many/ students 4. much/ ✓ 5. many/ witnesses
6. many/ ✓ 7. much/ ✓ 8. much/ ✓ 9. many/ teeth 10. much/ ✓

28.

1. a little 2. a few 3. a little 4. a few 5. a few
6. few 7. a little 8. little 9. little 10. few

29.

- 1c 2d 3e 4a 5b 6f

30.

1. Neither of the boys were polite to the girl. 2. We had little time for a holiday.
3. I've lived here most of my life. 4. Every book has something to teach you.
5. So many books have been bought for the library.

31.

1. a little 2. most 3. a few 4. no 5. none
6. a lot 7. few 8. many 9. all 10. much

NOUNS

32.

1. C 2. U 3. U 4. C 5. U 6. U 7. U 8. C
9. U 10. C 11. C 12. U 13. C 14. U 15. C 16. U
17. U 18. C 19. C 20. C 21. U 22. C

33.

1. churches 2. trees 3. lorries 4. holidays 5. brushes
6. keys 7. shelves 8. sheep 9. teeth 10. apples
11. copies 12. boxes 13. parties 14. children 15. leaves
16. mice 17. ladies 18. hotels 19. potatoes 20. monkeys

34.

1. sandwiches 2. teeth 3. days 4. coaches

5. countries 6. shelves 7. feet 8. dresses

35.

1. meal 2. bank 3. days 4. watch 5. nurse
6. flower 7. sports 8. cities 9. prison 10. farmer-
11. school 12. cinema 13. planets 14. adverbs 15. library

36.

1. isn't 2. a job 3. some 4. clothes 5. advice
6. much 7. is 8. are 9. isn't, much 10. children

37.

a) 1. group, meal, place, day 2. clothes, children, people, feet
3. traffic, research, music, fun, work, information, news, furniture, money, luggage, food, advice
b) 1C 2A 3B

38.

1. I see two men. 2. Look at those women.
3. There are two children in the room. 4. She bought two knives.
5. I see two feet. 6. The dentist pulled out two teeth.
7. She screamed when she saw the mice. 8. There are two sheep in the field.

39.

1. The men are here. 2. The child is here.
3. The people are here. 4. The people are interesting.
5. The news is interesting. 6. The news is bad.
7. The tooth is bad. 8. The teeth are bad.
9. The teeth are good. 10. The knives are good.
11. The knife is good. 12. The man is good.

40.

1. information 2. this furniture is 3. papers is 4. much
5. luggage 6. glasses 7. space 8. wood

41.

1. letters 2. teacher 3. hobbies 4. kitchen 5. hospital 6. Languages
7. newspaper 8. fractions 9. adjectives 10. continents 11. television
12. occupations 13. prepositions 14. conjunctions 15. nationalities 16. abbreviations

42.

1. a drop of water 2. a lump of sugar 3. a lump of iron 4. a piece of music
5. a piece of news 6. a piece of meat 7. a grain of rice 8. a piece of research
9. a piece/an item of information 10. a grain of sand

43.

1. piece of information 2. pound of meat 3. cartons of milk 4. lump of sugar
5. cans of coke 6. bottle of mineral water 7. loaves of bread 8. bar of chocolate
9. packet of crisps 10. jar of honey

44.

1. bar 2. slice 3. stick 4. slice 5. grains 6. plot
7. piece 8. piece 9. slice 10. item 11. piece 12. game

45.

1. some 2. an 3. some 4. some 5. a
6. some 7. some 8. a 9. a 10. some
11. some 12. an 13. some 14. some 15. an

46.

1. golf 2. chess 3. music 4. money 5. boxing
6. luggage 7. weather 8. football 9. furniture 10. astrology

47.

1. hair-drier 2. bookcase 3. washing machine 4. motorway 5. headache
6. timetable 7. signpost 8. homework 9. toothpaste 10. raincoat

48.

1. film director 2. disc jockey 3. newsreader 4. sugar cane 5. film star
6. silk dress 7. bookshop 8. toothpaste 9. armchair 10. raincoat

49.

1. địa chỉ thư điện tử 2. ca sĩ ô-pê-ra 3. đồng phục công an 4. sữa sô-cô-la
5. sô-cô-la sữa 6. cuộc đua ngựa 7. con ngựa đua 8. sân trường
9. bài tập ở nhà 10. tờ báo

50.

1. metal box 2. leather jacket 3. chocolate cakes 4. computer engineer
5. dog food 6. office building 7. baby clothes 8. language school

51.

1. The students have a grammar test. 2. He's a bus driver.
3. It's a sail boat. 4. He works in a car factory.
5. They're engineering students. 6. He's a university student.
7. I bought some dog food. 8. She's a biology student.
9. They're railroad workers. 10. I know the physics book.

52.

1. drop 2. family 3. sun 4. off
5. turn 6. washing 7. black 8. by

9. pick 10. down 11. swim 12. hand

53.

1. haircut 2. living room 3. football 4. ice-cream
5. weekend 6. second floor 7. bus station 8. postcard
9. telephone box 10. departure lounge

54.

1. luggage 2. information 3. chairs 4. furniture 5. hair
6. progress 7. job 8. work 9. permission 10. experiences

55.

1. There are a lot of people on this island.
2. There was a lot of traffic on the road to Manchester.
3. Gerry has great strength.
4. There is litter all over the floor.
5. You have definitely made progress.
6. Could you get a loaf of bread from the supermarket?
7. There is no furniture in the house.
8. There seems to be a lot of people in this city.
9. Can you give me some information about guided tours of the city?
10. The audience was/were enthusiastic.
11. Maths is my favourite subject.
12. Sue has gone to the theatre.
13. I'm looking for accommodation.
14. Jim doesn't have a job at the moment.

56.

1. travel agency 2. holiday resort 3. charter flight 4. traveller's cheques
5. suitcase 6. check-in desk 7. excess baggage 8. passport control
9. departure lounge 10. duty free 11. boarding card 12. seat belt
13. runway 14. takeoff

57.

1. current/checking 2. head 3. employment 4. burglar 5. personal 6. boarding
7. push 8. out 9. living 10. lie 11. book 12. face

ADJECTIVES & ADVERBS

58.

1. He lives in a *small* town.
2. *Blue* whales are *famous* because they are *big*.
3. An elephant is a *big* animal with a *long* trunk.
4. Thanks very much for your *lovely* letter.
5. You'll need a *warm* coat and *strong* boots.

6. I'd like to work for an *international* company.

7. Cigarettes are so *expensive* in our country.

8. She told me some *awful* news.

9. You'll be *sad* to hear that our *old* teacher retired *last* month.

10. She suffers from *poor* vision and hearing.

59.

1. It is getting cold.
2. He grew tired and hungry.
3. The little girl got ready.
4. She promised to be careful.
5. Their neighbours are very friendly.
6. We were driving along a lovely mountain road.
7. We couldn't go any further because the snow was too deep.
8. The naughty child decided to take a short cut through a wood.
9. She was walking along a narrow path when she heard a loud noise.

60.

1. That dress looks expensive.
2. It gets dark early in winter.
3. My parents are getting old.
4. The teacher seems happy because the pupils are good.
5. I want to become rich and famous.
6. The plan sounds interesting.
7. My memory is getting bad.
8. The little girl was walking through a dark forest.
9. She feels ill.

61.

1. usually 2. nicely 3. coldly 4. comfortably 5. wrongly
6. loudly 7. hungrily 8. angrily 9. finally 10. probably
11. sincerely 12. happily 13. dramatically 14. successfully 15. attractively

62.

1. main 2. angry 3. quietly 4. interestingly 5. local
6. helpful 7. badly 8. easy 9. happily 10. amazingly
11. real 12. wonderfully 13. sure 14. gentle 15. surprisingly

63.

1. tomorrow 2. clearly 3. happily/ here 4. slowly 5. easily
6. here 7. automatically 8. much 9. a bit/a lot 10. a lot/a bit

64.

1. Did you lock all the doors securely? 2. He was sitting quietly on a seat.
3. My head was aching a lot. 4. The pilot managed to land safely.

5. I'd like to arrive early. 6. They performed the experiment scientifically.
7. I don't travel much these days. 8. We had to wait a bit at the station.

65.

1. The train travelled *slowly*. 2. The food *smelled* good.
3. Jenny *shouted* angrily. 4. The film *ends* dramatically.
5. The receptionist *spoke* politely. 6. The children *dressed* expensively.
7. Everyone discussed the idea *enthusiastically*. 8. Her tooth *ached* terribly.

66.

1. a Chinese landscape *painting*. 2. a three-bedroom country *house*.
3. a smart brown leather *briefcase*. 4. a portable Japanese video *recorder*.
5. a green cotton *shirt*. 6. a savage huge black *dog*.
7. a lovely little blue Toyota *car*.

67.

1. It's a red winter *coat*. 2. It's a modern wooden *table*.
3. It's a 12-inch, portable, brand-new *TV*. 4. This is a brown fur *coat*.
5. I've got a pair of size 10 black *boots*. 6. We use a Singer electric sewing *machine*.

68.

1. badly 2. well 3. good 4. hardly 5. usually
6. well 7. hard 8. fast 9. lately 10. early

69.

1. lovely 2. lonely 3. silly 4. friendly 5. daily
6. weekly 7. monthly 8. hard 9. well 10. hardly

70.

1. strange 2. large 3. dark 4. terribly 5. badly
6. suddenly 7. unhappy 8. sadly 9. anxious 10. friendly
11. hard 12. foolishly

71.

1. tiring 2. interesting 3. depressed 4. frightened
5. interested 6. boring 7. surprised 8. excited
9. exciting 10. bored 11. interested 12. worrying

72.

1. amused 2. thrilled 3. amusing 4. confused 5. frightening
6. horrified 7. shocked 8. confusing 9. surprising 10. horrifying

73.

- 1a 2b 3d 4c

74.

1. surprised 2. interesting 3. boring 4. excited
5. worried 6. tiring 7. frightened 8. bored
9. tired 10. exciting 11. annoyed 12. frightening

75.

1. She *always* cooks a meal in the evening. 2. They *usually* book that August holiday in June.
3. He is *probably* going to stay overnight. 4. Chocolate cakes are *definitely* the best.
5. I have *often* tried to find it. 6. It is *sometimes* very difficult.
7. I *never* feel cold in my house. 8. We should *always* look where we're going.
9. November is *usually* the coldest month. 10. He has *never* had an illness in his life.

76.

1. Daisy works *best* at night. 2. He speaks French *fluently*.
3. He reads the passage *slowly*. 4. I can't explain my feelings *clearly*.
5. She works at the village shop *on Sundays*. 6. She practises the violin here *every evening*.
7. Put the milk in the fridge *at once*. 8. They talked about the problem *at lunchtime*.
9. She broke the eggs *carefully* into the bowl. 10. I don't think Tom plays tennis *very well*.

77.

1. covered 2. made 3. minded 4. looking 5. lighted 6. tight
7. free 8. hearted 9. deep 10. witted 11. distance 12. famous

78.

1. homesick 2. airsick 3. carsick 4. good-tempered 5. praiseworthy
6. trustworthy 7. duty-free 8. airtight 9. waterproof 10. snow-white

79.

1. ten-ton 2. fifteen-piece 3. twelve-man 4. 4,000-year-old 5. one-litre
6. thirty-five-hour 7. 2,000-word 8. one-egg 9. five-minute 10. three-course

80.

1. near 2. ready 3. easy 4. soft 5. Blue
6. air 7. shock 8. whole 9. world 10. absent
11. time 12. working 13. Cold 14. short 15. far

PREFIXES & SUFFIXES

81.

1. inter 2. multi 3. over 4. semi 5. under 6. bi
7. out 8. super 9. over 10. sub 11. under 12. multi

82.

1. multi 2. under 3. over 4. out 5. inter 6. sub

7. semi 8. over 9. bi 10. super 11. under 12. out
83.
1. co 2. post 3. re 4. pro 5. en 6. non
7. ex 8. non 9. pre 10. mid 11. fore 12. post
84.
1. non 2. en 3. anti 4. post 5. ex 6. re
7. non 8. mid 9. co 10. anti 11. re 12. fore
85.
1. impossible 2. unattractive 3. unreasonable 4. irresponsible
5. unreliable 6. impure 7. inconvenient 8. unusual
9. Illegal 10. misunderstood 11. immoral 12. unsuccessful
86.
1. impatient 2. uneconomical 3. dishonest 4. unhappiness
5. irregularly 6. unreal 7. independent 8. Illiteracy
9. unexplored 10. discontinued 11. unpredictable 12. misspelled
87.
1. unlock 2. inattention 3. disliked 4. irreligious
5. unkind 6. incorrect 7. impractical 8. unlucky
9. inefficient 10. disappeared 11. unfortunately 12. disregarded
88.
1. comfortable 2. dangerous 3. dirty 4. famous
5. national 6. foolish 7. southern 8. friendly
9. sensible 10. fashionable 11. powerful 12. foggy
89.
1. hungry 2. truthful 3. successful 4. cowardly
5. central 6. painful 7. luxurious 8. icy
9. childish 10. advisable 11. daily 12. wonderful
90.
1. original 2. ghostly 3. reasonable 4. noisy
5. cheerful 6. mysterious 7. skillful 8. foolish
9. nervous 10. stressful 11. rainy 12. medical
91.
1. employment 2. examination 3. identification 4. marriage
5. pronunciation 6. mixture 7. dismissal 8. activity
9. consciousness 10. statement 11. permission 12. retirement

92.
1. refusal 2. entertainment 3. truth 4. expression
5. curiosity 6. familiarities 7. seriousness 8. information
9. equipment 10. accuracy 11. possibility 12. introduction
93.
1. government 2. arrival 3. competition 4. storage
5. treatment 6. performance 7. originality 8. analysis
9. invitation 10. sadness 11. necessity 12. delivery
94.
Person:
1. driver 2. translator 3. player 4. labourer
5. actor 6. dancer 7. traveller 8. grocer
Thing:
1. lighter 2. scooter 3. eraser 4. heater
5. cooker 6. wiper 7. opener 8. freezer
95.
1. announcer 2. magician 3. detective 4. scientist
5. accountant 6. beggar 7. boxer 8. librarian
9. cyclist 10. instructor 11. inhabitant 12. politician
96.
1. foreigner 2. inventor 3. leader 4. novelist
5. operator 6. visitor 7. economist 8. comedian
9. owner 10. receptionist 11. liar 12. director
97.
Person:
1. instructor 2. commuter 3. stationer 4. photographer
5. interviewer 6. foreigner 7. passenger 8. employer
Thing:
1. saucer 2. shower 3. recorder 4. calculator
5. scanner 6. notepaper 7. typewriter 8. fertilizer
98.
1. homeless 2. careless 3. useless 4. thoughtless
5. tasteless 6. painless 7. brainless 8. harmless
9. tactless 10. priceless
99.
1. sensible 2. application 3. personal 4. approval
5. juicy 6. decision 7. various 8. Photography
9. sleepy 10. arrangement 11. careful 12. departure

100.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. professional | 2. denials | 3. suitable | 4. development |
| 5. colourful | 6. explanation | 7. sunny | 8. difficulty |
| 9. weekly | 10. collection | 11. doubtful | 12. illness |

101.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. drinkable | 2. woody | 3. writer | 4. hopeful |
| 5. demonstrators | 6. economical | 7. trainer | 8. protective |
| 9. funny | 10. mountainous | 11. computer | 12. thoughtful |

102.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. healthy | 2. reporter | 3. scholarly | 4. trainee |
| 5. industrious | 6. competitors | 7. inhabitants | 8. alcoholic |
| 9. singers | 10. useful | 11. grammatical | 12. cloudy |

103.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. punctuality | 2. sailor | 3. lucky | 4. Membership |
| 5. signature | 6. information | 7. astronomer | 8. helpful |
| 9. speciality | 10. cooker | 11. muddy | 12. hospitality |

104.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. accommodation | 2. shiny | 3. cookery | 4. freedom |
| 5. reliable | 6. winner | 7. approval | 8. reliability |
| 9. powerful | 10. employees | 11. composition | 12. production |

105.

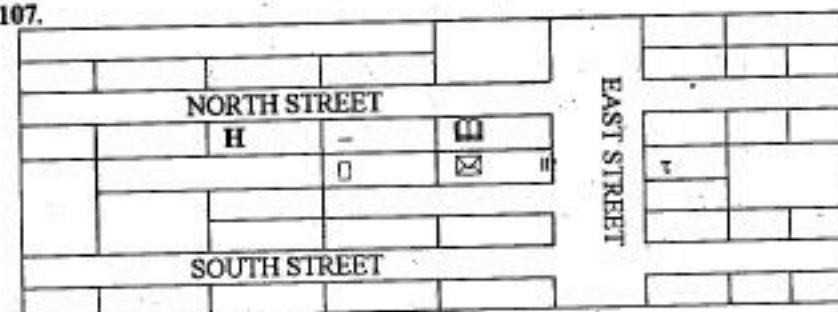
- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. endless | 2. comparison | 3. salty | 4. rider |
| 5. harmful | 6. regularities | 7. freezer | 8. scientific |
| 9. waterless | 10. demonstration | 11. robber | 12. manager |

106.

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. friendless | 2. decorator | 3. emphasis | 4. grassy |
| 5. religious | 6. discovery | 7. historian | 8. energetic |
| 9. dependence | 10. travellers | 11. practical | 12. removal |

PREPOSITIONS

107.



108.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. in | 2. on | 3. on | 4. on | 5. on |
| 6. In | 7. in | 8. on | 9. in | 10. on |

109.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. at | 2. at | 3. in | 4. on | 5. at |
| 6. at | 7. at | 8. on | 9. on | 10. on |

110.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. in front of | 2. by | 3. by | 4. at, under | 5. at, under |
| 6. above | 7. behind | 8. against | 9. near | 10. against |

111.

- | | | | | | |
|------------|---------|-----------|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1. (1) in | (2) at | (3) in | (4) on | (5) of | |
| 2. (1) on | (2) on | (3) above | (4) at | (5) of | (6) below |
| 3. (1) on | (2) of | | | | |
| 4. (1) in | (2) on | (3) on | | | |
| 5. through | | | | | |
| 6. (1) in | (2) in | (3) of | (4) on | | |
| 7. Off | 8. from | | | | |
| 9. (1) on | (2) in | | | | |
| 10. in | | | | | |

112.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I study <i>here</i> . | 2. We study <i>here</i> . |
| 3. We study in the <i>library</i> . | 4. We read in the library. |
| 5. I read in the library. | 6. I read <i>here</i> . |
| 7. I eat <i>here</i> . | 8. I eat at the <i>restaurant</i> . |
| 9. John eats at the restaurant. | 10. John eats <i>there</i> . |
| 11. John studies <i>there</i> . | 12. John studies in <i>that building</i> . |

113.

1. out of 2. up, down 3. along, through, into

114.

1. off 2. into 3. across 4. out of 5. over
6. across 7. over 8. on to 9. off 10. on to

115.

1. road 2. hill 3. cafe
4. stairs 5. wall 6. church

116.

1. through 2. across 3. along 4. off 5. down
6. over 7. out of 8. into 9. up 10. on to

117.

1. In 2. On 3. In 4. on 5. in 6. on 7. on

118.

1. on 2. ✓ 3. in 4. ✓, ✓
5. at, on 6. On, ✓ 7. ✓ 8. in

119.

1. in 2. at 3. at 4. in 5. In
6. at 7. ✓ 8. ✓ 9. to 10. at

120.

1. Christmas 2. last summer 3. Easter Monday 4. September 5th
5. tomorrow 6. Christmas Day 7. night 8. June

121.

1. It rained heavily *yesterday*. 2. The pupils will go to school *next month*.
3. I began my new job *last year*. 4. I went away for my holiday *last month*.
5. I'll have my birthday party *next month*. 6. I've spent too much money *this month*.
7. The supermarket will be open *next year*. 8. My holiday is in July *every year*.
9. I hope the weather will be fine *tomorrow*.

122.

1. We usually have lunch *at one o'clock*. 2. We usually have coffee *at one o'clock*.
3. We usually have coffee *in the morning*. 4. We *always* have coffee in the morning.
5. We always have coffee *at noon*. 6. We always have lunch *at noon*.
7. We always have lunch *at 12 o'clock*. 8. We *usually* have lunch at 12 o'clock.
9. We usually have coffee *at 12 o'clock*. 10. We usually have coffee *in the evening*.
11. We usually have coffee *in the afternoon*. 12. We usually have coffee *at night*.

123.

260

1. 1981, 2002 2. 1981 3. 1992 4. three 5. 1993 6. his school days

124.

1. since 2. for 3. when 4. from, to/until/till
5. during 6. for 7. for

125.

1. until 2. till 3. from, to 4. for 5. by 6. during
7. during 8. for 9. for 10. for 11. by 12. by

126.

1. The teacher has breakfast at a restaurant *at 7 a.m.*
2. The teacher has breakfast *at home* at 7 a.m.
3. The teacher has breakfast at home *every day*.
4. The teacher has breakfast *at a restaurant every day*.
5. The teacher has coffee at a restaurant *every day*.
6. The teacher has coffee at a restaurant *at noon*.
7. The teacher has coffee *here* at noon.
8. The teacher has coffee *in that building* at noon.
9. The teacher has coffee in that building *in the afternoon*.
10. The teacher has coffee in that building *every day*.
11. We have coffee in that building *every day*.
12. We have coffee in that building *at noon*.

127.

1. in 2. for 3. during 4. at 5. in 6. at
7. at 8. on 9. in 10. on 11. at

128.

1. at 2. on 3. for 4. at 5. on
6. during 7. at 8. on 9. in 10. at
11. since 12. at 13. on 14. at 15. in
16. until 17. in 18. for 19. by 20. At

129.

1. at 2. for 3. during 4. since 5. in 6. at 7. in
8. for 9. at 10. by 11. off 12. at 13. from 14. on

130.

1. in 2. on 3. at 4. in 5. on/at 6. on 7. off 8. to
9. in 10. at/on 11. for 12. to 13. at 14. of 15. on 16. at

131.

1. at 2. in 3. along 4. at 5. on
6. in 7. during 8. in 9. on 10. out of

11. on 12. by 13. at/on 14. on 15. through
16. in 17. at 18. on 19. until 20. down

TENSES

132.

1. is 2. aren't 3. does 4. Do
5. don't 6. are 7. doesn't 8. isn't

133.

1. are you doing 2. 'm learning 3. 'm working 4. Do you like 5. are giving
6. work/am working 7. tells 8. work 9. don't get 10. prefer
11. 'm working 12. 's becoming 13. 're asking 14. 're

134.

1. don't 2. did 3. do 4. Do
5. doing 6. did 7. Don't 8. do
9. done 10. does 11. doesn't 12. don't 13. Do

135.

1. am writing 2. am staying 3. am doing 4. am moving
5. live 6. am renting 7. is raining 8. is getting
9. come 10. am looking 11. doesn't seem 12. deal
13. answer 14. suppose 15. starts 16. are beginning

136.

1. Next week Mary is having a party at her house.
2. We are having a meeting tomorrow.
3. Helen's flight arrives at 8.00.
4. By the time we get to the theatre, the play will have begun.
5. What are you doing on Saturday evening?
6. Do you own this car?
7. It's going to rain.
8. By the end of next year we will have been married for twenty five years.

137.

1. went 2. was watching 3. was getting 4. came
5. didn't miss 6. was coming 7. fell 8. were playing
9. was working 10. happened 11. stopped 12. went

138.

- 1C 2A 3A 4B 5C 6C 7A 8D 9D 10D

139.

1. arrived 2. 'm staying 3. works 4. doesn't have
5. 's going to do 6. 'm having 7. was travelling 8. saw
9. was working 10. 's learning 11. 're going to see 12. think

140.

1. Are you going to return 2. will go 3. am going to spend
4. will be 5. am going to work 6. will be/is going to be
7. am going to do 8. am going to fail 9. will not fail

141.

1. will be speaking 2. am going/am going to go
3. leave/am leaving 4. am visiting/am going to visit
5. will be 6. starts/is starting/is about to start
7. will see 8. will tell
9. get

142.

1. haven't had/since 2. has worn/had been wearing/for
3. hasn't ridden/since 4. hasn't snowed/for
5. have lived/have been living/since 6. hasn't spoken/for
7. has been waiting/for 8. haven't seen/for
9. has not been getting/since 10. has been applying/since

143.

1. was 2. was 3. went 4. has seen
5. has studied 6. have been studying 7. met
8. lived 9. have owned 10. haven't sold

144.

- 1C 2A 3C 4C 5C 6B 7C 8C 9A 10B

145.

1. haven't written 2. have been 3. had 4. haven't done
5. have stopped 6. am waiting 7. have changed 8. live
9. decided 10. has become/is becoming 11. told 12. moved
13. come 14. will be staying/am staying 15. will be going/am going

146.

- 1C 2C 3A 4A 5B 6C 7C 8C 9B 10C

147.

1. is, doing 2. haven't been sleeping 3. have been trying 4. has finished
5. is 6. have been waiting 7. build/are building 8. aren't
9. has made 10. meets

148.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. haven't seen | 2. saw | 3. didn't see | 4. was |
| 5. have moved | 6. found | 7. have been | 8. Have...passed |
| 9. passed | 10. haven't bought | 11. Has... happened | 12. hasn't been |
| 13. Did...leave | 14. didn't do | 15. hasn't found | 16. have just given |

149.

- 1B 2A 3D 4A 5C 6D 7A 8B 9D 10A

150.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. visited | 2. told | 3. asked | 4. said |
| 5. arrived | 6. have been staying | 7. have never visited | 8. have been swimming |
| 9. arrived | 10. suggested | 11. agreed | 12. noticed |
| 13. were | 14. was/were | 15. remembered | 16. came |
| 17. asked | 18. waved | | |

151.

- 1D 2A 3D 4A 5B 6B 7D 8B 9D 10C

152.

- It's ages since I went to an Indian restaurant.
- When did Helen and Robert get married?
- When you phoned me I was having lunch.
- It's ages since I had a Chinese meal.
- When we arrived David had already gone home.
- I didn't wear glasses until recently.
- When I arrived at the office Jack had left.
- While I was having dinner, the phone rang.
- The last time I went to the cinema was two months ago.

153.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. will have built/will be building | 2. will be circling/will circle |
| 3. (will) probably be circling/will probably circle | |
| will have established/will be establishing | |
| 5. will have increased/will be increasing | 6. will be orbiting |
| 7. will have | 8. will stay/will be staying |
| 9. will not be clearing | 10. will just be watching |

154.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. drove | 2. was | 3. did you have | 4. did you manage |
| 5. was running | 6. was turning/turned | 7. had forgotten | 8. changed |
| 9. had phoned | 10. were waiting | | |

155.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1. were you doing | 2. did you do | 3. did the robbery take |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------------|

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 4. called the police | 5. did they question you | 6. did you tell them |
| 7. have you been working | 8. did you move | |

156.

- 1B 2B 3A 4B 5D 6A 7B 8C 9A 10D

157.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. have...been living/have...lived | 2. have been living/have lived |
| 3. died | 4. has been |
| 5. died | 6. have been |
| 7. has been | 8. did...live/did...use to live |
| 9. came | |
| 10. got | 11. lived/used to live |
| 12. have knocked | |
| 13. have only lived | 14. have seen |
| 15. was/used to be | |
| 16. wasn't/didn't use to be | 17. used to go |
| 18. have built | |
| 19. Did...enjoy/Did...use to enjoy | 20. had/used to have |
| 21. were/used to be | 22. did/used to do |

158.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. unsuitable | 2. unsuitable | 3. suitable | 4. suitable | 5. unsuitable |
| 6. suitable | 7. suitable | 8. unsuitable | 9. suitable | 10. unsuitable |

159.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. have lived | 2. moved | 3. was/had been born | 4. had lived |
| 5. decided | 6. could | 7. would move | 8. did |
| 9. have never regretted | 10. are reminded | 11. draw | |
| 12. have had | 13. rush | 14. do | 15. are playing |

160.

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. will, receive | 2. won't be coming | 3. will have made |
| 4. will never forget | 5. Are, going | 6. isn't playing |
| 7. will meet | 8. will be appearing | 9. are going to hear |
| 10. are going | | |

161.

- Steve has been playing the violin for a month.
- Since hearing the results Mary has felt more confident.
- Nancy hasn't been here since 1996.
- This is the first time I've been to Japan.
- We haven't had a conversation for a long time.
- Thanks, but I've already eaten.
- I haven't played water-polo before.
- I've been working for this company for three years.
- Oh no! I have lost my wallet.
- Have you ever driven this kind of car before?

162.

1. have been married
2. has become
3. have been feeling
4. told/have told, had/have been having
5. realized
6. remembered/had remembered
7. respected, could not
8. hasn't finished
9. will have written
10. have been forced

163.

1. has disappeared
2. didn't return
3. live
4. went
5. played
6. had played
7. sat
8. left
9. was
10. was walking
11. saw
12. has seen
13. are questioning/have been questioning
14. have spoken
15. was lying
16. are searching

MODAL VERBS

164.

1. Can she play badminton?
2. Tom may not be late.
3. It may not rain.
4. Can she speak Chinese?
5. Must Mary pay for the service?
6. Should he phone his mother now?
7. She mustn't work hard.
8. They shouldn't take a taxi.

165.

1. mustn't
2. can't
3. mustn't
4. should
5. shouldn't
6. mustn't, can

166.

- 1c
- 2c
- 3a
- 4d
- 5f
- 6b

167.

- 1b
- 2a
- 3c

168.

1. We may buy a car.
2. Mary may be ill.
3. She may not be at home.
4. He may not change his job.
5. It may not rain.

169.

1. should
2. can
3. can
4. should
5. Can

170.

1. ... he might be a teacher.
2. She might be a doctor.
3. He might be an engineer.
4. He might be an actor.
5. He might be a vet.
6. He might be a gardener.

171.

1. You mustn't smoke in the cinema.
2. You mustn't make noise in the classroom.
3. You mustn't play near the lake.
4. You mustn't use a mobile phone on a plane.
5. You mustn't light fires at a campsite.
6. You mustn't pick flowers in the park.

172.

- 1f
- 2d
- 3e
- 4b
- 5c
- 6a

173.

1. needn't
2. mustn't
3. mustn't
4. needn't
5. mustn't
6. needn't
7. needn't
8. mustn't
9. mustn't
10. needn't

174.

1. What can you do?
2. Can you speak English?
3. Could they afford it?
4. Can he speak French?
5. Can she type?
6. Can he read?
7. Could you see the Olympic Games?
8. How could you get there?
9. When could you do that?

175.

1. can't
2. will be able to
3. could
4. will be able to
5. were able to
6. could
7. would be able to/ could
8. hasn't been able to
9. haven't been able to
10. were able to

176.

1. Can you open the door?
2. Could you tell me your name?
3. Can you change some dollars for me?
4. Could you give me a receipt?
5. Can you show me the way to the station?
6. Can you pass me the salt?

177.

1. She must be happy.
2. The play can't be very good.
3. He must be Australian.
4. He must have a lot of money.
5. They can't be at home.
6. She must be very popular.
7. He can't spend so much in a short time.

178.

1. The food must be bad. The services can't be good.
2. They must be new here. They can't know many people here.
3. She must be poor. She can't be rich.
4. Her feet must be small. She can't be a grown-up girl.
5. He must be sick. He can't be well.

179.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Shall I turn on the light? | 2. Shall we go to the library? |
| 3. Shall I buy this dress? | 4. Where shall we go for our holiday? |
| 5. When shall we go to the circus? | 6. Shall I make you a cup of tea? |
| 7. Shall I drive you to the airport? | 8. Shall we look for a hotel? |
| 9. How much bread shall we buy for the party? | |

180.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. will | 2. won't | 3. won't | 4. Shall | 5. Shall |
| 6. won't | 7. will | 8. won't | 9. Shall | 10. will |

181.

1. Shall we go to the cinema tonight?
2. It might be Peter at the door.
3. This must be the restaurant we ate at.
4. We shouldn't eat so much meat.
5. May I leave the room?
6. You don't need to get up early.
7. She can leave early.
8. The weather might be better tomorrow.
9. You mustn't buy cigarettes if you're under 16.
10. You ought to follow your father's advice.
11. The doctor says that I have to avoid fatty foods.
12. Can you make a sandwich?
13. We will have good weather tomorrow.
14. The children might be playing upstairs.

182.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. didn't he | 2. isn't there | 3. won't she | 4. haven't we |
| 5. shouldn't you | 6. can you | 7. oughtn't I | 8. wouldn't you |
| 9. mustn't he | 10. mightn't it | 11. doesn't she | 12. are there |

183.

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. aren't you | 2. weren't we | 3. isn't it | 4. isn't she |
| 5. hasn't she | 6. didn't we | 7. can't you | 8. oughtn't we |
| 9. wasn't it | 10. are you | | |

184.

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. isn't it | 2. aren't I | 3. didn't they | 4. will you |
| 5. shall we | 6. couldn't we | 7. aren't you | 8. didn't they |
| 9. are they | 10. would you | 11. haven't we | 12. were there |

185.

1. Jack can't have left home yet.
2. Jean's plane might have been delayed.

3. You shouldn't have got up so late.
4. You needn't have come early today.
5. Tony should have been here by now.
6. I must have left my keys at home.
7. I could have done it instead.
8. This prediction may have come true.

186.

1. You should have brought your umbrella.
2. Tom's father must have been worried.
3. One of the men may have died on the mountain.
4. You needn't have done all this work.
5. You shouldn't have bought that house.
6. Sally can't have enjoyed her holiday.
7. Alan mightn't have meant what he said.
8. The driver should have stopped at the red light.
9. I could have left my wallet at home.
10. He might have spent all his money when he was young.

187.

- | | | | | | | |
|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 2D | 3A | 4C | 5D | 6C | 7A |
| 8C | 9D | 10D | 11B | 12A | 13C | 14A |

CONDITIONALS & WISHES

188.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|----------------|----------|
| 1. paint | 2. hears | 3. see | 4. will accept | 5. gets |
| 6. will steal | 7. writes | 8. do, will have | 9. will give | 10. turn |

189.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. explained | 2. would stop | 3. were | 4. do, were | 5. were |
| 6. weren't | 7. would spend | 8. had | 9. understood | 10. spoke |

190.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. had decided | 2. would have called |
| 3. had understood | 4. had had, wouldn't have written |
| 5. had told, would have bought | 6. had been given |
| 7. had permitted | 8. would have told |
| 9. had known, wouldn't have bought | 10. had studied |

191.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|------|----------|
| 1. ✓ | 2. did not | 3. hadn't lost | 4. ✓ | 5. had |
| 6. hadn't ignored | 7. were earning | 8. did | 9. ✓ | 10. were |

192.
1C 2B 3D 4A 5D 6A 7B 8C 9D 10B

193.
1g 2h 3f 4j 5a 6e 7d 8i 9b 10c

- 194.
1. Unless you leave me alone, I'll call the police.
 2. If it's snowing, we don't go to school.
 3. If you press this button, the machine stops.
 4. If you make me some coffee, I'll give you one of my biscuits.
 5. If you see Peter, tell him to be here at 8.00.
 6. Should the news turn out to be true, I'll sell my shares at once.
 7. Unless he passes the final examination, he won't be able to graduate.
 8. If you persist in defying instructions, we'll be forced to act.
 9. Unless you leave an address, we will not be able to contact you.
 10. Provided that you save some money, you will be able to buy a car.

- 195.
1. If you drank less coffee, you would be able to sleep.
 2. I wish I could fly a plane.
 3. I wish I had a video.
 4. I wish you wouldn't shout all the time.
 5. I wish I weren't so tall.
 6. If only I could pass my driving test first time!
 7. I wish you weren't leaving so soon.
 8. I wish he would phone me.
 9. Supposing that you failed your driving test, would you take it again?
 10. If he didn't always have his nose in a book he might sometimes pay attention to what I say.

196.
1A 2B 3C 4D 5D 6C 7B 8A 9C 10B

- 197.
1. If I'd had an umbrella with me, I wouldn't have got wet.
 2. If Jack hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.
 3. Unless you'd told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed.
 4. If only we hadn't eaten all the food.
 5. I wish I had gone to university.
 6. If only I had bought that car.
 7. I wish I had realized how cheap it was.
 8. If the policeman hadn't showed me the way, I wouldn't have found the house.
 9. Had I gone to the party, I'd have met Melanie.
 10. Had you asked (him), he would have lent you his violin.

198.
1c 2j 3f 4i 5d 6g 7b 8a 9e 10h

- 199.
- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. I wish I could speak | 2. If only I could do |
| 3. If only I was/were | 4. I wish you were |
| 5. I wish I could answer | 6. If only the weather was/were |
| 7. If only you loved | 8. I wish you could understand |
| 9. I wish you would stop | 10. If only I was/were better at |

200.
1C 2D 3B 4A 5D 6B 7C 8A 9B 10D

- 201.
- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. had been, wouldn't have left | 2. leave, will miss |
| 3. smoked, would have | 4. had locked, wouldn't have given |
| 5. gets here, will you show | 6. would you say, gave |
| 7. press, will come | 8. had come, would have enjoyed |
| 9. would we do, had | 10. were, would bring |

202.
1e 2g 3b 4a 5h 6c 7i 8f 9j 10d

- 203.
- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 1. would have returned | 2. ✓ | 3. had really wanted |
| 4. didn't break | 5. continue | 6. ✓ |
| 7. ✓ 8. knew | 9. ✓ | 10. goes |

204.
1D 2D 3C 4B 5A 6C 7B 8D 9A 10C

- 205.
1. If we hadn't stayed up all night, we wouldn't be so tired this morning.
 2. If he had been able to answer the questions, he would have passed the exam.
 3. If I had seen you there, I would have said hello.
 4. If I could afford/could have afforded it, I would have been to Hawaii.
 5. If the weather had been good, they would have gone to the beach.
 6. If she had studied English before, she wouldn't be in an introductory class.
 7. If I hadn't been so busy, I would have phoned you.
 8. If two of our players hadn't been injured, they wouldn't have won the game.
 9. If she hadn't lost his tennis racket, they wouldn't be rowing/having a row.
 10. If I weren't afraid of travelling by air, I wouldn't have had to go to America by boat.

- 206.
- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. will die | 2. don't get | 3. don't do | 4. will get |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 5. sent | 6. would help | 7. will be | 8. don't do |
| 9. will happen | 10. doesn't get | 11. isn't | 12. will have |
| 13. will/would be | 14. send/sent | 15. gave | 16. would have |
| 17. knew | 18. would want | 19. hear | 20. will help |
| 21. post | 22. will be | 23. didn't exist | 24. would be |

207.

If 2d 3a 4j 5g 6c 7i 8b 9c 10h

PASSIVE VOICE

208.

1. Amy and Bob were given the job.
2. The work was started last week.
3. The kitchen was finished on Saturday.
4. The president is called every day.
5. A new marketing manager was appointed last Thursday.
6. The castle was built by William the Conqueror in the 11th century.
7. It is believed that Mr Stone was murdered.
8. A notice about the trip was put up on the notice board yesterday.
9. An apple a day is thought to be good for you.
10. The plants was damaged by the cold weather.

209.

1. Romeo and Juliet was written by Shakespeare.
2. I can't give you a ride because my car is being repaired.
3. I was told that, after being/it has been repaired, it will be as good as new.
4. It is thought that many diseases are caused by smoking cigarettes.
5. We were told to arrive by noon, but we were delayed.
6. It was announced by the company president that large profits had been made.

210.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| 1. was arrested | 2. were instructed | 3. is thought |
| 4. was revved | 5. were carried, was allowed | 6. are discovered |
| 7. were sent | 8. was completed, is/has been equipped | |
| 9. was being repaired, was given | 10. had been imprisoned, were released | |

211.

1. The bedroom was being done on Friday.
2. The living room is being painted now.
3. The ceiling is going to be painted pink.
4. The other members are being called by John.
5. The documents were being delivered to the department by Martha.

272

6. The suspects were being followed by the police.
7. The new airport is going to be opened by the major.
8. If you can't drive, who is your car going to be driven by?
9. All the witnesses are being interviewed by the police.
10. David's going to be given a big surprise.

212.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. was built | 2. is regarded | 3. have been made |
| 4. was built | 5. has not been changed | 6. is owned |
| 7. has been used | 8. is being built | |

213.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. has been caused | 2. passed | 3. burst | 4. were rescued | 5. received |
| 6. reached | 7. were blocked | 8. were brought | 9. is being done | 10. said |

214.

1A 2D 3C 4C 5A 6C 7B 8C 9B 10B

215.

1. The walls have been painted green.
2. The work will be finished next week.
3. The amendment has been repealed by the other members.
4. The information had been received by the delegates before the recess.
5. The supplies for this class should be bought by the teacher.
6. Mr Watson will be called tonight.
7. Considerable damage has been caused by the fire.
8. The papers will have been received by John by tomorrow.
9. Nothing has been decided yet.
10. Your hair is long, it ought to be cut.

216.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. has had a burglar alarm fitted | 2. will have had the statements checked |
| 3. had had the room cleaned | 4. has had it repainted |
| 5. had her wallet stolen | 6. have had the ladder mended |
| 7. has/must have had it dyed | 8. can't have/hasn't had it washed |
| 9. had my baby vaccinated | 10. will have him arrested |

217.

1C 2D 3B 4D 5B 6B 7A 8B 9A 10B

218.

- | | | |
|---|---|---------------------------|
| 1. would be caught | 2. be controlled | 3. cannot/must not be put |
| 4. will be/has been let | 5. will be/is being/is going to be introduced | |
| 6. has been given/will be given/was given | | |

18-BTNPTA

273

7. will be ordered 8. are invited, will be given
9. has been received/is received, will be processed, will be sent
10. will be released/are being released

219.
1. been given 2. had been burgled 3. was/has been caused 4. have
5. have been made/will be/were made 6. have been/were selected
7. have been settled 8. has been redecorated
9. has been given, is now being sought 10. is spoken, is being overtaken

220.
1A 2C 3A 4B 5D 6A 7B 8C 9D 10B

221.
1. was built 2. started 3. were sent 4. went
5. sank 6. was attacked 7. died 8. was seen
9. was made 10. failed 11. was forgotten 12. were made
13. were brought 14. was lifted 15. saw 16. was taken

222.
1. The technology was borrowed from other fields by the medical profession.
2. The surgeons had a TV screen installed in the operating theatre.
3. Emergency plans, later abandoned, were drawn up to build new cities.
4. Plans had to be made for extra places in schools in the 1990s.
5. The first scheme was given our approval.
6. Our approval was given the first scheme.
7. Dynamite was invented by Alfred Nobel.
8. The Crown Prince was thought at first/was at first thought to have been attacked.
9. His speech was considered (to be/to have been) one of the best.
10. A man was reported to have been helping police with their investigation.
11. It was alleged that the accused had committed fraud.

223.
1. Engine interiors no longer need/have to be taken apart to be checked/for checking.
2. In future, patients might be able to have their operations performed by remote control.
3. The welfare benefits in this country must be paid for those at work.
4. Population forecasts have often been proved wrong by unexpected demographic changes.
5. Television couldn't have been invented by Marconi.
6. All our housework could one day be done by robots.
7. No universally acceptable substitute for the petrol engine has yet been found.
8. New uses for computers are being found all the time.
9. A 3-D TV will have been patented by the end of the century.
10. It can't be denied that we made certain mistakes early on.

224.
1C 2D 3B 4A 5C 6B 7A 8D 9C 10D

225.
1. was built 2. were/had been built 3. were sold
4. has been made 5. be bought 6. are used/have been used
7. be used 8. is kept 9. are done
10. be told 11. be done 12. are heard/have been heard
13. are made 14. to be destroyed 15. was caused/had been caused
16. are stolen 17. have been sold 18. is being made
19. are done/will be done

INDIRECT SPEECH

226.
1. told 2. said 3. tell 4. speak 5. said
6. tell 7. say 8. speak 9. talking 10. tell

227.
1. Steve warned Mike not to touch the electric wires.
2. Janet asked her sister not to tell anyone the news.
3. Henry told his wife not to drive so fast.
4. The guide asked us to remove our shoes before entering.
5. He told Mary not to interrupt him when he was meditating.
6. She instructed me to switch on, then (to) wait for two minutes.
7. The officer ordered the sergeant to take the man to the cells.
8. My mother told me not to forget to write her a letter every week.
9. Carol told Peter not to make so much noise.
10. Mary warned her friend not to tell anyone or (s)he'd be sorry.

228.
1. Peter invited Nick to stay for lunch.
2. Tim advised Martin to see a doctor.
3. Pat reminded Jane to post the letter.
4. Mrs Robinson asked Justin to put the plates in the dishwasher.
5. The travel agent told Mrs Brown to send the documents to the embassy.
6. The student asked her tutor to sign the certificate for her.
7. She asked me to shut the door.
8. Sue advised Richard to go by train.
9. Tom invited me to have a cup of coffee with him.
10. The teacher advised the pupils to study harder for the final exam.

229.

1. He said that he was going to the town with his father.
2. The boss warned him if he was late the next day he was going to sack him.
3. The boy protested that he hadn't broken the window.
4. Julia insisted that she was going to change/on changing the wheel on the car herself.
5. She said that they always met for lunch on Fridays.
6. The doctor told Mr Brown that he was suffering from stress.
7. Tracy confided to her friend that she had decided to become a psychologist.
8. They agreed that it was certainly essential to take a long-term view of the situation.
9. Janet said that she was taking the 5.30 train the following/next evening.
10. Diana told me that she liked that hotel very much.

230.

1. Tom said that he had given up smoking and had not had a cigarette for a month.
2. He boasted that they had an amazing new computer in their office.
3. Jim told his parents that the canoe had sprung a leak and would need to be repaired.
4. The voice over the loudspeaker announced that Flight 203, from Brisbane to Sydney, had been cancelled.
5. They confirmed that food aid had not been getting through.
6. It was reported that over 40 million pounds had been received during the previous ten days.
7. It was denied that there had been any lack of co-operation with relief workers on the spots.
8. The speaker insisted that a rapid increase in the birth rate had turned a crisis into a disaster.
9. He told me that he had been learning English for seven years then.
10. The man said that a lot of houses have been built there since 2000.

231.

1. He said he had never flown before.
2. Sam boasted that he had passed his driving test first time.
3. She grumbled that the company had spent a fortune on it and it was always breaking down.
4. She told them that the engineer had been called three times the previous week.
5. She said she had seen him the previous morning.
6. Alice said that when she was in Rome, she bumped into her next-door neighbour.
7. According to the report, donations were received from individuals and organizations.
8. Susan told them that she had left her umbrella there two days before.
9. Tom told me that he had seen her when he had been crossing the street the day before.
10. My neighbour said that they had moved there three years before.

232.

1. He said that he would do the same himself if he were in my place.
2. Robin suggested that Sarah should buy them the picture as a wedding present.

276

3. He told her that she would win if she practised every day.
4. The producer said they wouldn't be able to record that afternoon.
5. She complained that she couldn't work because her typewriter wasn't working properly.
6. It was announced that the plane would be taking off in a few minutes.
7. She suggested that Peter should try to be more punctual.
8. The police officer told Jack that he couldn't park there.
9. Peter told Helen that he would see her in the morning.
10. Paul told the dry-cleaners that the trousers had to be ready that afternoon.

233.

1. She asked him if he had worked before.
2. She asked him if he could work on Saturday.
3. The boy asked if he could open the window.
4. Laura asked her boss if she could have a day off.
5. I asked John if I could borrow his tennis racket.
6. Adam asked Joanna if she was going to the party that night.
7. Gillian asked Sam if she could borrow his pen.
8. Sharon asked her mother if she knew where her tennis racquet was.
9. Miss Payne asked her secretary if Ronald had been at work the day before.
10. Tom asked Paul if he had read the article about Prince Diana.

234.

1. She asked him where he lived.
2. She asked him why he wanted the job.
3. She asked him how he (had) heard about it.
4. She asked him how much he expected to earn.
5. She asked him when he could start.
6. Tim asked Frances what time it was.
7. She asked him how long he had worked for the/that company.
8. She asked me why he had been working very hard.
9. I asked him/her why he/she had done it when I had told him/her not to.
10. She asked why I/he hadn't come at ten o'clock.

235.

1. Sam asked his mother what she was doing with the tool box.
2. Maria told Sam not to touch the electric cord.
3. Sam said he wished his mother wouldn't shout at him.
4. Maria apologized, explaining/and explained that she hadn't wanted Sam to hurt himself.
5. Sam asked his mother what it/the cord was for.
6. Maria replied that she was trying to mend the CD player.
7. Sam wanted to know what had happened to it.
8. Maria told him that somebody had knocked it off the shelf a couple of days before and it wouldn't work.

277

9. Sam insisted (angrily) that he hadn't done it/ Sam immediately pointed out that he hadn't done it.

236.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 1. had come | 2. had been living | 3. had been | 4. was working |
| 5. enjoyed | 6. wasn't | 7. would go | 8. had been thinking |
| 9. hadn't seen | 10. had said | | |

237.

1. She persuaded me to type this letter out for her.
2. She allowed me to use her typewriter.
3. The actor confessed that he had been nervous.
4. Vanessa doubted whether Liverpool would win.
5. She reminded me to hand in my work that evening.
6. He regretted that I couldn't make it to the party the night before.
7. He assured me that I would manage if I remained calm.
8. She insisted that I (should) visit them at the weekend.
9. She claimed that she'd have helped me with my work if she had had more time.
10. He suggested that we (should) organize our time more effectively.

INFINITIVES & GERUNDS

238.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. to allow | 2. to let | 3. to hide | 4. to sit | 5. to return |
| 6. to pay | 7. to understand | 8. to be | 9. to deport | 10. to meet |
| 11. to pay | 12. to go | 13. to write | | |

239.

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. filling | 2. buying | 3. showing | 4. entering | 5. crossing |
| 6. cooking | 7. giving | 8. having | 9. going | 10. playing |

240.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. to do | 2. to be cleaned | 3. to take | 4. washing/to be washed |
| 5. to be dry-cleaned | 6. to carry | 7. clearing/to be cleared | |

241.

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. to phone | 2. to come | 3. to rain | 4. to wonder |
| 5. to make | 6. to buy | 7. to say | 8. to understand |
| 9. phoning | 10. leaving | 11. lending | 12. seeing |
| 13. taking | 14. supporting | | |

242.

- 1C 2C 3B 4D 5A 6D 7B 8C 9A 10D

243.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. to post | 2. passing | 3. to bring | 4. worrying | 5. to pick |
| 6. to remember | 7. having | 8. to buy | 9. putting | 10. chaining |

244.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Polly forgot to do her homework. | 2. The boys went on playing cards. |
| 3. The driver stopped to buy some cigarettes. | 4. Laura didn't even try to move the piano. |
| 5. I always remember meeting Mrs Thatcher. | 6. The shelves need painting. |
| 7. Graham didn't mean to be rude to Louise. | 8. Kevin regrets missing his chance of a prize. |

245.

1. The boss insists on everyone being in the office at nine o'clock.
2. He doesn't allow us to make personal phone calls.
3. He's stopped us having coffee breaks.
4. He's always telling us to work hard.
5. He doesn't agree with people working at their own speed.
6. He quite often wants me to work late.
7. I wouldn't mind him/his asking me occasionally.
8. He seems to expect me to spend my life at the office.
9. I don't like him to watch/his watching me all the time.
10. He hates people being friendly with him.

246.

- 1D 2B 3C 4A 5B 6C 7A 8D 9B 10C

247.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|----------|------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. to spend | 2. lying | 3. to get | 4. staying | 5. to sit |
| 6. touring | 7. to go | 8. driving | 9. to go | 10. to spend |

248.

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. to be coming | 2. to be interviewed | 3. to be photographed |
| 4. to be improving | 5. to be sitting | 6. to have taken |
| 7. to be rebuilt | 8. to have completed | 9. to be driving |

249.

- 1A 2C 3B 4D 5D 6C 7B 8A 9C 10D

250.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. remembers spending | 2. regret to say |
| 3. need cleaning/to be cleaned | 4. don't need to explain/needn't explain |
| 5. tried to remember | 6. Try not to make |
| 7. remember to phone | 8. regrets not working/not having worked |
| 9. tried fiddling | 10. needs looking /to be looked |

251.

- | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. smoking | 2. to give | 3. to stop | 4. smoking | 5. eating |
| 6. to go | 7. to tell | 8. to say | 9. pulling | 10. doing |
| 11. giving | 12. to become | 13. to have | | |

252.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| 1. Taking | 2. mind being | 3. sightseeing | 4. losing |
| 5. being | 6. ask me to leave | 7. made him complete | |
| 8. Try not to keep | 9. to learn | 10. want you to go | |

253.

- 1B 2C 3A 4D 5D 6B 7D 8C 9A 10C

254.

- 1c 2f 3i 4e 5b 6h 7a 8d 9j 10g

255.

- 1A 2D 3C 4B 5B 6C 7D 8A 9B 10C

256.

1. She admitted driving too fast through the town.
2. He offered to lend me some money.
3. She stopped smoking three years ago.
4. We stopped to buy some petrol at a service station.
5. I forgot to buy food for dinner, so we had to go out.
6. But I remembered to feed the cat.
7. I tried to learn the piano lessons for years, but I was never very good.
8. Jack denied cheating in the exam.
9. I couldn't help laughing at Wendy's letter.
10. I regret to tell you that you have not been appointed to the post.
11. Luckily Peter avoided paying a fine.
12. I suggest taking the train.
13. Derek appears to have forgotten the meeting.
14. My neighbour threatened to call the police.

257.

- 1B 2D 3A 4C 5D 6B 7C 8B 9A 10D

COMPARISONS

258.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. faster | 2. more colourful | 3. better | 4. prettier |
| 5. the better | 6. less impressive | 7. much | 8. more famous |
| 9. taller | 10. older | 11. easier | 12. More |

280

13. better

14. worse

15. more

259.

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. happiest | 2. best | 3. farthest | 4. least |
| 5. tallest | 6. creamiest | 7. most | 8. largest |

260.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. as | 2. more | 3. as | 4. more | 5. as |
| 6. more | 7. more | 8. than | 9. than | 10. less |
| 11. than | 12. than | 13. more | 14. as | 15. less |
| 16. as | 17. than | 18. than | | |

261.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Yes, but Tokyo is busier. | 2. Yes, but cats are more intelligent. |
| 3. Yes, but Thailand is hotter. | 4. Yes, but Chinese is more difficult. |
| 5. Yes, but Manchester United is better. | 6. Yes, but <i>Bright Eyes</i> is more beautiful. |
| 7. Yes, but frogs are uglier. | 8. Yes, but there are more people in India. |

262.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. as her friend | 2. as you like | 3. as steady as | 4. as I had |
| 5. as Hugo | 6. as yours | 7. is better than | 8. higher than |
| 9. was friendlier than | 10. happier than anybody else in her family | | |

263.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. thinner | 2. earlier than | 3. more important than |
| 4. wider than | 5. higher than | 6. more reliable |
| 7. more crowded than | 8. more easily | 9. more interested |
| 10. more serious than | 11. more peaceful than | 12. more confident |

264.

1. He's the tallest person I've ever known.
2. That's the nicest thing that anyone has ever said to me.
3. A Being 727 holds fewer passengers than a 747.
4. I think coffee is better than tea.
5. Mexico is a warmer country than Canada.
6. The population of Korea is larger/greater than that of Taiwan.
7. More rain falls in Athens than in Tokyo in January.
8. Buenos Aires is cooler than New York in July, but drier/ Buenos Aires isn't as warm as New York in July, but it's drier.
9. About the same amount of rain falls in London and New York.
10. In London summer nights are much cooler than Cairo.
11. AIDS is the most frightening illness you/anyone can imagine.
12. Not as many people die from flu as 50 years ago.

281

265.

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------|-------------------|
| 1. higher | 2. better | 3. most expensive | 4. highest | 5. more difficult |
| 6. biggest | 7. most important | 8. easier | 9. bigger | 10. more exciting |
| 11. more convenient | 12. worse | 13. best | | |

266.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1. The more... the more | 2. The more difficult it is, the harder | 3. than you |
| 4. tougher than | 5. the most | 6. by far the best |
| 7. much/far/a lot taller | 8. like the one | 9. as mine |
| 10. as beautiful as | 11. like her mother | 12. the same price as |
| 13. as intelligent as | 14. style as Bob's | 15. colour as mine |

267.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. the youngest | 2. better | 3. as expensive | 4. the cheapest |
| 5. more slowly | 6. farther/further | 7. the worst | 8. the most boring |
| 9. more beautifully | 10. less angry | 11. more comfortable | 12. more quickly, faster |

268.

1. It is the largest passenger ship in the world.
2. It is the driest country in the world.
3. It is the fastest passenger plane in the world.
4. It is the tallest tower in the world.
5. It is the coldest place in the world.
6. It is biggest/largest desert in the world.
7. It is the highest mountain in the world.
8. It is the city with the biggest/largest population in the world.
9. It is the wettest country in the world.
10. It is the busiest airport in the world.

269.

1. Their children don't behave as well as ours do.
2. Our garden isn't as large as theirs.
3. He earns as much in a week as I do in a month.
4. The food they served wasn't as nice as I expected it to be.
5. I didn't have as much champagne as Henry.
6. The party didn't go on as long as I thought it would.
7. There weren't as many people at the party as he anticipated.
8. Sheila didn't behave as dreadfully as she usually does.
9. She didn't wear as much jewelry as she usually does.
10. I don't see as much of her as I used to.
11. The children didn't enjoy the evening as much as we did.
12. London isn't as hot as Cairo in July.
13. There aren't as many rainy days in Paris as (there are) in New York.
14. A sprain wrist is not as serious as a broken leg.
15. Not as many people die from flu as 50 years ago.

270.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. a bit more tired | 2. the merrier | 3. ever had |
| 4. slowest | 5. than | 6. the poorest people |
| 7. the hottest and the most | 8. the biggest building | 9. doctor that |
| 10. the most elegant | 11. the most densely | 12. the fastest runner on the team |
| 13. the best ice cream | 14. the worst grade | |

RELATIVE CLAUSES

271.

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. which/that | 2. who/that | 3. that/which | 4. who/that |
| 5. who/that | 6. that/which | 7. that/which | 8. who/that |

272.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|----------|----------|
| 1. which | 2. who | 3. who | 4. which | 5. whose |
| 6. who | 7. which | 8. who | 9. whose | 10. who |

273.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. which | 2. which | 3. who | 4. whose |
| 5. whom | 6. who | 7. which | |

274.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. where | 2. who | 3. that/who | 4. when/that | 5. when/that |
| 6. which | 7. where | 8. whose | 9. which | 10. which |

275.

1. Islamabad, which I visited recently, has grown into a very large city over the past ten years.
2. Everyone who knew him said that he was hard-working and trustworthy.
3. Professor Dupont, who is an expert on economics, came to give us a lecture on the national economy.
4. The book I'm thinking of is the one which David gave you.
5. The Mrs Smith who's coming to tea is the Mrs Smith whose son you know.
6. Mr Smith, whose son you know, is coming to tea.
7. My boss, whose work takes him to a lot of countries, has decided he needs an assistant in London.
8. My grandmother, who was an extraordinary woman, lived to the age of a hundred and fifteen.

276.

- 1D 2B 3C 4A 5D 6C 7B 8A 9C 10D

277.

1. who/that
2. ✓/that/which
3. why/✓
4. which (add a comma after concert)
5. where
6. whose
7. who/that
8. why/✓
9. when (add a comma after winter)
10. whose

278.

1. who
2. which/that
3. which
4. which
5. which/that
6. which/that
7. who
8. which
9. which
10. which
11. which/that
12. which
13. which/that
14. who
15. which

279.

1. I called to Luis, who waved at me when he saw me.
2. The detective who/that solved the mystery knew all the answers.
3. I met an old friend who/that told me all about a book he'd just read.
4. Len, who has finally found a new job, is giving a big party.
5. The person who/that gave me a job is an old school friend.
6. Pete, who helped me study for my history exam, is my cousin.
7. The girls who/that were hungry decided to have a meal.
8. This is Brenda, who lives upstairs.
9. The person who/that found the money was given a reward.
10. Jane is the woman who/that is going to China next year.

280.

1. Craig, whom Len has invited, is hoping that Donna will be at the party.
2. The new manager at the plastics factory, whom no-one likes, wants Donna to work late.
3. The woman at number 35, whom Donna spoke to yesterday, is behaving rather strangely.
4. Brenda is the friend with whom I went on holiday.
5. The person about whom I told you is at the door.
6. That is the man from whom I bought my car.
7. Frank is the man (whom/that) we are going to nominate for the office of treasurer.
8. That is the boy to whom I lent my bicycle.
9. Sheila Brown, whom I have long admired, is giving a concert at Webley Hall.
10. The Earls of Euston, after whom Euston Station is named, were landowners in London.

281.

1A 2B 3C 4D 5B 6C 7A 8C 9D 10A

282.

Mary, who had been in a deep sleep, was woken suddenly by a strange noise, which seemed to come from outside her window. She sat up, startled. Then she froze, as she saw that the window, which she had locked securely the night before, was wide open. With a shock, she remembered that the servants, whom she had laughed at only that afternoon for being

superstitious, had all left, and that she was all alone in the house. A floor-board creaked behind her. Turning, she saw an old woman, who was dressed entirely in black and whose mouth was twisted into a toothless grin. Suddenly, she realized who it was. It was her grandmother, who had died exactly a year before.

283.

1. The car which/that had been stolen was found at the airport.
2. A simplified edition, which is shorter than the original, is easier to read.
3. The disco, which took place at the club last weekend, kept people awake half the night.
4. He has arranged a staff meeting, which starts at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
5. Casablanca, which is my favourite film, was made in 1942.
6. Her book, which was published last year, became a best seller.
7. I live in Croydon, which is near London.
8. The car which/that was in good condition wasn't expensive.
9. Tom bought a camera that/which has three lenses.
10. Janet wants a typewriter which/that self-corrects.

284.

1. I'm going to the mountains for my vacation, which I'm really looking forward to this.
2. You'd better rewrite this letter, which you wrote too quickly and carelessly.
3. New York, which I'd love to visit one day, is a wonderful city.
4. Science fiction, which some people love and others hate, are about the future and space travel.
5. The book (which/that) you recommended to me was very good.
6. The new club in Jubilee Road, which everyone is talking about, is very popular with young people.
7. The clothes (which/that) she was wearing were old and dirty.
8. The computer (which/that) I bought on sale doesn't work.

285.

1. Ms Fortune, whose body was found in the cellar, was a writer.
2. Craig also wants to borrow some money from Gordon, whose cycle repair business is doing very well.
3. Robin, whose wife has left him, is explaining his problems to Harriet.
4. The woman whose husband you were rude to is upset now.
5. This is Mr Smith, whose son Bill plays in our team.
6. Jack, whose car had broken down, had to take a bus.
7. That's the boy whose sister sits behind me at school.
8. Bill, whose typewriter had broken, had to use a pencil.

286.

1. She had invited a hundred guests, none of whom I knew.
2. Growling in the corner were two big dogs, both of which looked extremely dangerous.
3. The manager called in my new colleagues, one or two of whom I had met already.

4. There were several large holes in the road, three of which had to be repaired urgently.
5. There were some vegetables left over, a few of which I was able to use in some soup for supper.
6. The lectures were attended by over two hundred students, few of whom completed the assignments set by the professor.
7. He comes from a large family, all of whom now live in Australia.
8. We have many rooms in our house, several of which have not been used for ages.
9. I have two sisters, both of whom I like very much.
10. I have several horses, none of which is more than two years old.

287.

1. My wife, who works as a journalist, is an excellent cook.
2. My daughter, who works in New York, is getting married soon. (*I have one daughter*)
My daughter who works in New York is getting married soon. (*I have more than one daughter*)
3. The engagement which was announced last week came as a bit of a shock.
4. The man she's getting married to is an artist.
5. It doesn't seem to me that artists are the kind of people who can be relied on to provide an income.
6. Artists who are unproductive are not much use to anyone. (*Only those artists who are unproductive, not all artists*)
Artists, who are unproductive, are not much use to anyone. (*All artists are unproductive*)
7. My daughter has been married once before, which means she should know what she's doing.
8. Her previous marriage, which ended in divorce, was to a Spaniard.
9. Her mother and father-in-law, who were always exceptionally kind, were very upset when the marriage broke down.
10. The children who spoke Spanish went to live with their father after the divorce. (*Not all the children, only those that spoke Spanish*)
The children, who spoke Spanish, went to live with their father after the divorce. (*All the children spoke Spanish*)

288.

1B 2C 3D 4A 5C 6A 7D 8B 9A 10C

289.

1. George is the man chosen to represent the committee at the convention.
2. All of the money accepted has already been released.
3. The papers on the table belong to Peter.
4. The man brought to the police station confessed to the crime.
5. The girl drinking coffee is Mary Allen.
6. John's wife, a professor, has written several papers on this subject.
7. The man talking to the policeman is my uncle.

286

8. The book on the top shelf is the one that I need.
9. The number of students counted is quite high.
10. Leo Evans, a doctor, eats in this restaurant every day.

290.

1. a. She was only interested in going to Strasbourg, and let other trains pass until the Strasbourg train arrived.
b. She took the first train to arrive. It happened to be going to Strasbourg.
2. a. Everybody was caught unawares because they hadn't seen the forecast.
b. Only some people (the ones who hadn't seen the forecast) were caught unawares.
3. a. All the food was bad, so we couldn't eat it.
b. Some of the food was bad, so we couldn't eat that part.
4. a. I only have one cousin. He/She happens to live in New Zealand.
b. I have several cousins. One of them lives in New Zealand.
5. a. They only picked some of the fruit - the fruit that had ripened.
b. They picked all the fruit. By the way, it had all ripened.

291.

1. That is the new doctor who/that has come to live in our town.
2. That is Peter, who is the head boy of the school.
3. The person who/that made the arrangements was Karen.
4. Mr Perkins, who is a bit deaf, couldn't hear the phone.
5. Our teacher, who lives ten miles away, stayed at home during the bus strike.
6. The person who/that got everything ready was Kevin.
7. The person who knows all about it is the secretary.
8. I went to stay with the Watson family, who were friends of my mother's.
9. The book I lent you was written by a friend of mine who/that lives in France.
10. Carol, who is a vegetarian, enjoyed the meal I cooked for her last week.

292.

1. James wrote an article which/that indicated that he disliked the president.
2. Toledo, which is a very fine city to visit, gets extremely hot in summer.
3. The price of petrol, which rose only last month, is going up again.
4. The letters (which/that) I asked you to type for me are full of careless errors.
5. The record (which/that) I told you about, which has been produced by a completely new method, will be released next week.
6. The bus which/that goes up Edward Avenue doesn't stop at the railway station.
7. They cut down the tree which/that had died.
8. Crossford, which has only two hundred inhabitants, is miles from anywhere.
9. St Michael's Church, which dates from the 14th century, is a fine building.
10. The road which/that leads to the farm isn't suitable for cars.

293.

1D 2B 3A 4C 5C 6A 7D 8B 9A 10C

287

294.

1. This is the bank from which we borrowed money.
2. Is this the book (which/that) you borrowed?
3. The present (which/that) you gave me is very useful.
4. This is the book (which/that) I have been looking for all year.
5. The tent (which/that) you lent me was damaged in a storm (which/that) you heard on the news.
6. It was her dream cottage (which/that) she had always wanted.
7. I picked up the paper on which Richard had written his address.
8. The office to which Gail led the way had windows on three sides.

295.

1. The doctor is with a patient whose leg was broken in an accident.
2. The zoo's most famous giant panda, whose name was Chi Chi, has died.
3. The person whose suitcase got lost was Colin.
4. Mandy, whose name was missed off the list, wasn't very pleased.
5. My grandfather, whose house is at the top of a steep hill, is the fittest person I know.
6. The choir, whose members are all over 60, is touring Norway next month.
7. Alderson wrote a number of books about British coal miners, in whose history he specialized.
8. The woman whose jewels were stolen was interviewed by a police officer who was staying in the same hotel.

296.

1E 2I 3C 4J 5H 6A 7F 8B 9D 10G

297.

1. The postman, who realized I was on holiday, left the parcel you sent me next door.
2. My friend Albert, whose car was stolen last week, has decided to buy a motor-bike.
3. The agreement which/that was signed yesterday ended six months of negotiation.
4. The boy (whom/that) I was sitting next to in the exam told me the answers.
5. Diamond, which is a very hard substance, is used for cutting.
6. She took me for a ride on the motorbike (which/that) she'd recently bought.
7. The wallet I lost last week was found by a workman who/that was digging a hole in the street outside our house.
8. The ship, which had ignored the warning messages sent to it, hit an iceberg and sank.
9. My neighbours, whose three small children make a lot of noise, never apologize.
10. He set about cleaning off the dirt which/that was covering the floor and walls.

ADVERB CLAUSES

298.

1A 2B 3C 4B 5C 6B

288

7A 8A 9A 10B 11C 12C

299.

1. Though he was a hard worker, he was not praised.
2. Even though he worked diligently, he was not promoted.
3. Since Sid was a vegetarian, he avoided eating meat.
4. As it's raining again, we'll have to stay at home.
5. Since he had not paid his bill, his electricity was cut off.
6. Samantha lent \$1,000 to him because he was a good friend.
7. John didn't study hard, whereas Mary studied conscientiously.
8. Because I was ill for six months, I lost my job.
9. Because of my illness, I couldn't go to the football match.
10. Although he hated coffee, he accepted a cup from Mrs Jones out of politeness.
11. I don't usually read novels. However, I enjoyed his latest novel.
12. Although he was not the ideal person, we gave him the job.

300.

1. While I was living in Darwin, I endured dozens of cyclones.
2. Once I lived in Darwin, I knew what a real cyclone was.
3. I'll wait here till the bus arrives.
4. Until I see that your work is finished, I won't let you out to play.
5. Whenever I see Evelyn I feel envious.
6. As long as Tamate was motivated, he continued to enjoy success.

301.

1. After I left school, I went to America.
2. After he did military service, he went to university.
3. While you were reading a newspaper, I was writing a letter.
4. As I get older, I get more optimistic.
5. Mary always arrives just as I start work.
6. Don't forget to signal when you are turning right.
7. Once you've passed your test, I'll let you drive my car.
8. I've known her since we were at school together.
9. You're not going home till you've finished that report.
10. Not until I left home did I begin to understand how important my family was.

302.

1A 2A 3C 4C 5A 6C 7C 8C 9A 10C

303.

1. I'm putting it in the oven now so that it'll be ready by 7 o'clock.
2. We send them monthly reports in order that they may have full information about progress.
3. Send the letters express so that she can get it before Tuesday.
4. They held the meeting on a Saturday in order that everybody should be free to attend.

19-BTNPTA

289

304.

1. (a) Dave is driving fast *so that* he'll arrive on time.
(b) Dave is driving fast *because* he's late.
2. (a) Louise wore a pink dress *so that* Ann would recognize her at the airport.
(b) Louise wore a pink dress *because* it was her favourite colour.
3. (a) Antoine has bought a computer *so that* he can play games on it.
(b) Antoine has bought a computer *because* he needs it for his work.
4. (a) Ben has put nets on the window *so that* the mosquitoes can't come in.
(b) Ben has put nets on the window *because* there are so many insects.
5. (a) Daisy eats green vegetables *so that* she can get enough vitamins.
(b) Daisy eats green vegetables *because* they're good for her teeth.

305.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-----------|---------|----------|
| 1. so | 2. such a | 3. such a | 4. such | 5. so |
| 6. so | 7. so | 8. such a | 9. so | 10. such |

306.

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. so | 2. because | 3. Although | 4. such | 5. although |
| 6. because | 7. so | 8. Although | 9. because | 10. such |

307.

- | | | | | |
|------------|-------|----------|-------|--------------|
| 1. because | 2. so | 3. Since | 4. so | 5. so |
| 6. because | 7. so | 8. where | 9. as | 10. wherever |

308.

- | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| 1. because | 2. because of | 3. until | 4. Although | 5. since |
| 6. when | 7. once | 8. so | 9. where | 10. as |

309.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 (whereas) c | 2 (so) e | 3 (because) f | 4 (although) b | 5 (so that) h |
| 6 (since) a | 7 (as soon as) g | 8 (when) d | 9 (nevertheless) j | 10 (while) i |

310.

1. It was such an amusing film that I couldn't stop laughing.
2. People still want cars although they cause pollution.
3. I was often lonely because I was the only child.
4. The driver stopped so that the children could cross the road.
5. I was so amused that I couldn't stop laughing.
6. Tom didn't notice the sign even though it was right in front of him.
7. It was such a cold day that I didn't want to go out.
8. I told Peter to hurry as we had to reach the village before night.
9. Mark repaired the roof so that the rain wouldn't come in.
10. The play was disappointing because it was badly acted and too long.

311.

- | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1B | 2C | 3A | 4D | 5B | 6A |
| 7C | 8C | 9D | 10B | 11A | 12D |

SENTENCE CONNECTORS

312.

1. To lend money to friends may sometimes succeed. *However*, it often leads to disaster.
2. I don't like the job much. *Still*, the money is OK.
3. Arranged marriages are common in many Middle Eastern countries. In the West, *on the other hand*, they are unusual.
4. The train was an hour late. *In spite of this*, I managed to get to the meeting in time.
5. George studied until 3 o'clock last night. *However*, he is going to bed early tonight.
6. The water in the lake was cold. *Therefore*, we didn't go swimming.
7. He has a cold. *Also*, he has a cough.
8. He had two loaves of bread for breakfast. *Besides*, he drank two glasses of milk.
9. You can go by plane. *However*, if that scares you, you can take the train.
10. He worked very hard; *nevertheless*, he didn't get any reward.

313.

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1B | 2A | 3C | 4A | 5C | 6B | 7A | 8C | 9C | 10A |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|

314.

1. My sister eats meat. *However*, my brother is a strict vegetarian.
2. Modern computers occupy much less space. *However*, early computers took up whole rooms.
3. Tennis players often behave badly without losing points. *By contrast*, football players are immediately sent off the field.
4. Tennis players often behave badly without losing points. *On the other hand*, they are sometimes fined for bad behaviour.
5. I have never heard John say anything bad about you. *On the contrary*, he's always spoken well of you.
6. Working from home is comfortable. *By contrast*, travelling every day to an office is tiring.

315.

1. The ship suffered damage in a storm. *Consequently*, it had to go into port for repairs.
2. I'll be out all day. *Therefore*, I'll leave your lunch in the oven.
3. He got US dollars for the journey. *In addition*, he got travellers' cheques.
4. We shall provide hotel accommodation. *In addition*, we shall cover travel expenses.
5. He is too old. *Besides*, he isn't interested in the job.
6. I didn't support his view. *On the contrary*, I disagree strongly.

316.

1B 2B 3C 4C 5A 6A 7B 8B

317.

1B 2C 3C 4B 5A 6C
7A 8B 9C 10A 11C 12B

318.

1C 2A 3B 4D 5A 6A 7B 8C

319.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. Therefore, a | In other words, b | In contrast, c |
| 2. However, a | Otherwise, b | Alternatively, c |
| 3. Consequently, a | However, b | In addition, c |
| 4. As a result, a | Still, b | Otherwise, c |
| 5. On the other hand, a | Therefore, b | The thing is, c |
| 6. In short, a | Therefore, b | By contrast, c |

320.

1. We expected to reach our destination by midday. *In fact*, we thought we might arrive even earlier.
2. The weatherman had promised sunny weather, *but in fact*, it rained all day.
3. Linda was blamed for the accident, *but in fact*, it wasn't her fault at all.
4. His book did not sell well. *In fact*, the publishers considered dropping it from their list.
5. We shall have to work with each other, *but in fact*, we don't get on well.

321.

1. The disease is serious. *Indeed*, it is fatal in over 60% of cases.
2. Muller has developed a vaccine for it. *Indeed*, his work gives some cause for hope.
3. At first Muller claimed to have found a cure, *but in fact*, further research showed such claims were exaggerated.
4. Cases of the disease will increase throughout the 1990s. *Indeed*, it may become a world health problem in the 21st century.
5. Webb is a fine athlete. *Indeed*, he is the best athlete in these games.

322.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. Moreover | 2. For example | 3. Besides | 4. However | 5. Although |
| 6. so | 7. On the other hand | 8. as | 9. In fact | |

INVERSIONS

323.

1. Never before had she been so happy.
2. Never have I heard such nonsense!
3. Never in my life have I seen such a mess.
4. Never have our profits been higher than/as high as they are this year.
5. Never again would she trust her own judgement when buying antiques.
6. Never before had the firm laid on such a sumptuous celebration.
7. Never have I come across such a horrifying film.
8. Never have I been so moved by a Shakespeare production.
9. Never for one moment did I think the consequences would be so far-reaching.
10. Never before had I tasted such a wonderful combination of flavours.

324.

1. Rarely does one find good service these days.
2. Rarely has she travelled more than fifty miles from her village.
3. Rarely has a military campaign been fought with so little loss of life.
4. Seldom is the interior of the island visited by tourists.
5. Seldom has public borrowing been so high.
6. Seldom had they participated in such a fascinating ceremony.
7. Little did they suspect that the musical was going to be a runaway success.
8. Little did the embassy staff realize that Ted was a secret agent.
9. Little did she realize what would happen to her next.
10. Little did I think that one day I'd be appearing in films rather than just watching them.

325.

1. In no way can Keith be held responsible for the accident.
2. In no way are the children themselves to blame for the disaster.
3. In no way is the existence of extraterrestrial life confirmed by the report.
4. At no time was I shown how to operate the machinery.
5. At no time did he suspect that she was a witch.
6. At no time has the English language not been in a state of change.
7. Under no circumstances will Miss Weaver be offered the job.
8. Under no circumstances should you send money to us by post.
9. Under no circumstances can we exchange tickets.
10. On any account will I go all that way to visit him again.
11. On no account must you lift heavy weights like that again.
12. On no account must this window be unlocked without prior permission.

326.

1. Not only is he your friend, but he's mine too/(he's) also mine.
2. Not only did he book tickets for the afternoon performance but he (also) booked for the evening performance (as well).

3. Not only did burglars steal a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, they also left the flat in an awful mess.
4. Not only was Tony late, but he had left all his books behind.
5. Not only will you enhance your posture but you will (also) improve your acting ability (as well) on this course.
6. Not for one moment is it worth considering his suggestion/is his suggestion worth considering.
7. Not a tear did she shed when the story ended in tragedy.
8. Not once did the manager offer us an apology.
9. Not a sound did she make as she crept upstairs.
10. Not until he retired did he think about having a holiday abroad.

327.

1. Only when I got home did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.
2. Only last week did the Agriculture Minister admit defeat.
3. Only after seeing *Hamlet* on the stage did I understand it.
4. Only after they had finished eating did they get round to business.
5. Only after they waited for twelve hours did their flight leave.
6. Only later did I realize who he was.
7. Only by (using) force could the door be opened.
8. Only when Tom's apologized will I agree.
9. Only when you buy all twelve books at the same time can/will you get the 40% discount.
10. Only by training hard can/will/could you become a good athlete.

328.

1. Should the government be forced into another election, it would be the favourite to win.
2. Should you wish to make an appointment to see Dr Simons, she is available between 9.00 and 11.00.
3. Should you have further problems with your printer, contact your deal for advice.
4. Should you decide to accept the post, you will be expected to start work on 1st April.
5. Should we hear any further news, we will be in touch immediately.
6. Should you wish to take advantage of the offer, kindly tick the box on your order form.
7. Should the film be a box-office success, they may be a sequel.
8. Should you change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.

329.

1. Were the chemicals to leak, a large area of the sea would be contaminated.
2. Were Germany to beat, they would face Italy in the final.
3. Were Mr Morgan still head teacher, he would not permit such bad behaviour.
4. Had you given it in on time, you would have got a high mark.
5. Had she become a lawyer, as her parents wishes, she would have earned a large salary.

6. Had anything gone wrong, I would have been held responsible.
7. Had it not been for Henry, I might not have met you.
8. Had the coast guards been notified, they could have saved the vessels.
9. Had they confirmed by phone, the airline could have warned them.
10. Had it not been for his solicitor's advice, he would have made a serious mistake.

330.

1. No sooner had we stepped outside the front door than it began to rain.
2. No sooner had we started the performance than there was a loud explosion.
3. No sooner had she closed her eyes than she fell asleep.
4. No sooner had he recovered from gastric flu than he went down with bronchitis.
5. No sooner had I gone to bed than someone rang my doorbell.
6. No sooner had Trevor planted the tree than it died.
7. No sooner had I stepped through the door than Judith started asking me questions.
8. No sooner had she put up her umbrella than the rain came down in torrents.
9. Barely had he left the office when/before the telephone started ringing.
10. Barely had he walked into the house when the telephone rang.

331.

1. Scarcely had Karen finished reading *Bleak House* when she started reading *The Pickwick Papers*.
2. Scarcely had the plane taken off when smoke began to appear in the cabin.
3. Scarcely had she put the phone down when it rang again.
4. Scarcely had I begun my solo when there was a noise of breaking glass off-stage.
5. Hardly had we finished dinner when the thunderstorm broke.
6. Hardly had he started driving his new car when he had an accident.
7. Hardly had they arrived on the beach when it started to rain.
8. Hardly had he entered the house when the police arrested him.
9. Hardly had I watered the garden when it began to rain.

332.

1. So afraid was the child that he hid behind the sofa.
2. So appalling was the sight that we reeled back in horror.
3. So surprised was he to be addressed by the Queen that he didn't answer at once.
4. So eager was Julia to move away from Newtown that she sold her house for much less than it was worth.
5. Such was his disgust at her behaviour that he severed all contact with her.
6. Such was his fury that he threw the book across the room.
7. Such was the ignorance of the disease at the time that sufferers were simply told to go to bed and rest.

333.

1. Behind the protesters was a line of police officers.
2. After forty years, the restaurant is still there, as is the man who first ran it.
3. At the end of the village ran a small stream.

4. Round the corner of the street came the bus.
 5. In front of the visitors was a white pillar.
 6. She loved staying in the cottage, as did her friends.
 7. On top of the Acropolis stands the Parthenon.
 8. The European Union is in economic difficulties, as are America and Japan.

334.

1. have I seen 2. would/could 3. must/should/can this 4. could/can
 5. does she play 6. have/had I been 7. should/must 8. has she been
 9. is he 10. have I received

335.

1. did she/anybody realize 2. did they complain 3. had I
 4. had I answered/picked up 5. did I talk 6. was 7. were we
 8. did he lose 9. a long search/chase were 10. had we started

PHRASAL VERBS

336.

1. Come out 2. Get off 3. Come along 4. got into 5. came off
 6. get over 7. come from 8. got up 9. came up 10. get on

337.

- 1B 2D 3C 4A 5B 6B 7C 8C
 9D 10A 11B 12A 13D 14A 15B 16C
 17D 18B 19A 20C 21D 22B 23A 24C 25D

338.

1. found out 2. grew up 3. got up 4. kept on 5. heard from
 6. threw away 7. gave up 8. read through 9. came across 10. caught up

339.

1. We have run out of milk.
 2. It took me a long time to get over my illness.
 3. Peter takes after his grandfather.
 4. I think we've come up with an answer to the problem.
 5. Ann is someone I really look up to.
 6. Please help me. I'm counting on you.
 7. Tom ran into Peter at the airport.
 8. How can you put up with so much traffic noise?
 9. I called on a few friends while I was in Manchester.
 10. I must go to the dentist, and get my teeth seen to.

340.

1. took off 2. ran into 3. put off 4. thought over 5. went out
 6. stood out 7. set out 8. sold out 9. saw to 10. worn out

341.

1. put in for: request 2. turn down: reject 3. bring up: mention
 4. see into: examine 5. have out: argue to the end 6. go about: start
 7. look up to: respect 8. get on with: have a good relationship
 9. get down: depress 10. put up with: tolerate

342.

1. made up 2. broke down 3. sent for 4. blew up
 5. cut off 6. carried on 7. brought up 8. did without
 9. left out 10. held up 11. fell for 12. hung up

343.

- 1B 2A 3C 4D 5B 6C 7A 8D
 9B 10C 11D 12A 13B 14C 15D 16A
 17B 18B 19C 20D 21C 22A 23B 24D 25C

344.

1. put down 2. come about 3. takes after 4. put forward 5. put...up
 6. count on 7. Looking after 8. broke out 9. fell through 10. come up with

345.

1. We have run out of ice-cream.
 2. Despite not getting up on time, Tom wasn't late for work.
 3. The visitors have to be picked up from the airport.
 4. All the witnesses said that I was to blame for the accident.
 5. Linda's plans for a picnic have fallen through because of the weather.
 6. The staff in that office all look up to their boss.
 7. Susan accused Richard of breaking/having broken her camera.
 8. I can't keep up/pace with you.
 9. She left without thanking us for our help.
 10. He was offered a job in the bank but had to turn it down because he was ill.
 11. I'm looking forward to seeing you again at the party.
 12. When I was in the shop, someone mistook me for a shop assistant.
 13. That old power station is going to be pulled down.
 14. I can't put up with your untidiness any more.
 15. Maria blamed me for the accident.

346.

- 1c 2i 3f 4j 5d 6g 7a 8b 9e 10h

347.

- 1A 2C 3B 4D 5B 6B 7D 8C

9A 10D 11C 12B 13A 14D 15C 16B
17A 18D 19C 20B 21A 22D 23C 24B 25A

348.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. get by: manage with little money | 2. look for: try to find |
| 3. sit down: take a seat | 4. apply for: ask for |
| 5. go about: approach, start | 6. jot down: write down quickly |
| 7. send off: post | 8. see through: not to be deceived by |
| 9. turn down: reject | 10. pull off: manage to do |

349.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. turned up | 2. get on with | 3. live up to | 4. put up with |
| 5. came across | 6. look up to | 7. fell for | 8. turned down |
| 9. go along with | 10. looked after | 11. find out | 12. look down on |

350.

1. Daisy passed out because the crowded bus was so hot.
2. Nobody is sure how the accident came about.
3. The pilot discovered that the plane had run out of fuel.
4. The doctor asked John when he had given up smoking.
5. I think you (have) made up everything you have told me.
6. She turned down all the men who asked her to marry them.
7. People object to the plans for the new car park.
8. The fire broke out in the early hours of the morning.
9. He is looking forward to seeing his parents again.
10. A lot of people need someone who takes care of them.
11. I feel as if I'm going down with a cold.
12. I've never come across a job ad for a cat sitter before.
13. Will you look up this word in the dictionary?
14. The switchboard operator put me through to the manager.
15. Have the scientists ever looked into the ways animals communicate with humans?

351.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. dress up: put on smart clothes | 2. turn up: arrive |
| 3. find out: discover | 4. point out: indicate, draw attention to |
| 5. go on: continue | 6. get on: make progress |
| 7. do with: find useful | 8. think over: consider |
| 9. let on: reveal information | 10. cheer up: make someone feel happier |

352.

1D 2B 3C 4A 5A 6D 7C 8B
9D 10A 11B 12C 13D 14B 15C 16A
17D 18D 19A 20C 21B 22A 23B 24D 25C

353.

1c 2h 3j 4i 5f 6b 7e 8a 9g 10d

354.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. rule out: exclude | 2. go on: continue |
| 3. close down: cause to stop working | 4. get over: recover from |
| 5. look for: try to find | 6. take on: employ |
| 7. put up with: tolerate | 8. take off: depart (a plane) |
| 9. join in: take part in | 10. lay off: dismiss |
| 11. give up: stop | 12. go back: return |

355.

1. A big cupboard would take up a lot of space in this room.
2. She has always dreamt of writing a successful novel.
3. She won the first match easily and went on to become the champion.
4. Unless you look after those shoes, they won't last for long.
5. You're so lucky to have come into all that money.
6. He took a look at his notes before answering the question.
7. It is typical of Tom to make up ridiculous stories like that.
8. She turned down my offer of help.
9. Please carry on with your work.
10. Did the film live up to your expectations of it or was it disappointing?
11. The bank is not taking on any more staff at the moment.
12. When are you going to make up your mind about learning French?
13. I can't make out what Peter is doing because it's so dark.
14. Jack's success has turned him into a confident person.
15. The inventor came up with a solution to the problem in a dream.

356.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. get over | 2. fell off | 3. came round | 4. get up | 5. get on |
| 6. come across | 7. given up | 8. run down | 9. go on | 10. take up |

357.

1D 2B 3A 4C 5A 6D 7B 8C
9A 10D 11B 12C 13A 14D 15B 16C
17A 18D 19B 20C 21A 22B 23C 24D 25C

358.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. took off | 2. stop over | 3. kept on | 4. checked in | 5. worn out |
| 6. get together | 7. checked out | 8. join in | 9. went out | 10. went on |

359.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. reminds ... of | 2. prevented ... from | 3. depends on | 4. concentrate on |
| 5. believes in | 6. approve of | 7. wait for | 8. belongs to |

9. suffer from 10. recover from 11. consists of 12. succeeded in
13. laugh at 14. smiled at 15. apologize for

360.

1. He was brought up traditionally, wasn't he?
2. John's car broke down, so he missed the ferry.
3. Alice is responsible for taking care of small children.
4. Mary eats very little because she doesn't want to put on weight.
5. The news was so bad that Susan burst into tears.
6. Whose does this suitcase belong to?
7. Do you get on well with your neighbours?
8. I felt quite let down by this film.
9. The book didn't come up to his expectations.
10. He has been operated on many times.
11. I haven't made up my mind yet whether to go to the party or not.
12. A lot of pupils at school have gone down with flu.
13. I think Jane made up the story about meeting the President.
14. When the fire broke out, no one seemed very worried.
15. We have come up against quite a few problems with the computer system.

361.

- 1D 2A 3C 4B 5A 6D 7C 8B
9A 10D 11C 12B 13A 14D 15C 16B
17A 18D 19C 20B 21A 22D 23C 24B 25D

362.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. put off | 2. put in | 3. put by | 4. given up |
| 5. turned out | 6. didn't get on | 7. turned up | 8. took to |
| 9. make up | 10. went over | 11. taking on | 12. took off |
| 13. come up | 14. put up with | 15. pulled out | 16. making for |
| 17. making it up | 18. take on | 19. got away | 20. go through |



MỤC LỤC

1. ARTICLES

- A. Quy tắc chung
B. Những trường hợp dùng THE
C. Những trường hợp không dùng THE

2. SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

- A. Quy tắc chung
B. Neither (of), Either (of), Both (of)
C. None of, Not one of, Every, Each
D. Danh từ tập hợp, cụm từ định lượng

3. DETERMINERS

- A. All, Most, Some, Half, No, None
B. Every, Each, Both, Either, Neither
C. A lot of, Lots of, Many, Much, (A) few, (A) little

4. NOUNS

- A. Danh từ đếm được
B. Danh từ không đếm được
C. Danh từ ghép

5. ADJECTIVES & ADVERBS

- A. Tính từ
B. Trạng từ
C. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn, thời gian, mức độ
D. Trật tự của tính từ
E. Fast, Hard, Hardly, Well, Friendly
F. Tính từ tận cùng bằng -ED và -ING
G. Trật tự của trạng từ
H. Tính từ ghép

6. PREFIXES & SUFFIXES

- A. Tiếp đầu ngữ chỉ mức độ, kích thước, số lượng
B. Tiếp đầu ngữ chỉ thời gian, nhận thức, tác động
C. Tiếp đầu ngữ phủ định
D. Tiếp vĩ ngữ chỉ tính chất
E. Tiếp vĩ ngữ thành lập danh từ
F. Tiếp vĩ ngữ chỉ người, vật
G. Tiếp vĩ ngữ phủ định

7. PREPOSITIONS

- A. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn
B. Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động
C. Giới từ chỉ thời gian

Trang
5

13

19

26

39

53

67

8. TENSES	81	14. COMPARISONS	165
A. Thì hiện tại đơn		A. So sánh bằng nhau	
B. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn		B. So sánh hơn	
C. Thì quá khứ đơn		C. So sánh nhất	
D. Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn		15. RELATIVE CLAUSES	175
E. Thì tương lai đơn		A. Who	
F. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn		B. Whom	
G. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành		C. Which	
H. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn		D. That	
I. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành		E. Whose	
J. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn		F. Where	
K. Thì tương lai hoàn thành		G. When	
9. MODAL VERBS	103	H. Why	
A. Can, Should, Must, May, Might		16. ADVERB CLAUSES	191
B. Mustn't, Needn't, Don't have/need to		A. Mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản	
C. Can, Could, Be able to		B. Mệnh đề chỉ lý do	
D. Must, Have (Got) To, Can't		C. Mệnh đề chỉ thời gian	
E. Shall, Will		D. Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích	
F. Question tags		E. Mệnh đề chỉ kết quả	
G. Modal perfect		F. Mệnh đề chỉ cách thức	
10. CONDITIONALS & WISHES	118	G. Mệnh đề chỉ nơi chốn	
A. Câu điều kiện loại 1		17. SENTENCE CONNECTORS	201
B. Câu điều kiện loại 2		A. However, Nevertheless, Moreover, Therefore	
C. Câu điều kiện loại 3		B. Alternatively, Otherwise, Instead	
D. Wish, If only + Clause		C. In other words, The thing is, For example, For instance, All in all, In short	
11. PASSIVE VOICE	131	D. In fact, Indeed, Actually, As a matter of fact	
A. Thì hiện tại đơn và quá khứ đơn		18. INVERSIONS	210
B. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn và quá khứ tiếp diễn		A. Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Under, At, In, On	
C. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành và quá khứ hoàn thành		B. Not only...but also, Only..., Not...	
D. Modal verbs và Be going to		C. Câu điều kiện lược bỏ 'IF'	
12. INDIRECT SPEECH	143	D. Hardly, Scarcely, Barely...when, No sooner...than	
A. Câu mệnh lệnh/dể nghị		E. So...that, Such...that	
B. Câu hỏi		F. Các trường hợp khác	
C. Câu trần thuật		19. PHRASAL VERBS	218
13. INFINITIVES & GERUNDS	153	ANSWER KEY	246
A. Verbs + To do sth			
B. Verbs + Doing sth			
C. Verbs + To do/Doing sth (khác nhau về nghĩa)			
D. Verbs + To do/Doing sth (không/ít khác nhau về nghĩa)			